

The Nazarene Acts of the Apostles

Book I

Clement's Early History; Doubts

Chapter 1

I Clement, who was born in the city of Rome, was from my earliest age a lover of chastity; while the bent of my mind held me bound as with chains of anxiety and sorrow. For a thought that was in me—whence originating, I cannot tell—constantly led me to think of my condition of mortality, and to discuss such questions as these: Whether there be for me any life after death, or whether I am to be wholly annihilated: whether I did not exist before I was born, and whether there will be no remembrance of this life after death, and so the boundlessness of time will consign all things to oblivion and silence; so that not only will we cease to be, but there will be no remembrance that we have ever been. This also I revolved in my mind: when the world was made, or what was before it was made, or whether it has existed from eternity. For it seemed certain, that if it had been made, it must be doomed to dissolution; and if it be dissolved, what is to be afterwards? Unless, it may be that all things will be buried in oblivion and silence, or something will be, which the mind of man cannot now conceive.

His Distress

Chapter 2

While I was continually revolving in my mind these and such like questions, suggested I know not how, I was pining away wonderfully through excess of grief; and, what was worse, if at any time I thought to cast aside such cares, as being of little use, the waves of anxiety rose all the higher upon me. For I had in me that most excellent companion, who would not suffer me to rest—the desire of immortality: for, as the subsequent issue showed, and the favor of Almighty YHWH directed, this bent of mind led me to the quest of truth, and the acknowledgment of the true light; and hence it came to pass, that ere long I pitied those whom formerly in my ignorance I believed to be blest.

His Dissatisfaction with the Schools of the Philosophers

Chapter 3

Having therefore such a bent of mind from my earliest years, the desire of learning something led me to frequent the schools of the philosophers. There I saw that naught else was done, save that doctrines were asserted and controverted without end, contests were waged, and the arts of syllogisms and the subtleties of

conclusions were discussed. If at any time the doctrine of the immortality of the spirit prevailed, I was thankful; if at any time it was impugned, I went away sorrowful. Still, neither doctrine had the power of truth over my heart. This only I understood: that opinions and definitions of things were accounted true or false, not in accordance with their nature and the truth of the arguments, but in proportion to the talents of those who supported them. And I was all the more tortured in the bottom of my heart, because I was neither able to lay hold of any of those things that were spoken as firmly established, nor was I able to lay aside the desire of inquiry; but the more I endeavoured to neglect and despise them, so much the more eagerly, as I have said, did a desire of this sort, creeping in upon me secretly as with a kind of pleasure, take possession of my heart and mind.

His Increasing Disquiet

Chapter 4

Being therefore distressed in the discovery of things, I said to myself, "Why do we labor in vain, since the end of things is manifest? For if after death I will be no more, my present torture is useless; but if there is to be for me a life after death, let us keep for that life the excitements that belong to it, lest it be that some sadder things befall me than those that I now suffer, unless I will have lived obediently and soberly; and, according to the opinions of some of the philosophers, I be consigned to the stream of darkrolling Phlegethon, or to Tartarus, like Sisyphus and Tityus, and to ageless punishment in the infernal regions, like Ixion and Tantalus." And again I would answer to myself: "But these things are fables; or if it be so, since the matter is in doubt, it is better to live obediently." But again I would ponder with myself: "How should I restrain myself from the lust of sin, while uncertain as to the reward of righteousness?-and all the more when I have no certainty what righteousness is, or what is pleasing to YHWH; and when I cannot ascertain whether the spirit be immortal, and be such that it has anything to hope for; nor do I know what the future is certainly to be." Yet still I cannot rest from thoughts of this sort.

His Design to Test the Immortality of the Spirit

Chapter 5

What, then, will I do? This will I do. I will proceed to Mitsrayim, and there I will cultivate the friendship of the hierophants or naviim, who preside at the shrines. Then I will win over a magician by money, and entreat him, by what they call the necromantic art, to bring me a spirit from the infernal regions, as if I were desirous of consulting it about some business. But this will be my consultation, whether the spirit is immortal. Now, the proof that the spirit is immortal will be put past doubt, not from what it says, or from what I hear, but from what I see: for seeing it with my eyes, I will ever after hold the surest conviction of its immortality; and no fallacy of words or

uncertainty of hearing will ever be able to disturb the persuasion produced by sight. However, I related this project to a certain philosopher with whom I was intimate, who counselled me not to venture upon it; “for,” said he, “if the spirit should not obey the call of the magician, you henceforth will live more hopelessly, as thinking that there is nothing after death, and also as having tried things unlawful. If, however, you seem to see anything, what obedience or what piety can arise to you from things unlawful and illicit? For they say that transactions of this sort are hateful to the Almighty, and that Elohim sets Himself in opposition to those who trouble spirits after their release from the body.” When I heard this, I was indeed staggered in my purpose; yet I could not in any way either lay aside my longing, or cast off the distressing thought.

He Hears of Moshiach

Chapter 6

Not to make a long story of it, while I was tossed upon these billows of my thought, a certain report, which took its rise in the regions of the East in the reign of Tiberius Caesar, gradually reached us; and gaining strength as it passed through every place, like some good message sent from YHWH, it was filling the whole world and suffered not the divine will to be concealed in silence. For it was spread over all places, announcing that there was a certain person in Judaea, who, beginning in the springtime, was preaching the Malkuth of YHWH to the Yahudaïm, and saying that those should receive it who should observe the ordinances of His commandments and His doctrine. And that His speech might be believed to be worthy of credit, and full of the Almighty, He was said to perform many mighty works, and wonderful signs and prodigies by His mere word; so that, as one having power from YHWH, He made the deaf to hear, and the blind to see, and the lame to stand erect, and expelled every infirmity and all demons from men; yea, that He even raised dead persons who were brought to Him; that He cured lepers also, looking at them from a distance; and that there was absolutely nothing that seemed impossible to Him. These and such like things were confirmed in process of time, not now by frequent rumors, but by the plain statements of persons coming from those quarters; and day by day the truth of the matter was further disclosed.

Arrival of Yosef barNaba at Rome

Chapter 7

At length meetings began to be held in various places in the city, and this subject to be discussed in conversation, and to be a matter of wonder who this might be who had appeared, and what message He had brought from YHWH to men; until, about the same year, a certain man, standing in a most crowded place in the city, made proclamation to the people, saying: “Hear me, O you citizens of Rome. The Son of

YHWH is now in the regions of Judaea, promising ageless life to everyone who will hear Him, but upon condition that he will regulate his actions according to the will of Him by whom He has been sent, even of YHWH the Father. So turn from evil things to good, from things temporal to things ageless. Acknowledge that there is one El, ruler of heaven and earth, in whose righteous sight the unrighteous inhabit His world. But if you be converted and act according to His will, then, coming to the world to come, and being made immortal, you will enjoy His unspeakable blessings and rewards.” Now, the man who spoke these things to the people was from the regions of the East, by tribe a Hebrew, by name Yosef barNaba, who said that he himself was one of His talmidim, and that he was sent for this end, that he should declare these things to those who would hear them. When I heard these things, I began, with the rest of the multitude, to follow him and to hear what he had to say. Truly I perceived that there was nothing of dialectic artifice in the man, but that he expounded with simplicity, and without any craft of speech, such things as he had heard from the Son of YHWH, or had seen. For he did not confirm his assertions by the force of arguments; but produced, from the people who stood round about him, many witnesses of the sayings and marvels that he related.

His Preaching

Chapter 8

Now, inasmuch as the people began to assent willingly to the things that were sincerely spoken and to embrace his simple discourse, those who thought themselves learned or philosophic began to laugh at the man and to flout him, and to throw out for him the grappling-hooks of syllogisms, like strong arms. But he, unterrified, regarding their subtleties as mere ravings, did not even judge them worthy of an answer, but boldly pursued the subject that he had set before him. At length, someone having proposed this question to him as he was speaking, Why a gnat has been so formed, that though it is a small creature, and has six feet, yet it has got wings in addition; whereas an elephant, though it is an immense animal, and has no wings, yet has only four feet; he, paying no attention to the question, went on with his discourse, which had been interrupted by the unseasonable challenge, only adding this admonition at every interruption: “We have it in charge to declare to you the words and the wondrous works of Him who has sent us, and to confirm the truth of what we speak, not by artfully devised arguments, but by witnesses produced from amongst yourselves. For I recognize many standing in the midst of you whom I remember to have heard along with us the things that *we* have heard, and too, have seen what *we* have seen. But be it in your option to receive or to spurn the tidings that we bring to you. For we cannot keep back what we know to be for your advantage because, if we be silent, woe is to us; but to you, if you receive not what we speak, destruction. I could indeed very easily answer your foolish challenges, if you asked for the sake of learning truth—I mean as to the difference of a gnat and

an elephant; but now it were absurd to speak to you of these creatures, when the very Creator and Framer of all things is unknown by you.”

Clement’s Interposition on Behalf of Yosef barNaba

Chapter 9

When he had thus spoken, all, as with one consent, with rude voice raised a shout of derision, to put him to shame, and to silence him, crying out that he was a barbarian and a madman. When I saw matters going on in this way, being filled, I know not whence, with a certain zeal, and inflamed with fervent enthusiasm, I could not keep silence, but cried out with all boldness, “Most righteously does Almighty YHWH hide His will from you, whom He foresaw to be unworthy of the knowledge of Himself, as is manifest to those who are really wise, from what you are now doing. For when you see that preachers of the will of YHWH have come amongst you, because their speech makes no show of knowledge of the grammatical art, but in simple and unpolished language they set before you the divine commands, so that all who hear may be able to follow and to understand the things that are spoken, you deride the ministers and messengers of your salvation, not knowing that it is the condemnation of you who think yourselves skilful and eloquent, that rustic and barbarous men have the knowledge of the truth; whereas, when it has come to you, it is not even received as a guest, while, if your intemperance and lust did not oppose, it ought to have been a citizen and a native. Thus, you are convicted of not being haverim of truth and philosophers, but followers of boasting and vain speakers. You think that truth dwells not in simple, but in ingenious and subtle words, and produce countless thousands of words that are not to be rated at the worth of one word. What, then, do you think will become of you, all you crowd of Greeks, if there is to be, as he says, a judgment by YHWH? But now give over laughing at this man to your own destruction, and let any one of you who pleases answer me; for, indeed, by your barking you annoy the ears even of those who desire to be saved, and by your clamour you turn aside to the fall of infidelity the minds that are prepared for faith. What pardon can there be for you who deride and do violence to the messenger of the truth when he offers to you the knowledge of YHWH? Whereas, even if he brought you nothing of truth, yet, even for the kindness of his intentions towards you, you ought to receive him with gratitude and welcome.”

Discourse with Yosef barNaba

Chapter 10

While I was urging these and similar arguments, a great excitement was stirred up amongst the bystanders, some being moved with pity as towards a stranger, and

approving my speech as in accordance with that feeling; others, petulant and stolid, rousing the anger of their undisciplined minds as much against me as against Yosef barNaba. But as the day was declining to evening, I laid hold of Yosef barNaba by the right hand, and led him away, although reluctantly, to my house; and there I made him remain, lest perchance any one of the rude rabble should lay hands upon him. While we were thus placed in contact for a few days, I gladly heard him discoursing the word of truth; yet he hastened his departure, saying that he must by all means celebrate at Judaea a Feast of YHWH that was approaching, and that there he should remain in future with his countrymen and his brothers, evidently indicating that he was horrified at the wrong that had been done to him.

Departure of Yosef barNaba

Chapter 11

At length I said to him, "Only expound to me the doctrine of that man who you say has appeared, and I will arrange your sayings in my language, and will preach the malkuth and righteousness of Almighty YHWH; and after that, if you wish it, I will even sail along with you, for I am extremely desirous to see Judaea, and it could be that I will remain with you always." To this he answered, "If indeed you wish to see our country, and to learn those things that you desire, set sail with me even now; or, if there be anything that detains you now, I will leave with you directions to my dwelling, so that when you please to come you may easily find me; for tomorrow I will set out on my journey." When I saw him determined, I went down with him to the harbor, and carefully took from him the directions that he gave me to find his dwelling. I told him that, but for the necessity of getting some money that was due to me, I should not at all delay, but that I should speedily follow him. Having told him this, I commended him to the kindness of those who had charge of the ship, and returned sad; for I was possessed of the memory of the discourse that I had had with an excellent guest and a choice friend.

Clement's Arrival at Caesarea, and Introduction to Kefa

Chapter 12

Having then stopped for a few days, and having in some measure finished the business of collecting what was owing to me (for I neglected many things through my desire of hastening, that I might not be hindered from my purpose), I set sail directly for Judaea, and after fifteen days landed at Caesarea Stratonis, which is the largest city in Yisrael. When I had landed, and was seeking for an inn, I learned from the conversation of the people, that one Kefa, a most approved talmid of Him who appeared in Judaea, and showed many signs and miracles divinely performed among men, was going to hold a discussion of words and questions the next day with one Shimon, a Shomroni. Having heard this, I asked to be shown his lodging;

and having found it, and standing before the door, I informed the doorkeeper who I was, and whence I came; and, behold, Yosef barNaba coming out! As soon as he saw me rushed into my arms, weeping for joy, and, seizing me by the hand, led me in to Kefa, having pointed him out to me at a distance. "This," said he, "is Kefa, of whom I spoke to you as the greatest in the wisdom of YHWH, and to whom also I have spoken constantly of you. Enter, therefore, as one well known to him; for he is well-acquainted with all the good that is in you, and has carefully made himself aware of your obedient purpose, whence also he is greatly desirous to see you. Therefore, I present you to him to-day as a great gift." At the same time, presenting me, he said, "This, O Kefa, is Clement."

His Cordial Reception by Kefa

Chapter 13

But Kefa most kindly, when he heard my name, immediately ran to me and kissed me. Then, having made me sit down, he said, "You did well to receive as your guest Yosef barNaba, preacher of the truth, not fearing the rage of the insane people. You will be blessed. For as you have deemed an ambassador of the truth worthy of all honor, so the truth herself will receive you a wanderer and a stranger, and will enroll you a citizen of her own city; and then there will be great joy to you, because, imparting a small favor, you will be written heir of ageless blessings. Now, therefore, do not trouble yourself to explain your mind to me; for Yosef barNaba has with faithful speech informed me of all things about you and your dispositions, almost daily and without ceasing, recalling the memory of your good qualities. And to point out to you shortly, as to a friend already of one mind with us, what is your best course; if there is nothing to hinder you, come along with us, and hear the word of the truth, which we are going to speak in every place until we come even to the city of Rome; and now, if you wish anything, speak."

His Account of Himself to Ya'akov

Chapter 14

Having detailed to him what purpose I had conceived from the beginning, and how I had been distracted with vain inquiries, and all those things that at first I intimated to you, my master Ya'akov, so that I need not repeat the same things now, I willingly agreed to travel with him; "for that," said I, "is just what I was most eagerly desirous of. But first I should wish the scheme of truth to be expounded to me, that I may know whether the spirit is mortal or immortal; and if immortal, whether it will be brought into judgment for those things that it does here. Further, I desire to know what that righteousness is, which is pleasing to YHWH; then, further, whether the world was created, and why it was created, and whether it is to be dissolved, and

whether it is to be renovated and made better, or whether after this there will be no world at all; and, not to mention everything, I should wish to be told what is the case with respect to these and such like things.” To this Kefa answered, “I will briefly impart to you the knowledge of these things, O Clement: therefore listen.

Kefa’s First Instruction: Causes of Ignorance

Chapter 15

“The will and counsel of YHWH has for many reasons been concealed from men; first, indeed, through bad instruction, immoral associations, evil habits, unprofitable conversation, and unrighteous presumptions. On account of all these, I say, first error, then contempt, then infidelity and malice, covetousness also, and vain boasting, and other such like evils, have filled the whole house of this world, like some enormous smoke, and preventing those who dwell in it from seeing its Founder aright, and from perceiving what things are pleasing to Him. What, then, is fitting for those who are within, excepting with a cry brought forth from their inmost hearts to invoke His aid, who alone is not shut up in the smoke-filled house, that He would approach and open the door of the house, so that the smoke may be dissipated that is within, and the light of the sun that shines without may be admitted.

Instruction Continued: the Navi Emet Y’shua

Chapter 16

“He, therefore, whose aid is needed for the house filled with the darkness of ignorance and the smoke of vices, is He, we say, who is called the Navi Emet, who alone can enlighten the spirits of men, so that with their eyes they may plainly see the way of safety. For otherwise it is impossible to get knowledge of divine and ageless things, unless one learns of that Navi Emet; because, as you yourself stated a little while ago, the belief of things, and the opinions of causes, are estimated in proportion to the talents of their advocates: hence, also, one and the same cause is now thought just, now unjust; and what now seemed true, anon becomes false on the assertion of another. For this reason, the credit of obedience and piety demanded the presence of the Navi Emet, that He Himself might tell us respecting each particular, how the truth stands, and might teach us how we are to believe concerning each. And therefore, before all else, the credentials of the navi himself must be examined with all care; and when you have once ascertained that he is a navi, it behooves you thenceforth to believe him in everything, and not further to discuss the particulars that he teaches, but to hold the things that he speaks as certain and sacred; which things, although they seem to be received by faith, yet are believed on the ground of the probation previously instituted. For when once at the outset the truth of the navi is established on examination, the rest is to be heard and

held on the ground of the faith by which it is already established that he is a teacher of truth. And as it is certain that all things that pertain to divine knowledge ought to be held according to the rule of truth, so it is beyond doubt that from none but himself alone can it be known what is true.”

Kefa Requests Him to Be His Azari

Chapter 17

Having thus spoken, he set forth to me so openly and so clearly who that Navi was and how He might be found, that I seemed to have before my eyes, and to handle with my hand, the proofs that he produced concerning the prophetic truth; and I was struck with intense astonishment how no one sees, though placed before his eyes, those things that all are seeking for. Whence, by his command, reducing into order what he had spoken to me, I compiled a scroll concerning the Navi Emet, and sent it to you, Master Ya'akov, from Caesarea by his command. For he said that he had received a command from you to send you every year an account of his sayings and doings. Meantime, at the beginning of his discourse that he delivered to me the first day, when he had instructed me very fully concerning the Navi Emet, and very many things besides, he added also this: “See,” said he, “for the future, and be present at the discussions that whenever any necessity arises, I will hold with those who contradict; against whom, when I dispute, even if I will seem to be worsted, I will not be afraid of your being led to doubt of those things that I have stated to you; because, even if I will seem to be beaten, yet those things will not therefore seem to be uncertain that the Navi Emet has delivered to us. Yet I hope that we will not be overcome in disputations either, if only our hearers are reasonable and haverim of truth, who can discern the force and bearing of words, and recognize what discourse comes from the rhetorical art, not containing truth, but an image of truth; and what that is, which, uttered simply and without craft, depends for all its power not on show and ornament, but on truth and reason.”

His Profiting by Kefa's Instruction

Chapter 18

To this I answered: “I give thanks to El Shaddai, because I have been instructed as I wished and desired. At all events, you may depend upon me so far, that I can never come to doubt of those things that I have learned of you; so that even if you yourself should at any time wish to transfer my faith from the Navi Emet, you should not be able, because I have drunk in with all my heart what you have spoken. And that you may not think that I am promising you a great thing when I say that I cannot be moved away from this faith; it is with me a certainty, that whoever has received this

account of the Navi Emet, can never afterwards so much as doubt of its truth. And therefore I am confident with respect to this heaven-taught doctrine, in which all the art of malice is crushed. For in opposition to *this* prophecy neither any art can stand, nor the subtleties of sophisms and syllogism; but everyone who hears of the Navi Emet must of necessity long immediately for the truth itself, nor will he afterwards, under pretext of seeking the truth, endure diverse errors. So, O my master Kefa, be not further anxious about me, as if I were one who does not know what he has received, and how great a gift has been conferred on him. Be assured that you have conferred a favor on one who knows and understands its value: nor can I be easily deceived on that account, because I seem to have gotten quickly what I long desired; for it may be that one who desires gets quickly, while another does not even slowly attain the things that he desires.”

Kefa's Satisfaction

Chapter 19

Then Kefa, when he heard me speak thus, said: “I give thanks to my YHWH, both for your salvation and for my own shalom; for I am greatly delighted to see that you have understood what is the greatness of the prophetic virtue, and because, as you say, not even I myself, if I should wish it (which YHWH forbid!), should be able to turn you away to another faith. Now henceforth begin to be with us, and tomorrow be present at our discussions, for I am to have a contest with Shimon the magician.” When he had thus spoken, he retired to take food along with his haverim; but he ordered me to eat by myself; and after the meal, when he had sung praise to YHWH and given thanks, he rendered to me an account of this proceeding, and added, “May YHWH grant to you to be made like to us in all things, that, receiving mikvah, you may be able to meet with us at the same table.” Having thus spoken, he ordered me to go to rest, for by this time both fatigue and the time of the day called to sleep.

Postponement of Discussion with Shimon HaMag

Chapter 20

Early next morning Zacchai came in to us, and after salutation, said to Kefa: “Shimon puts off the discussion till the eleventh day of the present month, which is seven days hence, for he says that then he will have more leisure for the contest. But to me it seems that his putting off is also advantageous to us, so that more may come together, who may be either hearers or judges of our disputation. However, if it seem proper to you, let us occupy the interval in discussing among ourselves the things which, we suppose, may come into the controversy; so that each of us, knowing what things are to be proposed, and what answers are to be given, may consider with himself if they are all right, or if an adversary will be able to find anything to object, or to set aside the things that we bring against him. But if the things that are

to be spoken by us are manifestly impregnable on every side, we will have confidence in entering upon the examination. And indeed, this is my opinion, that first of all it ought to be inquired what is the origin of all things, or what is the immediate thing that may be called the cause of all things that are: then, with respect to all things that exist, whether they have been made, and by whom, through whom, and for whom; whether they have received their subsistence from one, or from two, or from many; and whether they have been taken and fashioned from none *previously* subsisting, or from some: then, whether there is any virtue in the highest things, or in the lower; whether there is anything that is better than all, or anything that is inferior to all; whether there are any motions, or none; whether those things that are seen were always, and will be always; whether they have come into existence without a creator, and will pass away without a destroyer. If, I say, the discussion begins with these things, I think that the things that will be inquired into, being discussed with diligent examination, will be easily ascertained. And when these are ascertained, the knowledge of those that follow will be easily found. I have stated my opinion; be pleased to intimate what you think of the matter.”

Advantage of the Delay

Chapter 21

To this Kefa answered: “Tell Shimon in the meantime to do as he pleases, and to rest assured that, YHWH granting, he will always find us ready.” Then Zacchai went out to intimate to Shimon what he had been told.

But Kefa, looking at us, and perceiving that I was saddened by the putting off of the contest, said: “He who believes that the world is administered by the providence of YHWH El Shaddai ought not, O Clement, my friend, to take it amiss, in whatever way particular things are done, being assured that the righteousness of YHWH guides to a favorable and fitting issue even those things that seem superfluous or contrary in any business, and especially towards those who worship Him more intimately; and therefore he who is assured of these things, as I have said, if anything occur contrary to his expectation, he knows how to drive away grief from his mind on that account, holding it unquestionable in his better judgment, that, by the government of the good YHWH, even what seems contrary may be turned to good. So, O Clement, even now let not this delay of the magician Shimon sadden you: for I believe that it has been done by the providence of YHWH, for your advantage; that I may be able, in this interval of seven days, to expound to you the method of our faith without any distraction, and the order continuously, according to the tradition of the Navi Emet, who alone knows time past as it was, the present as it is, and the future as it will be: such things were indeed plainly spoken *by Him*, but are not plainly written; so much so, that when they are read, they cannot be understood without an expounder, on account of the sin that has grown up with men,

as I said before. Therefore, I will explain all things to you that in those things that are written you may clearly perceive what is the mind of the Torah-giver.”

Repetition of Instructions

Chapter 22

When he had said this, he began to expound to me point by point of those chapters of Torah that seemed to be in question, from the beginning of the creation even to that point of time at which I came to him at Caesarea, telling me that the delay of Shimon had contributed to my learning all things in order. “At other times.” said he, “we will discourse more fully on individual points of which we have now spoken shortly, according as the occasion of our conversation will bring them before us; so that, according to my promise, you may gain a full and perfect knowledge of all. Since, then, by this delay, we have to-day on our hands. I wish to repeat to you again what has been spoken, that it may be the better recalled to your memory.” Then he began in this way to refresh my recollection of what he had said: “Do you remember, O friend Clement, the account I gave you of the ageless age that knows no end?” Then said I, “Never, O Kefa, will I retain anything, if I can lose or forget that.”

Repetition Continued

Chapter 23

Then Kefa, having heard my answer with pleasure, said: “I congratulate you because you have answered thus, not because you speak of these things easily, but because you profess that you remember them; for the most sublime truths are best honored by means of silence. Yet, for the credit of those things that you remember concerning things not to be spoken, tell me what you retain of those things that we spoke of in the second place, which can easily be spoken out, that, perceiving your tenacity of memory, I may the more readily point out to you, and freely open, the things of which I wish to speak.” Then I, when I perceived that he rejoiced in the good memory of his hearers, said: “Not only am I mindful of your definition, but also of that preface that was prefixed to the definition; and of almost all things that you have expounded, I retain the sense complete, though not all the words; because the things that you have spoken have been made, as it were, native to my spirit, and inborn: for you have held out a most sweet cup to me in my excessive thirst. And that you may not suppose that I am occupying you with words, being unmindful of things, I will now call to mind the things that were spoken, in which the order of your discussion greatly helps me; for the way in which the things that you said followed by consequence upon one another, and were arranged in a balanced manner, makes them easily recalled to memory by the lines of their order. For the order of sayings is useful for remembering them: for when you begin to follow them point by point in

succession, when anything is wanting, immediately the sense seeks for it; and when it has found it, retains it, or at all events, if it cannot discover it, there will be no reluctance to ask it of the Master. But not to delay in granting what you demand of me, I will shortly rehearse what you delivered to me concerning the definition of truth.

Repetition Continued

Chapter 24

“There always was, there is now, and there ever will be, that by which the first Will begotten from eternity consists; and from the first Will *precedes* a second Will. After these came the world; and from the world came time: from this, the multitude of men; from the multitude the election of the beloved, from whose oneness of mind the peaceful Malkuth of YHWH is constructed. But the rest, which ought to follow these, you promised to tell me at another time. After this, when you had explained about the creation of the world, you intimated the decree of YHWH, “that He, of His own good pleasure, announced in the presence of all the first malachim,” and that He ordained as an ageless Torah to all; and how He established two kingdoms—I mean that of the present time and that of the future—and appointed times to each, and decreed that a day of judgment should be expected, which He determined, in which a severance is to be made of things and of spirits: so that the immoral indeed will be consigned to ageless fire for their sins; but those who have lived according to the will of YHWH the Creator, having received a blessing for their good works, effulgent with brightest light, introduced into an ageless abode, and abiding in incorruption, will receive ageless gifts of ineffable blessings.”

Repetition Continued

Chapter 25

While I was going on thus, Kefa, enraptured with joy, and anxious for me as if I had been his son, lest it befall me that I should fail in recollection of the rest, and be put to shame on account of those who were present, said: “It is enough, O Clement; for you have stated these things more clearly than I myself explained them.” Then said I, “Liberal learning has conferred upon me the power of orderly narration, and of stating those things clearly for which there is occasion. And if we use learning in asserting the errors of antiquity, we ruin ourselves by talent and smoothness of speech; but if we apply learning and favor of speech to the assertion of the truth, I think that not a little advantage is thereby gained. Be that as it may, my master Kefa, you can but imagine with what thankfulness I am transported for all the rest of your instruction indeed, but especially for the statement of that doctrine that you gave: There is one YHWH, whose work the world is, and who, because He is in all respects righteous, will render to everyone according to his deeds. And after that you added: For the assertion of this dogma countless thousands of words will be

brought forward; but in those to whom is granted knowledge of the Navi Emet, all this forest of words is cut down. And on this account, since you have delivered to me a discourse concerning the Navi Emet, you have strengthened me with all confidence of your assertions.” And then, having perceived that the sum of all obedience and piety consists in this, I immediately replied: “You have proceeded most excellently, O Kefa: So, in future, expound unhesitatingly, as to one who already knows what are the foundations of faith and piety, the traditions of the Navi Emet, who alone, as has been clearly proved, is to be believed. But that exposition that requires assertions and arguments, reserve for the unbelievers, to whom you have not yet judged it proper to commit the indubitable faith of prophetic favor.” When I had said this, I added: “You promised that you would give at the proper time two things: first this exposition, at once simple and entirely free from error; and then an exposition of each individual point as it may be evolved in the course of the various questions that will be raised. And after this you expounded the sequence of things in order from the beginning of the world, even to the present time; and if you please, I can repeat the whole from memory.”

Friendship of YHWH; How Secured

Chapter 26

To this Kefa answered: “I am exceedingly delighted, O Clement, that I commit my words to so safe a heart; for to be mindful of the things that are spoken is an indication of having in readiness the faith of works. But he from whom the immoral demon steals away the words of salvation, and snatches them away from his memory, cannot be saved, even though he wish it; for he loses the way by which life is reached. So let us the rather repeat what has been spoken, and confirm it in your heart, that is, in what manner or by whom the world was made, that we may proceed to the friendship of the Creator. But His friendship is secured by living well, and by obeying His will; which will is Torah of all that live. We will therefore unfold these things briefly to you, in order that they may be the more surely remembered.

Account of the Creation

Chapter 27

“In the beginning, when YHWH had made the heaven and the earth, as one house, the shadow that was cast by the mundane bodies involved in darkness those things that were enclosed in it. But when the will of YHWH had introduced light, that darkness that had been caused by the shadows of bodies was straightway dispelled: then at length light is appointed for the day, darkness for the night. And now the water that was within the world, in the middle space of that first heaven and earth, congealed as if with frost, and solid as crystal, is distended, and the middle spaces

of the heaven and earth are separated as by a firmament of this sort; and that firmament the Creator called heaven, so called by the name of that previously made: and so He divided into two portions that fabric of the universe, although it was but one house. The reason of the division was this, that the upper portion might afford a dwelling-place to malachim and the lower to men. After this, the place of the sea and the chaos that had been made received that portion of the water that remained below, by order of the ageless Will; and these flowing down to the sunk and hollow places, the dry land appeared; and the gatherings of the waters were made seas. And after this the earth, which had appeared, produced various species of herbs and shrubs. It gave forth fountains also, and rivers, not only in the plains, but on the mountains. And so all things were prepared, that men who were to dwell in it might have it in their power to use all these things according to their will; that is, either for good or evil.

Account of the Creation Continued

Chapter 28

“After this He adorns that Visible Sky with stars. He places in it also the sun and the moon, that the day might enjoy the light of the one, the night that of the other; and that at the same time they might be for an indication of things past, present, and future. For they were made for signs of seasons and of days, which, although they are seen indeed by all, are understood only by the learned and intelligent. And when, after this, He had ordered living creatures to be produced from the earth and the waters, He made Paradise, which also He named a place of delights. But after all these things He made man, on whose account He had prepared all things, whose internal species is older, and for whose sake all things that are were made, given up to his service, and assigned to the uses of his habitation.

The Nephilim: the Flood

Chapter 29

“All things therefore being completed that are in heaven, and in earth, and in the waters, and the human race also having multiplied, in the eighth generation, Zaddikim, who had lived the life of malachim, being allured by the beauty of women, fell into promiscuous and illicit connections with these; and thenceforth acting in all things without discretion, and disorderly, they changed the state of human affairs and the divinely prescribed order of life, so that either by persuasion or force they compelled all men to sin against YHWH their Creator. In the ninth generation are born the Gibborim, so called from of old, not dragon-footed, as the fables of the Greeks relate, but men of immense bodies, whose bones, of enormous size, are still shown in some places for confirmation. But against these the righteous providence

of YHWH brought a flood upon the world that the earth might be purified from their pollution, and every place might be turned into a sea by the destruction of the immoral. Yet there was then found one righteous man, by name Noach, who, being delivered in the tayvah with his three sons and their wives, became the colonizer of the world after the subsiding of the waters, with those animals and seeds that he had shut up with him.

Noach's Sons

Chapter 30

"In the twelfth generation, when YHWH had blessed men, and they had begun to multiply, they received a commandment that they should not taste blood, for on account of this also the deluge had been sent. In the thirteenth generation, when the second of Noach's three sons had done an injury to his father, and had been cursed by him, he brought the condition of slavery upon his posterity. His elder brother meantime obtained the lot of a dwelling-place in the middle region of the world, in which is the country of Judaea; the younger obtained the eastern quarter, and he the western. In the fourteenth generation one of the cursed progeny first erected an altar to demons, for the purpose of magical arts, and offered there bloody zebahim. In the fifteenth generation, for the first time, men set up an idol and worshipped it. Until that time the Hebrew language, which had been given by YHWH to men, bore sole sway. In the sixteenth generation the sons of men migrated from the east, and, coming to the lands that had been assigned to their fathers, each one marked the place of his own allotment by his own name. In the seventeenth generation Nimrod reigned in Babylonia, and built a city, and thence migrated to the Persians, and taught them to worship fire.

World after the Flood

Chapter 31

"In the eighteenth-generation walled cities were built, armies were organized and armed, shoftim and laws were sanctioned, Hekelim were built, and the sarim of tribes were adored as gods. In the nineteenth generation the descendants of him who had been cursed after the flood, going beyond their proper bounds that they had obtained by lot in the western regions, drove into the eastern lands those who had obtained the middle portion of the world, and pursued them as far as Persia, while themselves violently took possession of the country from which they expelled them. In the twentieth generation a son for the first time died before his father, on account of an incestuous crime.

Avraham

Chapter 32

“In the twenty-first generation there was a certain wise man, of the race of those who were expelled, of the family of Noach’s eldest son, by name Avraham, from whom our Hebrew tribe is derived. When the whole world was again overspread with errors, and when for the hideousness of its crimes destruction was ready for it, this time not by water, but fire; and when already the scourge was hanging over the whole earth, beginning with Sedom, this man, by reason of his friendship with YHWH, who was well pleased with him, obtained from YHWH that the whole world should not equally perish. From the first this same man, being an astronomer, was able, from the account and order of the stars, to recognize the Creator, while all others were in error, and understood that all things are regulated by His providence. Whence also a malach, standing by him in a vision, instructed him more fully concerning those things that he was beginning to perceive. He showed him also what belonged to his race and posterity, and promised him that those districts should be restored rather than given to them.

Avraham: His Posterity

Chapter 33

“Therefore Avraham, when he was desirous to learn the causes of things, and was intently pondering upon what had been told him, the Navi Emet Y’shua appeared to him, who alone knows the hearts and purpose of men, and disclosed to him all things that he desired. He taught him the knowledge of the Almighty; intimated the origin of the world, and likewise its end; showed him the immortality of the spirit, and the manner of life that was pleasing to YHWH; declared also the resurrection of the dead, the future judgment, the reward of the good, the punishment of the evil—all to be regulated by righteous judgment: and having given him all this information plainly and sufficiently, He departed again to the invisible abodes. But while Avraham was still in ignorance, as we said to you before, he acquired two sons, of whom the one was called Ishmael, and the other Eliezer, whom he adopted. From the one are descended the barbarous tribes, from the other the people of the Persians, some of whom have adopted the manner of living and the institutions of their neighbours, the Brahmans. Others settled in Arabia, of whose posterity some also have spread into Mitsrayim. From them some of the Indians and of the Mitsrayim have learned to be circumcised, and to be of purer observance than others, although in process of time most of them have turned to impiety that was the proof and sign of purity.

The Yisraelim in Mitsrayim

Chapter 34

“Nevertheless, as he had got these two sons during the time while he still lived in ignorance of things, having received the knowledge of YHWH, he asked of the Righteous One that he might merit to have offspring by Sarah, who was his lawful wife, though she was barren. She obtained a son, whom he named Yitzchak, from whom came Ya’akov, and from him the twelve patriarchs, and from these twelve seventy-two. These, when famine befell, came into Mitsrayim with all their family; and in the course of four hundred years, being multiplied by the blessing and promise of YHWH, they were afflicted by the Mitsrayim. And when they were afflicted, Y’shua appeared to Moshe, and struck the Mitsrayim with ten plagues, when they refused to let the Hebrew people depart from them, and return to their native land; and he brought the people of YHWH out of Mitsrayim. But those of the Mitsrayim who survived the plagues, being infected with the animosity of their melek, pursued after the Hebrews. And when they had overtaken them at the sea-shore, and thought to destroy and exterminate them all, Moshe, pouring out prayer to YHWH, divided the sea into two parts, so that the water was held on the right hand and on the left as if it had been frozen, and the people of YHWH passed as over a dry road; but the Mitsrayim who were pursuing them, rashly entering, were drowned. For when the last of the Hebrews came out, the last of the Mitsrayim went down into the sea; and straightway the waters of the sea, which by his command were held, bound as with frost, were loosed by his command that had bound them, and recovering their natural freedom, inflicted punishment on the immoral tribe.

The Exodus

Chapter 35

“After this, Moshe, by the command of YHWH, whose providence is over all, led out the people of the Hebrews into the wilderness; and, leaving the shortest road that leads from Mitsrayim to Judaea, he led the people through long windings of the wilderness, that, by the discipline of forty years, the novelty of a changed manner of life might root out the evils that had clung to them by a long-continued familiarity with the customs of the Mitsrayim. Meantime they came to Mount Sinai, and from there Torah was given to them with voices and sights from heaven, written in ten precepts, of which the first and greatest was that they should worship YHWH Himself alone, and not make to themselves any appearance or form to worship. But when Moshe had gone up to the mount, and was staying there forty days, the people, although they had seen Mitsrayim struck with the ten plagues, and the sea parted and passed over by them on foot, manna also given to them from heaven for bread, and drink supplied to them out of the rock that followed them, which kind of food was turned

into whatever taste any one desired; and although, being placed under the torrid region of heaven, they were shaded by a cloud in the day-time, that they might not be scorched by the heat, and by night were enlightened by a pillar of fire, lest the horror of darkness should be added to the vastness of the wilderness; those very people, I say, when Moshe stayed in the mount, made and worshipped a golden calf's head, after the fashion of Apis, whom they had seen worshipped in Mitsrayim; and after so many and so great marvels that they had seen, were unable to cleanse and wash out from themselves the defilements of old habit. On this account, leaving the short road that leads from Mitsrayim to Judaea, Moshe conducted them by an immense circuit of the desert, so that if he might be able, as we mentioned before, to shake off the evils of old habit by the change of a new education.

Allowance of Zebah for a Time

Chapter 36

“When meantime Moshe, that faithful and wise steward, perceived that the vice of zebahim to idols had been deeply ingrained into the people from their association with the Mitsrayim, and that the root of this evil could not be extracted from them, he allowed them zebahim, but permitted it to be done only to YHWH, that by any means he might cut off one half of the deeply ingrained evil, leaving the other half to be corrected by another, and at a future time; by Him, namely, concerning whom he said himself, ‘A navi will YHWH your Elohim raise unto you, whom you will hear even as myself, according to all things that He will say to you. Whosoever will not hear that navi, his spirit will be cut off from his people.’

The Set-apart Place

Chapter 37

“In addition to these things, he also appointed a place in which alone it should be lawful to them to sacrifice to YHWH. And all this was arranged with this view, that when the fitting time should come, and they should learn by means of Y’shua that YHWH desires mercy and not sacrifice, and they might see Him who should teach them that the place chosen of YHWH, in which it was suitable that victims should be offered to YHWH, in his Hokmah; and that on the other hand they might hear that this place, which seemed chosen for a time, often harassed as it had been by hostile invasions and plunderings, was at last to be wholly destroyed. And in order to impress this upon them, even before the coming of Y’shua, who was to reject at once the zebahim and the place, it was often plundered by enemies and burnt with fire, and the people carried into captivity among foreign tribes, and then brought back when they betook themselves to the mercy of YHWH; that by these things they might be taught that a people who offer zebahim are driven away and delivered up into the hands of the enemy, but they who do mercy and righteousness are without

zebahim freed from captivity, and restored to their native land. But it fell out that very few understood this; for the greater number, though they could perceive and observe these things, yet were held by the irrational opinion of the vulgar: for right opinion with liberty is the exclusive right of a few.

Sins of the Yisraelim

Chapter 38

“Moshe, then, having arranged these things, and having set over the people one Yahoshua to bring them to the land of their fathers, himself by the command of the living El, went up to a certain mountain, and there died. Yet such was the manner of his death, that till this day no one has found his burial-place. When, therefore, the people reached their fathers’ land, by the providence of YHWH, at their first onset the inhabitants of immoral races are routed, and they enter upon their paternal inheritance, which was distributed among them by lot. For some time thereafter they were ruled not by melekim, but judges, and remained in a somewhat peaceful condition. But when they sought for themselves tyrants rather than melekim, then also with regal ambition they erected a Hekel in the place that had been appointed to them for prayer; and afterwards, through a succession of immoral melekim, the people fell away to greater and still greater impiety.

Mikvah Instituted in Place of Zebahim

Chapter 39

“But when the time began to draw near that what was wanting in the Mosaic institutions should be supplied, as we have said, and that the Navi should appear, of whom he had foretold that He should warn them by the mercy of YHWH to cease from sacrificing; lest they might suppose that on the cessation of sacrifice there was no remission of sins for them, He instituted mikvah by water amongst them, in which they might be absolved from all their sins on the invocation of His name, and for the future, following a perfect life, might abide in immortality, being purified not by the blood of beasts, but by the purification of the Hokmah of YHWH, which is Y’shua. Subsequently also an evident proof of this great mystery is supplied *in the fact*, that everyone who, believing in this Navi who had been foretold by Moshe, is immersed in His name, will be kept unhurt from the destruction of war that impends over the unbelieving tribe, and the place itself; but that those who do not believe will be made exiles from their place and kingdom, that even against their will they may understand and obey the will of YHWH.

Advent of the Navi Emet Y'shua

Chapter 40

“This thing therefore having been prearranged, He who was expected comes, bringing signs and miracles as His credentials by which He should be made manifest. But not even so did the people believe, though they had been trained during so many ages to the belief of these things. And not only did they not believe, but they added blasphemy to unbelief, saying that He was a gluttonous man and a belly-slave, and that He was actuated by a demon, even He who had come for their salvation. To such an extent does immorality prevail by the agency of evil ones; so that, but for the Hokmah of YHWH assisting those who love the truth, almost all would have been involved in disobedient delusion. Therefore He chose us twelve, the first who believed in Him, whom He named shlichim; and afterwards other seventy-two most approved talmidim, that, at least in this way recognizing the pattern of Moshe, the multitude might believe that this is He of whom Moshe foretold, the Navi that was to come.

Rejection of Y'shua

Chapter 41

“But someone may say that it is possible for anyone to imitate a number; but what will we say of the signs and miracles that He wrought? For Moshe had wrought miracles and cures in Mitsrayim. He also of whom he foretold that He should rise up a navi like unto himself, though He cured every sickness and infirmity among the people, wrought innumerable miracles, and preached ageless life, was hurried by immoral men to the stake; which deed was, however, by His power turned to good. In short, while He was suffering, all the world suffered with Him; for the sun was darkened, the mountains were torn asunder, the graves were opened, and the veil of the Hekel was rent, as in lamentation for the destruction impending over the place. And yet, though the entire world was moved, they themselves are not even now moved to the consideration of these so great things.

Call of the Goyim

Chapter 42

“But inasmuch as it was necessary that the Goyim should be called into the room of those who remained unbelieving, so that the number might be filled up that had been shown to Avraham, the preaching of the blessed Malkuth of YHWH is sent into all the world. On this account worldly spirits are disturbed, who always oppose those who are in quest of liberty, and who make use of the engines of error to destroy YHWH's building; while those who press on to the esteem of safety and liberty,

being rendered braver by their resistance to these spirits, and by the toil of great struggles against them, attain the crown of safety not without the palm of victory. Meantime, when He had suffered, and darkness had overwhelmed the world from the sixth even to the ninth hour, as soon as the sun shone out again, and things were returned to their usual course, even immoral men returned to themselves and their former practices, their fear having abated. For some of them, watching the place with all care, when they could not prevent His rising again, said that He was a magician; others pretended that He was stolen away.

Success of the Besorah

Chapter 43

“Nevertheless, the truth everywhere prevailed; for, in proof that these things were done by divine power, we who had been very few became in the course of a few days, by the help of YHWH, far more than they. So that the kohenim at one time were afraid, lest it be that by the providence of YHWH, to their confusion, the whole of the people should come over to our faith. Therefore they often sent to us, and asked us to discourse to them concerning Y’shua, whether He were the Navi whom Moshe foretold, who is the ageless Moshiach. For on this point only does there seem to be any difference between us who believe in Y’shua, and the unbelieving Yahudaïm. But while they often made such requests to us, and we sought for a fitting opportunity, a week of years was completed from the passion of Y’shua; the qahal of YHWH that was constituted in Yahrushalayim was most plentifully multiplied and grew, being governed with most righteous ordinances by Ya’akov, who was ordained Mevaqqre in it by YHWH.

Challenge by Kayafa

Chapter 44

“But when we twelve shlichim, on the day of the Pesach, had come together with an immense multitude, and entered into the qahal of the brothers, each one of us, at the request of Ya’akov, stated briefly, in the hearing of the people, What we had done in every place. While this was going on, Kayafa, the Kohen haGadol, sent kohenim to us, and asked us to come to him, that either we should prove to him that Y’shua is the ageless Moshiach, or he to us that He is not, and that so all the people should agree upon the one faith or the other; and this he frequently entreated us to do. But we often put it off, always seeking for a more convenient time.” Then I, Clement, answered to this: “I think that this very question, whether He is the Moshiach, is of great importance for the establishment of the faith; otherwise the Kohen haGadol would not so frequently ask that he might either learn or teach concerning the Moshiach.” Then Kefa: “You have answered rightly, O Clement; for

as no one can see without eyes, nor hear without ears, nor smell without nostrils, nor taste without a tongue, nor handle anything without hands, so it is impossible, without Y'shua, to know what is pleasing to YHWH." And I answered: "I have already learned from your instruction that this true navi is *the Moshiach*; but I should wish to learn what *the Moshiach* means, or why He is so called, that a matter of so great importance may not be vague and uncertain to me."

Why Called the Moshiach

Chapter 45

Then Kefa began to instruct me in this manner: "When Elohim had made the world, as Master of the universe, He appointed chiefs over the several creatures, over the trees even, and the mountains, and the fountains, and the rivers, and all things that He had made, as we have told you; for it were too long to mention them one by one. He set a malach as chief over the malachim, a spirit over the spirits, a star over the stars, a demon over the demons, a bird over the birds, a beast over the beasts, a serpent over the serpents, a fish over the fishes, and a man over men, who is Moshiach Y'shua. But He is called *Moshiach* by a certain excellent rite of obedience; for as there are certain names common to melekim, as Ahasuerus among the Persians, Caesar among the Romans, Pharaoh among the Mitsrayim, so among the Yahudaïm Amelek is called *Moshiach*. And the reason of this appellation is this: Although indeed He is the Son of YHWH, and the beginning of all things, He became as man; Him first YHWH anointed with oil that was taken from the wood of the tree of life: from that anointing therefore He is called *Moshiach*. from there, moreover, He Himself also, according to the appointment of His Father, anoints with similar oil every one of the obedient when they come to His kingdom, for their refreshment after their labors, as having got over the difficulties of the way; so that their light may shine, and being filled with the Ruach HaKodesh, they may be endowed with immortality. But it occurs to me that I have sufficiently explained to you the whole nature of that branch from which that ointment is taken.

Anointing

Chapter 46

"But now also I shall, by a very short representation, recall you to the recollection of all these things. In the present life, Aaron, the first Kohen haGadol, was anointed with a composition of anointing, which was made after the pattern of that spiritual ointment of which we have spoken before. He was Sar of the people, and as Amelek received first-fruits and tribute from the people, man by man; and having undertaken the office of judging the people, he judged of things clean and things unclean. But if anyone else was anointed with the same ointment, as deriving virtue from it, he

became either melek, or navi, or priest. If, then, this temporal favor compounded by men had such efficacy, consider now how potent was that ointment extracted by YHWH from a branch of the tree of life, when that which was made by men could confer so excellent dignities among men. For what in the present age is more glorious than a navi, more illustrious than a priest, more exalted than Amelek?"

Adamah Anointed a Navi

Chapter 47

To this, I replied: "I remember, Kefa, that you told me of the first man that he was a navi; but you did not say that he was anointed. If then there be no navi without anointing, how could the first man be a navi, since he was not anointed?" Then Kefa, smiling, said: "If the first man prophesied, it is certain that he was also anointed. For although he who has recorded Torah in his pages is silent as to his anointing, yet he has evidently left us to understand these things. For as, if he had said that he was anointed, it would not be doubted that he was also a navi, although it were not written in Torah; so, since it is certain that he was a navi, it is in like manner certain that he was also anointed, because without anointing he could not be a navi. But you should rather have said, "If the ointment was compounded by Aaron by the perfumer's art, how could the first man be anointed before Aaron's time, the arts of composition not yet having been discovered?" Then I answered, "Do not misunderstand me, Kefa; for I do not speak of that compounded *ointment* and temporal oil, but of that simple and ageless ointment, which you told me was made by YHWH, after whose likeness you say that that other was compounded by men."

Y'shua, a Priest

Chapter 48

Then Kefa answered, with an appearance of indignation: "What, do you suppose, Clement, that all of us can know all things before the time? But not to be drawn aside now from our proposed discourse, we will at another time, when your progress is more manifest, explain these things more distinctly. "Then, however, a priest or a navi, being anointed with the compounded ointment, putting fire to the altar of YHWH, was held illustrious in all the world. But after Aaron, who was a priest, another is taken out of the waters. I do not speak of Moshe, but of Him who, in the waters of mikvah, was called by YHWH His Son. For it is Y'shua who has put out, by the favor of mikvah, that fire that the priest kindled for sins; for, from the time when He appeared, the anointing has ceased, by which the office of kohen or navi or melek was conferred.

Two Comings of Moshiach

Chapter 49

“His coming, therefore, was predicted by Moshe, who delivered Torah of YHWH to men; but by another also before him, as I have already informed you. He therefore intimated that He should come, humble indeed in His first coming, but glorious in His second. And the first, indeed, has been already accomplished; since He has come and taught, and He, the Judge of all, has been judged and slain. But at His second coming He will come to judge, and will indeed condemn the immoral, but will take the obedient into a share and association with Himself in His malkuth. Now the faith of His second coming depends upon His first. For the naviim—especially Ya’akov and Moshe—spoke of the first, but some also of the second. But the excellency of prophecy is chiefly shown in this, that the naviim spoke not of things to come, according to the sequence of things; otherwise they might seem merely as wise men to have conjectured what the sequence of things pointed out.

His Rejection by the Yahudaïm

Chapter 50

“But what I say is this: It was to be expected that Moshiach should be received by the Yahudaïm, to whom He came, and that they should believe on Him who was expected for the salvation of the people, according to the traditions of the fathers; but that the Goyim should be averse to Him, since neither promise nor announcement concerning Him had been made to them, and indeed He had never been made known to them even by name. Yet the naviim, contrary to the order and sequence of things, said that He should be the expectation of the Goyim, and not of the Yahudaïm. And so it is. For when He came, He was not at all acknowledged by those who seemed to expect Him, in consequence of the tradition of their ancestors; whereas those who had heard nothing at all of Him, both believe that He has come, and hope that He is to come. And thus in all things prophecy appears faithful, which said that He was the expectation of the Goyim. The Yahudaïm, therefore, have erred concerning the first coming of YHWH; and on this point only there is disagreement betwixt us and them. For they themselves know and expect that Moshiach will come; but that He has come already in humility—even He who is called Y’shua—they do not know. And this is a great confirmation of His coming, that all do not believe on Him.

The Only Saviour

Chapter 51

“He, therefore, has YHWH appointed in the end of the age; because it was impossible that the evils of men could be removed by any other, provided that the

natures of the human race were to remain entire, i.e., the liberty of the will being preserved. This condition, therefore, being preserved inviolate, He came to invite to His malkuth all righteous ones, and those who have been desirous to please Him. For these He has prepared unspeakable good things, and the heavenly city Yahrushalayim, which will shine above the brightness of the sun, for the habitation of the kadoshim. But the unrighteous, and the immoral and those who have despised YHWH, and have devoted the life given them to diverse immoralities, and have given to the practice of evil the time that was given them for the work of righteousness – He will hand over to fitting and adequate vengeance. But the rest of the things that will then be done, it is neither in the power of malachim nor of men to tell or to describe. This only it is enough for us to know, that YHWH will confer upon the good an ageless possession of good things.”

The Kadoshim before Moshiach’s Coming

Chapter 52

When he had thus spoken, I answered: “If those will enjoy the Malkuth of Moshiach, whom His coming will find righteous, will then those be wholly deprived of the kingdom, who have died before His coming?” Then Kefa says: “You compel me, O Clement, to touch upon things that are unspeakable. But so far as it is allowed to declare them, I will not shrink from doing so. Know then that Moshiach, who was from the beginning, and always, was ever present with the obedient, though secretly, through all their generations: especially with those who waited for Him, to whom He frequently appeared. But the time was not yet that there should be a resurrection of the bodies that were dissolved; but this seemed rather to be their reward from YHWH, that whoever should be found righteous, should remain longer in the body; or, at least, as is clearly related in the writings of Torah concerning a certain righteous man, that YHWH translated him. In like manner others were dealt with, who pleased His will, that, being translated to Paradise, they should be kept for the malkuth. But as to those who have not been able completely to fulfill the rule of righteousness, but have had some remnants of evil in their flesh, their bodies are indeed dissolved, but their spirits are kept in good and blessed abodes, that at the resurrection of the dead, when they will recover their own bodies, purified even by the dissolution, they may obtain an ageless inheritance in proportion to their good deeds. And therefore blessed are all those who will attain to the Malkuth of Moshiach; for not only will they escape the pains of Geh Hinnom, but will also remain incorruptible, and will be the first to see YHWH the Father, and will obtain the rank of honor among the first in the presence of YHWH.

Animosity of the Yahudaïm

Chapter 53

“So there is not the least doubt concerning Moshiach; and all the unbelieving Yahudaïm are stirred up with boundless rage against us, fearing lest He against whom they have sinned should be He. And their fear grows all the greater, because they know that, as soon as they fixed Him on the stake, the whole world showed sympathy with Him; and that His body, although they guarded it with strict care, could nowhere be found; and that innumerable multitudes are attaching themselves to His faith. Whence they, together with the Kohen haGadol Kayafa, were compelled to send to us again and again, that an inquiry might be instituted concerning the truth of His name. And when they were constantly entreating that they might either learn or teach concerning Y’shua, whether He were the Moshiach, it seemed good to us to go up into the Hekel, and in the presence of all the people to bear witness concerning Him, and at the same time to charge the Yahudaïm with many foolish things that they were doing. For the people were now divided into many parties, ever since the days of Yochanan the Dunker.

Yahudai Sects

Chapter 54

54:1 “For when the rising of Moshiach was at hand for the abolition of zebahim, and for the bestowal of the favor of mikvah, the enemy, understanding from the predictions that the time was at hand, wrought various schisms among the people, that, if it might be possible to abolish the former sin, the latter fault might be incorrigible. The first schism, therefore, was that of those who were called Zaddikim (in this case, Sadducees), which took their rise almost in the time of Yochanan. These, as more righteous than others, began to separate themselves from the assembly of the people, and to deny the resurrection of the dead, and to assert that by an argument of infidelity, saying that it was unworthy that YHWH should be worshipped, as it were, under the promise of a reward. The first author of this opinion was Dositheus; the second was Shimon. Another schism is that of the Shomronim; for they deny the resurrection of the dead, and assert that YHWH is not to be worshipped in Yahrushalayim, but on Mount Gerizim.

54:2 They indeed rightly, from the predictions of Moshe, expect the one Navi Emet; but by the immorality of Dositheus they were hindered from believing that Y’shua is He whom they were expecting. The Sophrim also, and Prushim, are led away into another schism; but these, being immersed by Yochanan, and holding the word of truth received from the tradition of Moshe as the key of the Malkuth Shamayim, have hid it from the hearing of the people. Yea, some even of the talmidim of Yochanan, who seemed to be great ones, have separated themselves from the people, and proclaimed their own master as the Moshiach. But all these schisms have been

prepared, that by means of them the faith of Moshiach and mikvah might be hindered.

Public Discussion

Chapter 55

“However, as we were proceeding to say, when the Kohen haGadol had often sent kohenim to ask us that we might discourse with one another concerning Y’shua; when it seemed a fit opportunity, and it pleased all the qahal, we went up to the Hekel, and, standing on the steps together with our faithful brothers, the people kept perfect silence; and first the Kohen haGadol began to exhort the people that they should hear patiently and quietly, and at the same time witness and judge of those things that were to be spoken. Then, in the next place, exalting with many praises the rite of zebah that had been bestowed by YHWH upon the human race for the remission of sins, he found fault with the mikvah of our Y’shua, as having been recently invented in opposition to the zebah. But Mattityahu, meeting his propositions, showed clearly, that whosoever will not obtain the mikvah of Y’shua will not only be deprived of the Malkuth Shamayim, but will not be without peril at the resurrection of the dead, even though he is entitled by the exclusive right of a good life and an upright disposition. Having made these and such like statements, Mattityahu stopped.

Zaddikim Refuted

Chapter 56

“But the party of the Zaddikim (in this case, Sadducees), who deny the resurrection of the dead, were in a rage, so that one of them cried out from amongst the people, saying that those greatly err who think that the dead ever arise. In opposition to him, Adamyah, my brother, answering, declared that it is not an error, but the surest matter of faith, that the dead rise, in accordance with the teaching of Him whom Moshe foretold that He should come - the Navi Emet Y’shua. ‘Or if,’ says he, ‘you do not think that this is He whom Moshe foretold, let this first be inquired into, so that when this is clearly proved to be He, there may be no further doubt concerning the things that He taught.’ These and many such like things Adamyah proclaimed, and then stopped.

Shomronim Refuted

Chapter 57

“But a certain Shomroni speaking against the people and against YHWH, and asserting that neither are the dead to rise, nor is that worship of YHWH to be maintained that is in Yahrushalayim, but that Mount Gerizim is to be revered, added also this in opposition to us, that our Y’shua was not He whom Moshe foretold as a Navi to come into the world. Against him, and another who supported him in what he said, Ya’akov and Yochanan, the sons of Zavdai, strove vigorously; and although they had a command not to enter into their cities, nor to bring the word of preaching to them, yet, lest their discourse, unless it were confined, should hurt the faith of others, they replied so prudently and so powerfully, that they put them to perpetual silence. For Ya’akov made an oration concerning the resurrection of the dead, with the approval of all the people; while Yochanan showed that if they would abandon the error of Mount Gerizim, they should consequently acknowledge that Y’shua was indeed He who, according to the prophecy of Moshe, was expected to come; since, indeed, as Moshe wrought signs and miracles, so also did Y’shua. And there is no doubt but that the likeness of the signs proves Him to be that navi of whom he said that He should come, ‘like himself.’ Having declared these things, and more to the same effect, they ceased.

Sophrim Refuted

Chapter 58

“And, behold, one of the Sophrim, shouting from the midst of the people, says: ‘The signs and miracles that your *Y’shua* wrought, *He* wrought not as a navi, but as a magician.’ Him Philippos eagerly encounters, showing that by this argument he accused Moshe also. For when Moshe wrought signs and miracles in Mitsrayim, in like manner as Y’shua also did in Judaea, it cannot be doubted that what was said of Y’shua might as well be said of Moshe. Having made these and such like protestations, Philippos was silent.

Prushim Refuted

Chapter 59

“Then a certain Prush, hearing this, chided Philippos because he put Y’shua on a level with Moshe. To whom Natanyahu bar Talmai, answering, boldly declared that we do not only say that Y’shua is equal to Moshe, but that He is greater than he, because Moshe was indeed a navi, as Y’shua is also, but that Moshe was not the Moshiach, as Y’shua is, and therefore He is doubtless greater who is both a navi and the Moshiach, than he who is only a navi. After following out this train of argument, he stopped. After him Ya’akov ha’Alef the son of Halphai gave an address

to the people, with the view of showing that we are not to believe on Y'shua on the ground that the naviim foretold concerning Him, but rather that we are to believe the naviim, that they were really naviim, because the Moshiach bears testimony to them; for it is the presence and coming of Moshiach that show that they are truly naviim: for testimony must be borne by the superior to his inferiors, not by the inferiors to their superior. After these and many similar statements, Ya'akov also was silent. After him Levi began vehemently to charge it upon the people that they did not believe in Y'shua, who had done them so much good by teaching them the things that are of YHWH, by comforting the afflicted, healing the sick, relieving the poor; yet for all these benefits their return had been hatred and death. When he had declared these and many more such things to the people, he ceased.

Talmidim of Yochanan Refuted

Chapter 60

“And, behold, one of the talmidim of Yochanan asserted that Yochanan was the Moshiach, and not Y'shua, inasmuch as Y'shua Himself declared that Yochanan was greater than all men and all naviim. ‘If, then,’ said he, ‘he be greater than all, he must be held to be greater than Moshe, and then Y'shua himself. But if he be the greatest of all, then must he be the Moshiach.’ To this Shimon Qanai, answering, asserted that Yochanan was indeed greater than all the naviim, and all who are born of women, yet that he is not greater than the Son of Adamah. Accordingly, Y'shua is also the Moshiach, whereas Yochanan is only a navi: and there is as much difference between him and Y'shua as between the forerunner and Him whose forerunner he is; or as between Him who gives Torah and him who keeps Torah. Having made these and similar statements, the Zealot also was silent. After him Yosef barNaba, who also is called Mattityahu, who was substituted as a sholiach in the place of Yahudah of Keriot, began to exhort the people that they should not regard Y'shua with hatred, nor speak evil of Him. For it were far more proper, even for one who might be in ignorance or in doubt concerning Y'shua, to love than to hate Him. For YHWH has affixed a reward for loving and a penalty for hating. ‘For the very fact,’ said he, ‘that He assumed a Yahudai body, and was born among the Yahudaïm, how has not this incited us all to love Him?’ When he had spoken this, and more to the same effect, he stopped.

Kayafa Answered

Chapter 61

“Then Kayafa attempted to impugn the doctrine of Y'shua, saying that He spoke vain things, for He said that the poor are blessed; and promised earthly rewards; and placed the chief gift in an earthly inheritance; and promised that those who maintain righteousness will be satisfied with meat and drink; and many things of this sort He is

charged with teaching. Thoma, in reply, proves that his accusation is frivolous; showing that the naviim, in whom Kayafa believes, taught these things much more, and did not show in what manner these things are to be, or how they are to be understood; whereas Y'shua pointed out how they are to be taken. And when he had spoken these things, and others of like kind, Thoma also held his shalom.

Foolishness of Preaching

Chapter 62

“Therefore Kayafa, again looking at me, and sometimes in the way of warning and sometimes in that of accusation, said that I ought for the future to refrain from preaching Moshiach Y'shua lest I should do it to my own destruction, and lest, being deceived myself, I should also deceive others. Then, moreover, he charged me with presumption, because, though I was unlearned, a fisherman, and a rustic, I dared to assume the office of a teacher. As he spoke these things, and many more of like kind, I said in reply, that I incurred less danger, if, as he said, this Y'shua were not the Moshiach, because I received Him as a teacher of Torah; but that he was in terrible danger if this be the very Moshiach, as assuredly He is: for I believe in Him who has appeared; but for whom else, who has never appeared, does he reserve his faith? But if I, an unlearned and uneducated man, as you say, a fisherman and a rustic, have more understanding than wise zaqenim, this, said I, ought the more to strike terror into you. For if I disputed with any learning, and won over you wise and learned men, it would appear that I had acquired this power by long learning, and not by the favor of divine power; but now, when, as I have said, we unskilled men convince and overcome you wise men, who that has any sense does not perceive that this is not a work of human refinement, but of divine will and gift?

Appeal to the Yahudaïm

Chapter 63

“Thus we argued and bore witness; and we who were unlearned men and fishermen, taught the kohenim concerning the unified YHWH of heaven; the Zaddikim, concerning the resurrection of the dead; the Shomronim, concerning the sacredness of Yahrushalayim (not that we entered into their cities, but disputed with them in public); the Sophrim and Prushim, concerning the Malkuth Shamayim; the talmidim of Yochanan, that they should not allow Yochanan to be a stumbling-block to them; and all the people, that Y'shua is the ageless Moshiach. At last, however, I warned them, that before we should go forth to the Goyim, to preach to them the knowledge of YHWH the Father, they should themselves be reconciled to YHWH, receiving His Son; for I showed them that in no way else could they be saved, unless through the favor of the Ruach HaKodesh they hastened to be washed with the mikvah in Y'shua's Name, and received the Ruach HaKodesh of YHWH in His Name, whom

alone they ought to believe concerning those things that He taught so they might merit to attain ageless salvation; but that otherwise it was utterly impossible for them to be reconciled to YHWH, even if they should kindle a thousand altars and a thousand high altars to Him.

Temple to Be Destroyed

Chapter 64

“For we,’ said I, ‘have ascertained beyond doubt that YHWH is much rather displeased with the zebahim that you offer, the time of zebahim having now passed away; and because you will not acknowledge that the time for offering victims is now past; therefore, the Hekel will be destroyed, and the abomination of desolation will stand in the devoted place; and then the Besorah will be preached to the Goyim for a testimony against you, that your unbelief may be judged by their faith. For the whole world at different times suffers under diverse maladies, either spreading generally over all, or affecting specifically. Therefore, it needs a physician to visit it for its salvation. We therefore bear witness to you, and declare to you what has been hidden from every one of you. It is for you to consider what is for your advantage.’

Tumult Stilled by Gamali-El

Chapter 65

“When I had thus spoken, the whole multitude of the kohenim was in a rage, because I had foretold to them the overthrow of the Hekel. Because Gamali-El, who was secretly our brother in the faith, but by our advice remained among them, saw that they were greatly enraged and moved with intense fury against us, he stood up, and said, ‘Be quiet for a little, O men of Yisrael, for you do not perceive the trial that hangs over you. So refrain from these men; and if what they are engaged in be of human counsel, it will soon come to an end; but if it be from YHWH, why will you sin without cause, and prevail nothing? For who can overpower the will of YHWH? Now therefore, since the day is declining towards evening. I will myself dispute with these men tomorrow, in this same place, in your hearing, so that I may openly oppose and clearly confute every error.’ By this speech of his their fury was to some extent checked, especially in the hope that next day we should be publicly convicted of error; and so he dismissed the people peacefully.

Discussion Resumed

Chapter 66

“Now when we had come to our Ya’akov, while we detailed to him all that had been said and done, we supped, and remained with him, spending the whole night in

supplication to Almighty YHWH, that the discourse of the approaching disputation might show the unquestionable truth of our faith. Therefore, on the following day, Ya'akov the Mevaqqre went up to the Hekel with us, and with the whole qahal. There we found a great multitude, which had been waiting for us from the middle of the night. Therefore, we took our stand in the same place as before, in order that, standing on an elevation, we might be seen by all the people. Then, when profound silence was obtained, Gamali-El, who, as we have said, was of our faith, but who by a dispensation remained amongst them, that if at any time they should attempt anything unjust or immoral against us, he might either check them by skillfully adopted counsel, or might warn us, that we might either be on our guard or might turn it aside; he therefore, as if acting against us, first of all looking to Ya'akov the Mevaqqre, addressed him in this manner:

Speech of Gamali-El

Chapter 67

"If I, Gamali-El, deem it no reproach either to my learning or to my old age to learn something from babes and unlearned ones, if there be anything that it is for profit or for me safely to acquire (for he who lives reasonably knows that nothing is more precious than the ruach), ought not this to be the object of love and desire to all, to learn what they do not know, and to teach what they have learned? For it is most certain that neither friendship, nor kindred, nor lofty power, ought to be more precious to men than truth. Therefore you, O brothers, if you know anything more, shrink not from laying it before the people of YHWH who are present, and also before your brothers; while the whole people will willingly and in perfect quietness hear what you say. For why should not the people do this, when they see even me equally with themselves willing to learn from you, if YHWH has revealed something further to you? But if you in anything are deficient, do not be ashamed in like manner to be taught by us, that YHWH may fill up whatever is wanting on either side. But if any fear now agitates you on account of some of our people whose minds are prejudiced against you, and if through fear of their violence you dare not openly speak your sentiments, in order that I may deliver you from this fear, I openly swear to you by Almighty YHWH, who lives forever, that I will allow no one to lay hands upon you. Since, then, you have all this people witnesses of this my oath, and you hold the covenant of our oath as a fitting pledge, let each one of you, without any hesitation, declare what he has learned; and let us, brothers, listen eagerly and in silence.'

The Rule of Faith

Chapter 68

“These sayings of Gamali-El did not much please Kayafa; and holding him in suspicion, as it seemed, he began to insinuate himself cunningly into the discussions: for, smiling at what Gamali-El had said, the chief of the kohenim asked of Ya’akov, the chief Mevaqqre, that the discourse concerning Moshiach should not be drawn but from the Scriptures; ‘that we may know,’ said he, ‘whether Y’shua be the very Moshiach or no.’ Then said Ya’akov, ‘We must first inquire from what Scriptures we are especially to derive our discussion.’ Then he, with difficulty, at length overcome by reason, answered, that it must be derived from Torah; and afterwards he made mention also of the naviim.

Two Comings of Moshiach

Chapter 69

“To him our Ya’akov began to show, that whatsoever things the naviim say they have taken from Torah, and what they have spoken is in accordance with Torah. He also made some statements respecting the scrolls of the Kings: in what way, and when, and by whom they were written, and how they ought to be used. And when he had discussed most fully concerning Torah, and had, by a most clear exposition, brought into light whatever things are in it concerning Moshiach, he showed by most abundant proofs that Y’shua is the Moshiach, and that in Him are fulfilled all the prophecies that related to His humble coming. For he showed that two comings of Him are foretold: one in humiliation, which He has accomplished; the other in glory, which is hoped for to be accomplished, when He will come to give the malkuth to those who believe in Him, and who observe all things that He has commanded. And when he had plainly taught the people concerning these things, he added this also: That unless a man be immersed in water, in the name of Y’shua, as Y’shua taught, he can neither receive remission of sins nor enter into the Malkuth Shamayim; and he declared that this is the prescription of the unbegotten Elohim. To which he added this also: ‘Do not think that we speak of two unbegotten Elohim, or that one is divided into two, or that the same is made male and female. But we speak of the only-begotten Son of YHWH, not sprung from another source, but born from YHWH’s bosom; and in like manner we speak of the Ruach.’ But when he had spoken some things also concerning mikvah, through seven successive days he persuaded all the people and the Kohen haGadol that they should hasten straightway to receive mikvah.

Tumult Raised by Shaul

Chapter 70

“And when matters were at that point that they should come and be immersed, some one of our enemies, entering the Hekel with a few men, began to cry out, and to say, ‘What mean you, O men of Yisrael? Why are you so easily hurried on? Why are you led headlong by most miserable men, who are deceived by Shimon, a magician?’ While he was thus speaking, and adding more to the same effect, and while Ya’akov the Mevaqqre was refuting him, he began to excite the people and to raise a tumult, so that the people might not be able to hear what was said. Therefore he began to drive all into confusion with shouting, and to undo what had been arranged with much labor, and at the same time to reproach the kohenim, and to enrage them with revilings and abuse, and, like a madman, to excite everyone to murder, saying, ‘What do you? Why do you hesitate? O sluggish and inert, why do we not lay hands upon them, and pull all these fellows to pieces?’ When he had said this, he first, seizing a strong brand from the altar, set the example of smiting. Then others also, seeing him, were carried away with like readiness. Then ensued a tumult on either side - of the beating and the beaten. Much blood is shed; there is a confused flight, in the midst of which that enemy attacked Ya’akov, and threw him headlong from the top of the steps; and supposing him to be dead, he cared not to inflict further violence upon him.

Flight to Yericho

Chapter 71

“But our haverim lifted him up, for they were both more numerous and more powerful than the others; but, from their fear of YHWH, they rather suffered themselves to be killed by an inferior force, than they would kill others. But when the evening came the kohenim shut up the Hekel, and we returned to the house of Ya’akov, and spent the night there in prayer. Then before daylight we went down to Yericho, to the number of 5000 men. Then after three days one of the brothers came to us from Gamali-El, whom we mentioned before, bringing to us secret tidings that that enemy had received a commission from Kayafa, the Kohen haGadol, that he should arrest all who believed in Y’shua, and should go to Dameshek with his letters, and that there also, employing the help of the unbelievers, he should make havoc among the faithful; and that he was hastening to Dameshek chiefly on this account, because he believed that Kefa had fled thither. And about thirty days thereafter he stopped on his way while passing through Yericho going to Dameshek. At that time we were absent, having gone out to the sepulchers of two brothers that were whitened of themselves every year, by which miracle the fury of many against us was restrained, because they saw that our brothers were held in remembrance before YHWH.

Kefa Sent to Caesarea

Chapter 72

“While, therefore, we abode in Yericho, and gave ourselves to prayer and fasting, Ya’akov the Mevaqqre sent for me, and sent me here to Caesarea, saying that Zacchai had written to him from Caesarea, that one Shimon, a Samaritan magician, was subverting many of our people, asserting that he was the Standing One—that is, in other words, the Moshiach—and the great power of El Elyon, which is superior to the Creator of the world; at the same time that he showed many miracles, and made some doubt, and others fall away to him. He informed me of all things that had been ascertained respecting this man from those who had formerly been either his associates or his talmidim, and had afterwards been converted by Zacchai. ‘Many therefore there are, O Kefa,’ said Ya’akov, ‘for whose safety’s sake it behooves you to go and to refute the magician, and to teach the word of truth. Therefore, make no delay; nor let it grieve you that you set out alone, knowing that YHWH by Y’shua will go with you, and will help you, and that soon, by His favor, you will have many associates and sympathizers. Now be sure that you send me in writing every year an account of your sayings and doings, and especially at the end of every seven years.’ With these expressions he dismissed me, and in six days I arrived at Caesarea.

Welcomed by Zacchai

Chapter 73

“When I entered the city, our most beloved brother Zacchai met me; and embracing me, brought me to this lodging, in which he himself stayed, inquiring of me concerning each of the brothers, especially concerning our honorable brother Ya’akov. And when I told him that he was still lame on one foot, on his immediately asking the cause of this, I related to him all that I have now detailed to you, how we had been called by the kohenim and Kayafa the Kohen haGadol to the Hekel, and how Ya’akov the Mevaqqre, standing on the top of the steps, had for seven successive days shown the whole people from the Scriptures of YHWH that Y’shua is the Moshiach; and how, when all were acquiescing that they should be immersed by him in the name of Y’shua, an enemy did all those things that I have already mentioned, and that I need not repeat.

Shimon HaMag Challenges Kefa

Chapter 74

“When Zacchai had heard these things, he told me in return of the doings of Shimon; and in the meantime Shimon himself—how he heard of my arrival I do not know—sent a message to me, saying, ‘Let us dispute tomorrow in the hearing of the

people.' To which I answered, 'Be it so, as it pleases you.' And this promise of mine was known over the whole city, so that even you, who arrived on that very day, learned that I was to hold a discussion with Shimon on the following day, and having found out my abode, according to the directions that you had received from Yosef barNaba, came to me. But I so rejoiced at your coming, that my mind, moved I know not how, hastened to expound all things quickly to you, yet especially that which is the main point in our faith, concerning Y'shua, which alone, I doubt not, is a sufficient foundation for the whole of our halakah. Then, in the next place, I unfolded to you the more secret meaning of the written Torah, through its several heads, which there was occasion to unfold; neither did I conceal from you the good things of the traditions. But what remains, beginning from tomorrow, you will hear from day to day in connection with the questions that will be raised in the discussion with Shimon, until by YHWH's favor we reach that city of Rome to which we believe that our journey is to be directed." I then declared that I owed him all thanks for what he had told me, and promised that I would most readily do all that he commanded. Then, having taken food, he ordered me to rest, and he also betook himself to rest."

Book 2

Power of Habit

Chapter 75

When the day dawned that had been fixed for the discussion with Shimon, Kefa, rising at the first cock-crowing, aroused us also: for we were sleeping in the same apartment, thirteen of us in all; of whom, next to Kefa, Zacchai was first, then Tzephanyah, Yahusef and Micha-El, Eli-Esdrus, Pinchas, El-Azar, and El-Isha: after these I (Clement) and Nakdimon; then Niceta and Aquila, who had formerly been talmidim of Shimon, and were converted to the faith of Moshiach under the teaching of Zacchai. Of the women there was no one present. As the evening light was still lasting, we all sat down; and Kefa, seeing that we were awake, and that we were giving attention to him, having saluted us, immediately began to speak, as follows: "I confess, brothers, that I wonder at the power of human nature, which I see to be fit and suited to every call upon it. This, however, it occurs to me to say of what I have found by experience, that when the middle of the night is passed, I awake of my own accord, and sleep does not come to me again. I have done this for this reason, that I have formed the habit of recalling to memory the words of my Master, which I heard from Himself; and for the longing I have towards them, I constrain my mind and my thoughts to be roused, that, awaking to them, and recalling and arranging them one by one, I may retain them in my memory. From this, therefore, while I desire to cherish the sayings of Y'shua with all delight in my heart, the habit of waking has come upon me, even if there be nothing that I wish to think of. Thus, in some

unaccountable way, when any custom is established, the old custom is changed, provided indeed you do not force it above measure, but as far as the measure of nature admits. For it is not possible to be altogether without sleep; otherwise night would not have been made for rest.”

Curtailment of Sleep

Chapter 76

Then I, when I heard this, said: “You have very well said, O Kefa; for one custom is superseded by another. For when I was at sea, I was at first distressed, and all my system was disordered, so that I felt as if I had been beaten, and could not bear the tossing and tumult of the sea; but after a few days, when I had got accustomed to it, I began to bear it tolerably, so that I was glad to take food immediately in the morning along with the sailors, whereas before it was not my custom to eat anything before the seventh hour. Now, therefore, simply from the custom that I then acquired, hunger reminds me about that time at which I used to eat with the sailors; which, however, I hope to get rid of, when once another custom will have been formed. I believe, therefore, that you also have acquired the habit of wakefulness, as you state; and you have wished at a fitting time to explain this to us, that we also may not grudge to throw off and dispense with some portion of our sleep, that we may be able to take in the precepts of the living halakah. For when the food is digested, and the mind is under the influence of the silence of night, those things that are seasonably taught abide in it.”

Need of Caution

Chapter 77

Then Kefa, being pleased to hear that I understood the purport of his preface, that he had delivered it for our advantage, and commending me, doubtless for the purpose of encouraging and stimulating me, began to deliver the following discourse: “It seems to me to be seasonable and necessary to have some discussion relating to those things that are near at hand; that is, concerning Shimon: for I should wish to know of what character and of what conduct he is. Therefore, if any one of you has any knowledge of him, let him not fail to inform me; for it is of consequence to know these things beforehand. For if we have it in charge that when we enter into a city we should first learn who in it is worthy that we may eat with him, how much more is it proper for us to ascertain who or what sort of man he is to whom the words of immortality are to be committed! For we ought to be careful, yes, extremely careful, that we not cast our pearls before swine.

Prudence in Dealing with Opponents

Chapter 78

“But for other reasons also it is of importance that I should have some knowledge of this man. For if I know that in those things concerning which it cannot be doubted that they are good, he is faultless and irreproachable— that is to say, if he is sober, merciful, upright, gentle, and humane, which no one doubts to be good qualities— then it will seem to be fitting that upon him who possesses these good virtues, that which is lacking of faith and knowledge should be conferred; and so his life, which is in other respects worthy of approval, should be amended in those points in which it will appear to be imperfect. But if he remains wrapped up and polluted in those sins that are manifestly such, it does not become me to speak to him at all of the more secret and set-apart things of divine knowledge, but rather to protest and confront him, that he cease from sin, and cleanse his actions from vice. But if he insinuate himself, and lead us on to speak what he, while he acts improperly, ought not to hear, it will be our part to parry him cautiously. For not to answer him at all does not seem proper, for the sake of the hearers, lest they may think that we decline the contest through want of ability to answer him, and so their faith may be injured through their misunderstanding of our purpose.”

Shimon HaMag, a Formidable Antagonist

Chapter 79

When Kefa had thus spoken to us, Niceta asks permission to say something to him; and Kefa having granted permission, he says: “With your pardon, I beseech you, my master Kefa, to hear me, who am very anxious for you, and who am afraid lest, in the contest that you have in hand with Shimon, you should seem to be overmatched. For it very frequently is the case that he who defends the truth does not gain the victory, since the hearers are either prejudiced, or have no great interest in the better cause. But over and above all this, Shimon himself is a most vehement orator, trained in the dialectic art, and in the meshes of syllogisms; and what is worse than all, he is greatly skilled in the magic art. And therefore I fear, lest being so strongly fortified on every side, he will be thought to be defending the truth, while he is alleging falsehoods, in the presence of those who do not know him. For neither should we ourselves have been able to escape from him, and to be converted to YHWH, had it not been that, while we were his assistants and the sharers of his errors, we had ascertained that he was a deceiver and a magician.”

Chapter VI: Shimon HaMag: His Immorality

Chapter 80

When Niceta had thus spoken, Aquila also, asking that he might be permitted to speak, proceeded in manner following: “Receive, I entreat you, most excellent Kefa,

the assurance of my love towards you; for indeed I also am extremely anxious on your account. And do not blame us in this, for indeed to be concerned for any one comes of affection; whereas to be indifferent is no less than hatred. But I call YHWH to witness that I feel for you, not as knowing you to be weaker in debate—for indeed I was never present at any dispute in which you were engaged—but because I well know the impieties of this man, I think of your reputation, and at the same time the inner-beings of the hearers, and above all, the interests of the truth itself. For this magician is vehement towards all things that he wishes, and immoral above measure. For in all things we know him well, since from boyhood we have been assistants and ministers of his immorality; and had not the love of YHWH rescued us from him, we should even now be engaged in the same evil deeds with him. But a certain inborn love towards YHWH rendered his immorality hateful to us and the worship of YHWH attractive to us. Whence I think also that it was the work of YHWH that we, being first made his associates, should take knowledge in what manner or by what effects the prodigies that he seems to work. For who is there that would not be astonished at the wonderful things that he does? Who would not think that he was a god come down from heaven for the salvation of men? For myself, I confess, if I had not known him intimately, and had taken part in his doings, I would easily have been carried away with him. Whence it was no great thing for us to be separated from his society, knowing as we did that he depends upon magic arts and immoral devices. But if you also thyself wish to know all about him—who, what, and whence he is, and how he contrives what he does—then listen.

Shimon HaMag: His History

Chapter 81

“This Shimon’s father was Antonius and his mother Rachel. By tribe he is a Shomroni from a village of the Get tones; by profession a magician yet exceedingly well trained in the Greek literature; desirous of glory, and boasting above all the human race, so that he wishes himself to be believed to be an exalted power, which is above YHWH the Creator, and to be thought to be the Moshiach, and to be called the *Standing One*. And he uses this name as implying that he can never be dissolved, asserting that his flesh is so compacted by the power of his divinity, that it can endure to eternity. Hence, therefore, he is called the *Standing One*, as though he cannot fall by any corruption.

Shimon HaMag: His History

Chapter 82

“For after that Yochanan the Dunker was killed, as you yourself also know, when Dositheus had broached his heresy, with thirty other chief talmidim, and one woman, who was called *Luna*—whence also these thirty appear to have been appointed with

reference to the number of the days, according to the course of the moon—this Shimon ambitious of evil glory, as we have said, goes to Dositheus, and pretending friendship, entreats him, that if any one of those thirty should die, he should straightway substitute him in for the dead: for it was contrary to their rule either to exceed the fixed number or to admit any one who was unknown or not yet proved; whence also the rest, desiring to become worthy of the place and number, are eager in every way to please, according to the institutions of their sect, each one of those who aspire after admittance into the number, hoping that he may be deemed worthy to be put into the place of the deceased, when, as we have said, any one dies. Therefore Dositheus, being greatly urged by this man, introduced Shimon when a vacancy occurred among the number.

Shimon HaMag: His Profession

Chapter 83

“But not long after, he fell in love with that woman whom they call Luna; and he confided all things to us as his haverim: how he was a magician, and how he loved Luna, and how, being desirous of glory, he was unwilling to enjoy her ingloriously, but that he was waiting patiently till he could enjoy her honorably; yet so if we also would conspire with him towards the accomplishment of his desires. And he promised that, as a reward of this service, he would cause us to be invested with the highest honors, and we should be believed by men to be gods; ‘Only, however, on condition,’ says he, ‘that you confer the chief place upon me, Shimon, who by magic art am able to show many signs and prodigies, by means of which either my esteem or our sect may be established. For I am able to render myself invisible to those who wish to lay hold of me, and again to be visible when I am willing to be seen. If I wish to flee, I can dig through the mountains, and pass through rocks as if they were clay. If I should throw myself headlong from a lofty mountain, I should be borne unhurt to the earth, as if I were held up; when bound, I can loose myself, and bind those who had bound me; being shut up in prison, I can make the barriers open of their own accord; I can render statues animated, so that those who see suppose that they are men. I can make new trees suddenly spring up, and produce sprouts at once. I can throw myself into the fire, and not be burnt; I can change my countenance, so that I cannot be recognized; but I can show people that I have two faces. I will change myself into a sheep or a goat; I will make a beard to grow upon little boys; I will ascend by flight into the air; I will exhibit abundance of gold, and will make and unmake melekim. I will be worshipped as an eloha; I will have divine honors publicly assigned to me, so that an image of me will be set up, and I will be worshipped and adored as a god. And what need of more words? Whatever I wish, that I will be able to do. For already I have achieved many things by way of experiment. In short,’ says he, ‘once when my mother Rachel ordered me to go to the field to reap, and I saw a sickle lying, I ordered it to go and reap; and it reaped ten times more than the others.

Lately, I produced many new sprouts from the earth, and made them bear leaves and produce fruit in a moment; and the nearest mountain I successfully bored through.'

Shimon HaMag: His Deception

Chapter 84

"But when he spoke thus of the production of sprouts and the perforation of the mountain, I was confounded on this account, because he wished to deceive even us, in whom he seemed to place confidence; for we knew that those things had been from the days of our fathers, which he represented as having been done by himself lately. We then, although we heard these atrocities from him, and worse than these, yet we followed up his crimes, and suffered others to be deceived by him, telling also many lies on his behalf; and this before he did any of the things that he had promised, so that while as yet he had done nothing, he was by some thought to be elohim.

Shimon HaMag, at the Head of the Sect of Dositheus

Chapter 85

"Meantime, at the outset, as soon as he was reckoned among the thirty talmidim of Dositheus, he began to depreciate Dositheus himself, saying that he did not teach purely or perfectly, and that this was the result not of ill intention, but of ignorance. But Dositheus, when he perceived that Shimon was depreciating him, fearing lest his reputation among men might be obscured (for he himself was supposed to be the *Standing One*), moved with rage, when they met as usual at the school, seized a rod, and began to beat Shimon; hut suddenly the rod seemed to pass through his body, as if it had been smoke. On which Dositheus, being astonished, says to him, 'Tell me if you are the *Standing One*, that I may adore you.' And when Shimon answered that he was, then Dositheus, perceiving that he himself was not the Standing One, fell down and worshipped him, and gave up his own place as chief to Shimon, ordering all the rank of thirty men to obey him; himself taking the inferior place that Shimon formerly occupied. Not long after this he died.

Shimon HaMag and Luna

Chapter 86

"Therefore, after the death of Dositheus, Shimon took Luna to himself; and with her he still goes about, as you see, deceiving multitudes, and asserting that he himself is a certain power that is above YHWH the Creator, while Luna, who is with him, has been brought down from the higher heavens, and that she is Hokmah, the mother of

all things, for whom, says he, the Greeks and barbarians contending, were able in some measure to see an image of her; but of herself, as she is, as the dweller with the first and only El, they were wholly ignorant. Propounding these and other things of the same sort, he has deceived many. But I ought also to state this, which I remember that I myself saw. Once, when this Luna of his was in a certain tower, a great multitude had assembled to see her, and was standing around the tower on all sides; but she was seen by all the people to lean forward, and to look out through all the windows of that tower. Many other wonderful things he did and does; so that men, being astonished at them, think that he himself is the *el elyon*.

Shimon HaMag: Secret of His Magic

Chapter 87

“Now when Niceta and I once asked him to explain to us how these things could be affected by magic art, and what was the nature of it, Shimon began thus to explain it to us as his associates. ‘I have,’ said he, ‘made the spirit of a boy, pure and violently slain, and invoked by unthinkable commands, to assist me; and by it all is done that I command.’ ‘But,’ said I, ‘is it possible for the spirit of man to do these things?’ He answered: ‘I would have you know this, that the spirit of man holds the next place after the elohim when once it is set free from the darkness of his body. And immediately it acquires insight: so it is invoked for necromancy.’ Then I answered: ‘Why, then, do not the spirits of persons who are slain take vengeance on their slayers?’ ‘Do you not remember,’ said he, ‘that I told you, that when it goes out of the body it acquires knowledge of the future?’ ‘I remember,’ said I. ‘Well, then,’ said he, ‘as soon as it goes out of the body, it immediately knows that there is a judgment to come, and that everyone will suffer punishment for those evils that he has done; and therefore they are unwilling to take vengeance on their slayers, because they themselves are enduring torments for their own evil deeds that they had done here, and they know that severer punishments await them in the judgment. Moreover, they are not permitted by the malachim who preside over them to go out, or to do anything.’ ‘Then’ I replied, ‘if the malachim do not permit them to come hither, or to do what they please, how can the spirits obey the magician who invokes them?’ ‘It is not,’ said he, ‘that they grant indulgence to the spirits that are willing to come: but when the presiding malachim are adjured by one greater than themselves, they have the excuse of our violence who adjure them, to permit the spirits that we invoke to go out: for they do not sin who suffer violence, but we who impose necessity upon them.’ Thereupon Niceta, not able longer to refrain, hastily answered, as indeed I also was about to do, only I wished first to get information from him on several points; but, as I said, Niceta, anticipating me, said: ‘And do you not fear the day of judgment, who do violence to malachim, and invoke spirits, and deceive men, and bargain for divine honor to yourself from them? And how do you persuade us that there will be no judgment, as some of the Yahudaïm profess, and that spirits are not

immortal, as many suppose, though you see them with your very eyes, and receive from them assurance of the divine judgment?

Shimon HaMag, Professes to be Elohim

Chapter 88

“At those sayings of his Shimon grew pale; but after a little, recollecting himself, he thus answered: ‘Do not think that I am a man of your race. I am neither magician, nor lover of Luna, nor son of Antonius. For before my mother Rachel and he came together, she, still a virgin, conceived me, while it was in my power to be either small or great, and to appear as a man among men. Therefore, I have chosen you first as my haverim, for the purpose of trying you, that I may place you first in my heavenly and unspeakable places when I will have proved you. Therefore, I have pretended to be a man so that I might more clearly ascertain if you cherish entire affection towards me.’ But when I heard that, judging him indeed to be a wretch, yet wondering at his impudence; and blushing for him, and at the same time fearing lest he should attempt some evil against us, I beckoned to Niceta to feign for a little along with me, and said to him: ‘Be not angry with us, corruptible men, O you incorruptible elohim, but rather accept our affection, and our mind willing to know who elohim is; for we did not till now know who you are, nor did we perceive that you are he whom we were seeking.’

Shimon HaMag, Professed to Have Made a Boy of Air

Chapter 89

“As we spoke these and such like words with looks suited to the occasion, this most vain fellow believed that we were deceived; and being thereby the more elated, he added also this: ‘I will now be encouraging to you, for the affection that you bear towards me as elohim; for you loved me while you did not know me, and were seeking me in ignorance. But I would not have you doubt that this is truly to be El, when one is able to become small or great as he pleases; for I am able to appear to man in whatever manner I please. Now, then, I will begin to unfold to you what is true. Once on a time, I, by my power, turning air into water, and water again into blood, and solidifying it into flesh, formed a new human creature—a boy— and produced a much nobler work than *YHWH the Creator*. For *He* created a man from the earth, but I from air—a far more difficult matter; and again, I unmade him and restored him to air, but not until I had placed his picture and image in my bedroom, as a proof and memorial of my work.’ Then we understood that he spoke concerning that boy whose spirit, after he had been slain by violence, he made use of for those services that he required.”

Shimon HaMag: Hopelessness of His Case

Chapter 90

But Kefa, hearing these things, said with tears: "Greatly do I wonder at the infinite patience of YHWH, and, on the other hand, at the audacity of human rashness in some. For what further reason can be found to persuade Shimon that YHWH judges the unrighteous, since he persuades himself that he employs the obedience of inner-beings for the service of his crimes? But, in truth, he is deluded by demons. Yet, although he is sure by these very things that spirits are immortal, and are judged for the deeds that they have done, and although he thinks that he really sees those things that we believe by faith; though, as I said, he is deluded by demons, yet he thinks that he sees the very substance of the spirit. How will such a man, I say, be brought to confess either that he acts immorally while he occupies such an evil position, or that he is to be judged for those things that he has done, who, knowing the judgment of YHWH, despises it, and shows himself an enemy to YHWH, and dares commit such horrid things? So it is certain, my brothers, that some oppose the truth and obedience to YHWH, not because it appears to them that reason can by no means stand with faith, but because they are either involved in excess of immorality, or prevented by their own evils, or elated by the swelling of their heart, so that they do not even believe those things that they think that they see with their own eyes.

Men Enemies to YHWH

Chapter 91

"But, inasmuch as inborn affection towards YHWH the Creator seemed to suffice for salvation to those who loved Him, the enemy studies to pervert this affection in men, and to render them hostile and ungrateful to their Creator. For I call heaven and earth to witness, that if YHWH permitted the enemy to rage as much as he desires, all men should have perished long ere now; but for His mercy's sake YHWH does not suffer him. But if men would turn their affection towards YHWH, all would doubtless be saved, even if for some faults they might seem to be corrected for righteousness. But now the most of men have been made enemies of YHWH, whose hearts the immoral one has entered, and has turned aside towards himself the affection that YHWH the Creator had implanted in them, that they might have it towards Him. But of the rest, who seemed for a time to be watchful, the enemy, appearing in a vision of kavod and splendour, and promising them certain great and mighty things, has caused their mind and heart to wander away from YHWH; yet it is for some just reason that he is permitted to accomplish these things."

Responsibility of Men

Chapter 92

To this Aquila answered: "How, then, are men in fault, if the immoral one, transforming himself into the brightness of light, promises to men greater things than the Creator Himself does?" Then Kefa answered: "I think," says he "that nothing is more unjust than this; and now listen while I tell you how unjust it is. If your son, whom you have trained and nourished with all care, and brought to man's estate, should be ungrateful to you, and should leave you and go to another, whom perhaps he may have seen to be richer, and should show to him the honor that he owed to you, and, through hope of greater profit, should deny his birth, and refuse you your paternal rights, would this seem to you right or immoral?" Then Aquila answered: "It is manifest to all that it would be immoral." Then Kefa said: "If you say that this would be immoral among men, how much more so is it in the case of YHWH, who, above all men, is worthy of honor from men; whose benefits we not only enjoy, but by whose means and power it is that we began to be when we were not, and whom, if we please, we will obtain from Him to be forever in blessedness! In order, therefore, that the unfaithful may be distinguished from the faithful, and the obedient from the disobedient, it has been permitted to the immoral one to use those arts by which the affections of every one towards the true Father may be proved. But if there were in truth some strange the elohim, were it right to leave our own Elohim, who created us, and who is our Father and our Maker, and to pass over to another?" "YHWH forbid!" said Aquila. Then said Kefa: "How, then, will we say that the immoral one is the cause of our sin, when this is done by permission of YHWH, that those may be proved and condemned in the day of judgment, who, allured by greater promises, have abandoned their duty towards their true Father and Creator; while those who have kept the faith and the love of their own Father, even with poverty, if so it has befallen, and with tribulation, may enjoy heavenly gifts and immortal dignities in His malkuth. But we will expound these things more carefully at another time. Meantime I desire to know what Shimon did after this."

Disputation Begun

Chapter 93

And Niceta answered: "When he perceived that we had found him out, having spoken to one another concerning his crimes we left him, and came to Zacchai, telling him those same things that we have now told to you. But he, receiving us most kindly, and instructing us concerning the faith of our Master Y'shua haMoshiach, enrolled us in the number of the faithful." When Niceta had done speaking, Zacchai, who had gone out a little before, entered, saying, "It is time, O Kefa, that you proceed to the disputation; for a great crowd, collected in the court of the house, is awaiting you, in the midst of whom stands Shimon, supported by many

attendants.” Then Kefa, when he heard this, ordering me to withdraw for the sake of prayer (for I had not yet been washed from the sins that I had committed in ignorance), said to the rest, “Brothers, let us pray that YHWH, for His unspeakable mercy through His Moshiach, would help me going out on behalf of the salvation of men who have been created by Him.” Having said this and having prayed, he went forth to the court of the house, in which a great multitude of people were assembled; and when he saw them all looking intently on him in profound silence, and Shimon the magician standing in the midst of them like a standard-bearer, he began in the manner following.

The Malkuth of YHWH and His Righteousness

Chapter 94

“Shalom be to all of you who are prepared to give your right hands to truth: for whosoever are obedient to it seem indeed themselves to confer some favor upon YHWH; whereas they do themselves obtain from Him the gift of His greatest bounty, walking in His paths of righteousness. So the first duty of all is to inquire into the righteousness of YHWH and His kingdom; His righteousness, that we may be taught to act rightly; His kingdom, that we may know what is the reward appointed for labor and patience; in which malkuth there is indeed a bestowal of ageless good things upon the good, but upon those who have acted contrary to the will of YHWH, a worthy infliction of penalties in proportion to the doings of every one. It becomes you, therefore, while you are here, that is, while you are in the present life, to ascertain the will of YHWH, while there is opportunity also of doing it. For if any one, before he amends his doings, wishes to investigate concerning things that he cannot discover, such investigation will be foolish and ineffectual. For the time is short, and the judgment of YHWH will be occupied with deeds, not questions. Therefore before all things let us inquire into this: what or in what manner we must act that we may merit to obtain ageless life?

Righteousness the Way to the Kingdom

Chapter 95

“For if we occupy the short time of this life with vain and useless questions, we will without doubt go into the presence of YHWH empty and void of good works, when, as I have said, our works will be brought into judgment. For everything has its own time and place. This is the place, this the time of works; the world to come, that of recompenses. That we may not therefore be entangled by changing the order of places and times, let us inquire in the first place what is the righteousness of YHWH; so that, like persons going to set out on a journey, we may be filled with good works as with abundant provision, so that we may be able to come to the Malkuth of YHWH as to a very great city. For to those who think aright, YHWH is manifest even by the

operations of the world that He has made, using the evidence of His creation; and therefore, since there ought to be no doubt about YHWH, we have now to inquire only about His righteousness and His malkuth. But if our mind suggests to us to make any inquiry concerning secret and hidden things before we inquire into the works of righteousness, we ought to render to ourselves a reason, because if acting well we will merit to obtain salvation: then, going to YHWH chaste and clean, we will be filled with the Ruach haKodesh, and will know all things that are secret and hidden, without any caviling of questions; whereas now, even if anyone should spend the whole of his life in inquiring into these things, he not only will not be able to find them, but will involve himself in greater errors, because he did not first enter through the way of righteousness, and strive to reach the haven of life.

Righteousness; What It Is?

Chapter 96

“And therefore I advise that His righteousness be first inquired into, that, pursuing our journey through it, and placed in the way of truth, we may be able to find Y’shua, running not with swiftness of foot, but with goodness of works, and that, enjoying His guidance, we may be in no danger of mistaking the way. For if under His guidance we will merit to enter that city to which we desire to come, all things concerning which we now inquire we will see with our eyes, being made, as it were, heirs of all things. Understand, therefore, that the way is this course of our life; the travelers are those who do good works; the gate is Y’shua, of whom we speak; the city is the malkuth in which dwells the Almighty Father, whom only those can see who are of pure heart. Let us not then think the labor of this journey hard, because at the end of it there will be rest. For Y’shua Himself also from the beginning of the world, through the course of time, hastens to rest. For He is present with us at all times; and if at any time it is necessary, He appears and corrects us, that He may bring to ageless life those who obey Him. Therefore this is my judgment, as also it is the pleasure of Y’shua, that inquiry should first be made concerning righteousness, by those especially who profess that they know YHWH. If therefore any one has anything to propose that he thinks better, let him speak; and when he has spoken, let him hear, but with patience and quietness: for in order to this at the first, by way of salutation, I prayed for shalom to you all.”

Shimon Refuses Shalom

Chapter 97

To this Shimon answered: “We have no need of your shalom; for if there be shalom and concord, we will not be able to make any advance towards the discovery of truth. For robbers and debauchees have shalom among themselves, and every immorality agrees with itself; and if we have met with this view, that for the sake of

shalom we should give assent to all that is said, we will confer no benefit upon the hearers; but on the contrary, we will impose upon them, and will depart haverim. So, do not invoke shalom, but rather battle, which is the mother of shalom; and if you can, exterminate errors. And do not seek for friendship obtained by unfair admissions; for this I would have you know, above all, that when two fight with each other, then there will be shalom when one has been defeated and has fallen. And therefore fight as best you can, and do not expect shalom without war, which is impossible; or if it can be attained, show us how.”

Kefa's Explanation

Chapter 98

To this Kefa answered: “Hear with all attention, O men, what we say. Let us suppose that this world is a great plain, and that from two states, whose melekim are at variance with each other, two generals were sent to fight: and suppose the general of the good melek gave this counsel, that both armies should without bloodshed submit to the authority of the better melek, whereby all should be safe without danger; but that the opposite general should say, No, but we must fight; that not he who is worthy, but who is stronger, may reign, with those who will escape. Which, I ask you, would you rather choose? I doubt not but that you would give your hands to the better melek, with the safety of all. And I do not now wish, as Shimon says that I do, that assent should be given, for the sake of shalom, to those things that are spoken amiss but that truth be sought for with quietness and order.

Principles on Which the Discussion Should Be Conducted

Chapter 99

“For some, in the contest of disputations, when they perceive that their error is confuted, immediately begin, for the sake of making good their retreat, to create a disturbance, and to stir up strifes, that it may not be manifest to all that they are defeated; and therefore I frequently entreat that the investigation of the matter in dispute may be conducted with all patience and quietness, so that if perchance anything seem to be not rightly spoken, it may be allowed to go back over it, and explain it more distinctly. For sometimes a thing may be spoken in one way and heard in another, while it is either advanced too obscurely, or not attended to with sufficient care; and on this account I desire that our conversation should be conducted patiently, so that neither should the one snatch it away from the other, nor should the unseasonable speech of one contradicting interrupt the speech of the other; and that we should not cherish the desire of finding fault, but that we should be allowed, as I have said, to go over again what has not been clearly enough spoken, that by fairest examination the knowledge of the truth may become clearer. For we ought to know that if anyone is conquered by the truth, it is not he that is

conquered, but the ignorance that is in him, which is the worst of all demons; so that he who can drive it out receives the palm of salvation. For it is our purpose to benefit the hearers, not that we may conquer badly, but that we may be well conquered for the acknowledgment of the truth. For if our speech is actuated by the desire of seeking the truth, even although we will speak anything imperfectly through human frailty, YHWH in His unspeakable goodness will fill up secretly in the understandings of the hearers those things that are lacking. For He is righteous; and according to the purpose of every one, He enables some to find easily what they seek, while to others He renders obscure even what is before their eyes. Since, then, the way of YHWH is the way of shalom, let us with shalom seek the things that are YHWH's. If anyone has anything to advance in answer to this, let him do so; but if there is no one who wishes to answer, I will begin to speak, and I myself will bring forward what another may object to me, and will refute it."

Shimon's Interruption

Chapter 100

When therefore Kefa had begun to continue his discourse, Shimon, interrupting his speech, said: "Why do you hasten to speak whatever you please? I understand your tricks. You wish to bring forward those matters whose explanation you have well studied, that you may appear to the ignorant crowd to be speaking well; but I will not allow you this subterfuge. Now therefore, since you promise, as a brave man, to answer to all that any one chooses to bring forward, be pleased to answer me in the first place." Then Kefa said: "I am ready, only provided that our discussion may be with shalom." Then Shimon said: "Do not you see, O simpleton, that in pleading for shalom *you act* in opposition to your *Master*, and that what you propose is not suitable to *Him* who promises that *He* will overthrow ignorance? Or, if you are right in asking shalom from the audience, then your *Master* was wrong in saying, 'I have not come to send shalom on earth, but a sword.' For either you say well, and *He* not well; or else, if your *Master* said well, then you not at all well: for you do not understand that your statement is contrary to *His*, whose talmid you profess yourself to be."

Questions and Answers

Chapter 101

Then Kefa: "Neither He who sent me did amiss in sending a sword upon the earth, nor do I act contrary to Him in asking shalom of the hearers. But you both unskillfully and rashly find fault with what you do not understand: for you have heard that the Master came not to send shalom on earth; but that He also said, 'Blessed are the shalom-makers, for they will be called the very sons of YHWH,' you have not heard. So my sentiments are not different from those of the Master when I recommend

shalom, to the keepers of which He assigned blessedness.” Then Shimon said: “In your desire to answer for your *Master*, O Kefa, you have brought a much more serious charge against *Him*, if *He Himself* came not to make shalom, yet enjoined upon others to keep it. Where, then, is the consistency of that other saying of *His*, ‘it is enough for the talmid that he be as his *Master*?’”

Consistency of Moshiach’s Teaching

Chapter 101

To this Kefa answered: “Our Master Y’shua, who *is* the Navi Emet and ever mindful of Himself, neither contradicted Himself, nor enjoined upon us anything different from what He Himself practiced. For whereas He said, ‘I am not come to send shalom on earth, but a sword; and henceforth you will see father separated from son, son from father, husband from wife and wife from husband, mother from daughter and daughter from mother, brother from brother, father-in-law from daughter-in-law, friend from friend,’ all these contain the halakah of shalom; and I will tell you how. At the beginning of His preaching, as wishing to invite and lead all to salvation, and induce them to bear patiently labors and trials, He blessed the poor, and promised that they should obtain the Malkuth Shamayim for their endurance of poverty, in order that under the influence of such a hope they might bear with equanimity the right of poverty, despising covetousness; for covetousness is one, and the greatest, of most pernicious sins. But He promised also that the hungry and the thirsty should be satisfied with the ageless blessings of righteousness, in order that they might bear poverty patiently, and not be led by it to undertake any unrighteous work. In like manner also, He said that the pure in heart are blessed, and that thereby they should see YHWH, in order that everyone desiring so great a good might keep himself from evil and polluted thoughts.

Shalom and Strife

Chapter 102

“Thus, therefore, our Master, inviting His talmidim to patience, impressed upon them that the blessing of shalom was also to be preserved with the labor of patience. But, on the other hand, He mourned over those who lived in riches and luxury, who bestowed nothing upon the poor; proving that they must render an account, because they did not pity their neighbors, even when they were in poverty, whom they ought to love as themselves. And by such sayings as these He brought some indeed to obey Him, but others He rendered hostile. The believers therefore, and the obedient, He charges to have shalom among themselves, and says to them, ‘Blessed are the shalom-makers, for they will be called the very sons of YHWH.’ But to those who not

only did not believe, but set themselves in opposition to His halakah, He proclaims the war of the word and of confutation, and says that 'henceforth you will see son separated from father, and husband from wife, and daughter from mother, and brother from brother, and daughter-in-law from mother-in-law, and a man's foes will be they of his own house.' For in every house, when there begins to be a difference betwixt believer and unbeliever, there is necessarily a contest: the unbelievers, on the one hand, fighting against the faith; and the believers on the other, confuting the old error and the vices of sins in them.

Shalom to the Sons of Shalom

Chapter 103

"In like manner, also, during the last period of His teaching, He wages war against the Sophrim and Prushim, charging them with evil deeds and unsound doctrine, and with hiding the key of knowledge that they had handed down to them from Moshe, by which the gate of the heavenly malkuth might be opened. But when our Master sent us forth to preach, He commanded us that into whatsoever city or house we should enter, we should say, 'Shalom be to this house.' 'And if,' said He, 'a son of shalom be there, your shalom will come upon him; but if there be not, your shalom will return to you.' Also that, going out from that house or city, we should shake off upon them the very dust that adhered to our feet. 'But it will be more tolerable for the land of Sedom and Amarah in the Day of Judgment than for that city or house.' This indeed He commanded to be done at length, if first the word of truth be preached in the city or house, whereby they who receive the faith of the truth may become sons of shalom and sons of YHWH; and those who will not receive it may be convicted as enemies of shalom and of YHWH.

Shalom and War

Chapter 104

"Thus, therefore, we, observing the commands of our Master, first offer shalom to our hearers, that the way of salvation may be known without any tumult. But if any one does not receive the words of shalom, nor acquiesce in the truth, we know how to direct against him the war of the word, and to rebuke him sharply by confuting his ignorance and charging home upon him his sins. Therefore, of necessity we offer shalom, that if anyone is a son of shalom, our shalom may come upon him; but from him who makes himself an enemy of shalom, our shalom will return to ourselves. We do not therefore, as you say, propose shalom by agreement with the immoral, for indeed we should straightway have given you the right hand; but only in order that, through our discussing quietly and patiently, it might be more easily ascertained by the hearers which one is the true speech. But if you differ and disagree with yourself, how will you stand? He must of necessity fall, he who is divided in himself; 'for every

malkuth divided against itself will not stand.’ If you have anything to say to this, say on.”

Shimon’s Challenge

Chapter 105

Then said Shimon: “I am astonished at your folly. For you so propound the words of your *Master*, as if it were held to be certain concerning *Him* that *He* is a navi; while I can very easily prove that *He* often contradicted *Himself*. In short, I will refute you from those words that you have yourself brought forward. For you say, that *He* said that every malkuth or every city divided in itself will not stand; and elsewhere you say that *He* said that *He* would send a sword, that *He* might separate those who are in one house, so that son will be divided from father, daughter from mother, brother from brother; so that if there be five in one house, three will be divided against two, and two against three. If, then, everything that is divided falls, he who makes divisions furnishes causes of falling; and if *He* is such, assuredly *He* is immoral. Answer this if you can.”

Authority

Chapter 106

Then Kefa: “Do not rashly take exception, O Shimon, against the things that you do not understand. In the first place, I will answer your assertion that I set forth the words of my Master, and from them resolve matters about which there is still doubt. Our Master, when He sent us shlichim to preach, enjoined us to teach all tribes the things that were committed to us. We cannot therefore speak those things as they were spoken by Him. For our commission is not to *speak*, but to *teach* those things, and from them to show how every one of them rests upon truth. Nor, again, are we permitted to speak anything of our own. For we are sent; and of necessity he who is sent delivers the message as he has been ordered, and sets forth the will of the sender. For if I should speak anything different from what He who sent me enjoined me, I should be a false sholiach, not saying what I am commanded to say, but what seems good to myself. Whoever does this, evidently wishes to show himself to be better than he is than the one by whom he is sent, and without doubt is a traitor. If, on the contrary, he keeps by the things that he is commanded, and brings forward most clear assertions of them, it will appear that he is accomplishing the work of a sholiach; and it is by striving to fulfill this that I displease you. Blame me not, therefore, because I bring forward the words of Him who sent me. But if there is aught in them that is not fairly spoken, you have liberty to confute me; but this can in no wise be done, for He is a navi, and cannot be contrary to Himself. But if you do not think that He is a navi, let this be first inquired into.”

Order of Proof

Chapter 107

Then said Shimon: "I have no need to learn this from you, but how these things agree with one another. For if *He* will be shown to be inconsistent, *He* will be proved at the same time not to be a navi." Then says Kefa: "But if I first show Him to be a navi, it will follow that what seems to be inconsistency is not such. For no one can be proved to be a navi merely by consistency, because it is possible for many to attain this; but if consistency does not make a navi, much more inconsistency does not. Because, therefore, there are many things that to some seem inconsistent, which yet have consistency in them on a more profound investigation; as also other things that seem to have consistency, but which, being more carefully discussed, are found to be inconsistent; for this reason I do not think there is any better way to judge of these things than to ascertain in the first instance whether He be a navi who has spoken those things that appear to be inconsistent. For it is evident that, if He be found a navi, those things that seem to be contradictory must have consistency, but are misunderstood. Concerning these things, therefore, proofs will be properly demanded. For we shlichim are sent to expound the sayings and affirm the judgments of Him who has sent us; but we are not commissioned to say anything of our own, but to unfold the truth, as I have said, of His words."

How Error Cannot Stand with Truth

Chapter 108

Then Shimon said: "Instruct us, therefore, how it can be consistent that *He* who causes divisions, which divisions cause those who are divided to fall, can either seem to be good, or to have come for the salvation of men." Then Kefa said: "I will tell you how our Master said that every malkuth and every house divided against itself cannot stand; and whereas He Himself did this, see how it makes for salvation. By the word of truth He certainly divides the malkuth of the world, which is founded in error, and every home in it, that error may fall, and truth may reign. But if it should be in any house, that error, being introduced by any one, divides the truth; then, where error has gained a footing, it is certain that truth cannot stand." Then Shimon said: "But it is uncertain whether your *Master* divides error or truth." Then Kefa: "That belongs to another question; but if you are agreed that everything that is divided falls, it remains that I will show, if only you will hear in shalom, that our Y'shua has divided and dispelled error by teaching truth."

Altercation

Chapter 109

Then said Shimon: "Do not repeat again and again your talk of shalom, but expound briefly what it is that you think or believe." Kefa answered: "Why are you afraid of hearing frequently of shalom, for do you not know that shalom is the perfection of Torah? For wars and disputes spring from sins; and where there is no sin, there is shalom of inner being; but where there is shalom, truth is found in disputations, righteousness in works." Then Shimon: "You seem to me not to be able to profess what you think." Then Kefa: "I will speak, but according to my own judgment, not under constraint of your tricks. For I desire that that which is salutary and profitable be brought to the knowledge of all and therefore I will not delay to state it as briefly as possible. There is one YHWH; and He is the creator of the world, a righteous judge, rendering to everyone at some time or other according to his deeds. But now for the assertion of these things I know that countless thousands of words can be called forth."

Shimon's Subtlety

Chapter 110

Then Shimon said: "I admire, indeed, the quickness of your wit, yet I do not embrace the error of your faith. For you have wisely foreseen that you may be contradicted; and you have even politely confessed, that for the assertion of these things countless thousands of words will be called forth, for no one agrees with the profession of your faith. In short, as to there being one *YHWH*, and the world being *His* work, who can receive this doctrine? Neither, I think, any one of the Pagans, even if he be an unlearned man, and certainly no one of the philosophers; but not even the rudest and most wretched of the Yahudaïm, nor I myself, who am well acquainted with their Torah." Then Kefa said: "Put aside the opinions of those who are not here, and tell us face to face what is your own." Then Shimon said: "I can state what I really think; but this consideration makes me reluctant to do so, that if I say what is neither acceptable to you, nor seems right to this unskilled rabble, you indeed, as confounded, will straightway shut your ears, that they may not be polluted with blasphemy, forsooth, and will take to flight because you cannot find an answer; while the unreasoning populace will assent to you, and embrace you as one teaching those things that are commonly received among them; and will curse me, as professing things new and unheard of, and instilling my error into the minds of others."

Shimon's Creed

Chapter 111

Then Kefa: "Are you not making use of long preambles, as you accused us of doing, because you have no truth to bring forward? For if you have, begin without circumlocution, if you have so much confidence. And if, indeed, what you say be displeasing to any one of the hearers, he will withdraw; and those who remain will be compelled by your assertion to approve what is true. Begin, therefore, to expound what seems to you to be right." Then Shimon said: "I say that there are many elohim; but that there is one incomprehensible and unknown to all, and that He is the elohim hagadol of all these elohim." Then Kefa answered: "This elohim hagadol whom you assert to be incomprehensible and unknown to all, can you prove his existence from the Scriptures of the Yahudaïm, which are held to be of authority, or from some others of which we are all ignorant, or from the Greek authors, or from your own writings? Certainly you are at liberty to speak from whatever writings you please, yet so that you first show that they are prophetic; for so their authority will be held without question."

Argument for Polytheism

Chapter 112

Then Shimon said: "I will make use of assertions from Torah of the Yahudaïm only. For it is manifest to all who take interest in obedience, that this Torah is of universal authority, yet that everyone receives the understanding of this Torah according to his own judgment. For it has so been written by *Him* who created the world, that the faith of things is made to depend upon it. Whence, whether any one wishes to bring forward truth, or any one to bring forward falsehood, no assertion will be received without this Torah. Inasmuch, therefore, as my knowledge is most fully in accordance with Torah, I rightly declared that there are many elohim, of whom one is more eminent than the rest, and incomprehensible, even he who is elohim hagadol of elohim. But that there are many elohim, Torah itself informs me. For, in the first place, *it says this in the passage* where one in the figure of a serpent speaks to Chawa, the first woman, 'On the day you eat of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, you will be as elohim,' that is, as those who made man; and after they have tasted of the tree, *YHWH Himself* testifies, saying to the rest of the elohim, 'Behold, Adamah is become as one of us; thus, therefore, it is manifest that there were many elohim engaged in the making of man. Also, whereas at the first *YHWH* said to the other elohim, 'Let us make man after our image and likeness'; also *His* saying, 'Let us drive him out'; and again, 'Come, let us go down, and confound their language.' All these things indicate that there are many elohim. But this also is written, 'You will not curse the elohim, nor curse the chief of your people'; and again this writing, '*YHWH* alone led them, and there were no strange elohim with them,' shows that

there are many elohim. There are also many other testimonies that might be adduced from Torah, not only obscure, but plain, by which it is taught that there are many elohim. One of these was chosen by lot, that he might be the el of the Yahudaïm. But it is not of him that I speak, but of that elohim hagadol who is also his elohim, whom even the Yahudaïm themselves did not know. For he is not their elohim, but the elohim of those who know him.”

Kefa's Answer

Chapter 113

When Kefa had heard this, he answered: “Fear nothing, Shimon: for, behold, we have neither shut our ears, nor fled; but we answer with words of truth to those things that you have spoken falsely, asserting this first, that there is one Elohim, even the YHWH of the Yahudaïm, who is the only Elohim, the Creator of heaven and earth, who is also the Elohim of all those whom you call elohim. If, then, I will show you that none is superior to Him, but that He Himself is above all, you will confess that your error is above all.” Then Shimon said: “Why, indeed, though I should be unwilling to confess it, would not the hearers who stand by charge me with unwillingness to profess the things that are true?”

The Answer, Continued

Chapter 114

“Listen, then,” says Kefa, “that you may know, first of all, that even if there are many elohim, as you say, they are subject to the YHWH of the Yahudaïm, to whom no one is equal, than whom no one can be greater; for it is written that the navi Moshe thus spoke to the Yahudaïm: ‘YHWH your Elohim is the Elohim of elohim, and the Master of masters, the great YHWH.’ Thus, although there are many that are called elohim, yet He who is the YHWH of the Yahudaïm is alone called the Elohim of elohim. For not every one that is called elohim is necessarily Elohim. Indeed, even Moshe is called an elohim to Pharaoh, and it is certain that he was a man; and shoftim were called elohim, and it is evident that they were mortal. The idols also of the Goyim are called elohim, and we all know that they are not; but this has been inflicted as a punishment on the immoral, that because they would not acknowledge the true Elohim, they should regard as elohim whatever form or image should occur to them. Because they refused to receive the knowledge of the One who, as I said, is Elohim of all, therefore it is permitted to them to have as elohim those who can do nothing for their worshippers. For what can either dead images or living creatures confer upon men, since the power of all things is with One?”

Guardian Malachim

Chapter 115

“Therefore the title *elohim* is applied in three ways: either because he to whom it is given is truly Elohim, or because he is the servant of him who is truly; and for the honor of the sender, that his authority may be full, he that is sent is called by the name of him who sends, as is often done in respect of malachim: for when they appear to a man, if he is a wise and intelligent man, he asks the name of him who appears to him, that he may acknowledge at once the honour of the sent, and the authority of the sender. For every tribe has a malach, to whom YHWH has committed the government of that tribe; and when one of these appears, although he be thought and called elohim by those over whom he presides, yet, being asked, he does not give such testimony to himself. For YHWH El Shaddai, who alone holds the power of all things, has divided all the tribes of the earth into seventy-two parts, and over these He has appointed malachim as sarim. But to the one among the arch-malachim who is greatest, was committed the government of those who, before all others, received the worship and knowledge of YHWH El Shaddai. But devoted men also, as we have said, are made elohim to the immoral, as having received the power of life and death over them, as we mentioned above with respect to Moshe and the shoftim. So it is also written concerning them, ‘You will not curse the elohim, and you will not curse the Sar of your people.’ Thus the sarim of the several tribes are called elohim. But Moshiach is sovereign of sarim, who is Shoftim of all. Therefore neither malachim, nor men, nor any creature, can be truly elohim, forasmuch as they are placed under authority, being created and changeable: malachim, for they were not, and are; men, for they are mortal; and every creature, for it is capable of dissolution, if only He dissolve it who made it. And therefore, He alone is Elohim ‘Emet, who not only Himself lives, but also bestows life upon others, which He can also take away when it pleases Him.

No Elohim but YHWH

Chapter 116

“So the Scripture exclaims in name of the YHWH of the Yahudaïm, saying, ‘Behold, behold, seeing that I am YHWH, and there is none else besides me, I will kill, and I will make alive; I will smite, and I will heal; and there is none who can deliver out of my hands.’ See therefore how, by some ineffable virtue, the Scripture, opposing the future errors of those who should affirm that either in heaven or on earth there is any other god besides Him who is the El of the Yahudaïm, decides thus: ‘YHWH your Elohim is one Eloha, in sky above and in the earth beneath; and besides Him there is none else.’ How, then, have you dared to say that there is any other elohim besides Him who is the YHWH of the Yahudaïm? And again, the Scripture says, ‘Behold, to YHWH your Elohim belong the heaven, and the heaven of heavens, the

earth, and all things that are in them: nevertheless, I have chosen your fathers, that I might love them and you after them.’ Thus, that judgment is supported by the Scripture on every side, that He who created the world is the true and only Elohim.

The Serpent, the Author of Polytheism

Chapter 117

“But even if there be others, as we have said, who are called elohim, they are under the power of the YHWH of the Yahudaïm; for thus says the Scripture to the Yahudaïm, ‘YHWH our Elohim, He is Elohim of elohim, and Master of masters.’ Him alone the Scripture also commands to be worshipped, saying, ‘You will worship YHWH your Elohim, and Him only will you serve’; and, ‘Hear, O Yisrael: YHWH your Elohim is echad.’ Yea, also the kadoshim, filled with the Ruach of YHWH, and bedewed with the drops of His mercy, cried out, saying, ‘Who is like unto You among the elohim? O YHWH, who is like unto You?’ And again, ‘Who is Elohim, but YHWH; and who is Elohim, but our Master?’ Therefore Moshe, when he saw that the people were advancing by degrees, initiated them in the understanding of the monarchy and the faith of one El, as he says in the following words: ‘You will not make mention of the names of other elohim’; doubtless remembering with what penalty the serpent was visited, which had first named *false elohim*. For it is condemned to feed upon dust, and is judged worthy of such food, for this cause: that it first of all introduced the name of *false elohim* into the world. But if you also wish to introduce many elohim, beware lest you partake of the serpent’s doom.

Polytheism Inexcusable

Chapter 118

“For be sure of this: that you will not have us as participators in this attempt; nor will we suffer ourselves to be deceived by you. For it will not serve us for an excuse in the judgment, if we say that you deceived us; because neither could it excuse the first woman, that she had mistakenly believed the serpent; but she was condemned to death, because she believed badly. For this cause therefore, Moshe, also commending the faith of one YHWH to the people, says, ‘Take heed to thyself, that you be not seduced from YHWH your Elohim.’ Observe that he makes use of the same word that the first woman also made use of in excusing herself, saying that she was seduced; but it profited her nothing. But over and above all this, even if some true navi should arise who should perform signs and miracles, but should wish to persuade us to worship other elohim besides the YHWH of the Yahudaïm, we should never be able to believe him. For so the divine Torah has taught us, handing down a secret injunction more purely by means of tradition, for thus it says: ‘If there arise among you a navi, or one dreaming a dream, and give you signs or wonders,

and these signs or wonders come to pass, and he say to you, Let us go and worship strange elohim, whom you know not; you will not hear the words of that navi, nor the dream of that dreamer, because proving he has proved you, that he may see if you love YHWH your Elohim.'

Moshiach Acknowledged the Eloha of the Yahudaïm

Chapter 119

"So also our Master, who wrought signs and wonders, preached the YHWH of the Yahudaïm; and therefore, we are right in believing what He preached. But as for you, even if you were really a navi, and performed signs and wonders, as you promise to do, if you were to announce other elohim besides Him who is the true Elohim, it would be manifest that you were raised up as a trial to the people of YHWH; and therefore you can by no means be believed. For He alone is the true YHWH who is the Elohim of the Yahudaïm; and for this reason our Master Y'shua haMoshiach did not teach them that they must inquire after YHWH, for Him they knew well already, but that they must seek His malkuth and righteousness, which the Sophrim and Prushim, having received the key of knowledge, had not shut in, but shut out. For if they had been ignorant of the true Elohim, surely He would never have left the knowledge of this thing, which was the chief of all, and blamed them for small and little things, as for enlarging their fringes, and claiming the uppermost rooms in feasts, and praying standing in the highways, and such like things; which assuredly, in comparison of this great charge (ignorance of YHWH), seem to be small and insignificant matters."

Shimon's Complaint

Chapter 120

To this Shimon replied: "From the words of your *Master* I will refute you, because even *He* introduces to all men a certain elohim who was known. For although Adamah knew the *Elohim* who was his creator, and the maker of the world; and Enoch knew *Him*, inasmuch as he was translated by *Him*; and Noach, since he was ordered by *Him* to construct the ark; and although Avraham, and Yitzchak, and Ya'akov, and Moshe, and all, even every people and all tribes, know the *maker of the world*, and confess *Him* to be *Elohim*, yet your *Y'shua*, who appeared long after the patriarchs, says: 'No one knows the Son, but the Father; neither knows any one the Father, but the Son, and he to whom the Son has been pleased to reveal Him.' Thus, therefore, even your *Y'shua* confesses that there is another elohim, incomprehensible and unknown to all."

Kefa's Answer

Chapter 121

Then Kefa says: "You do not perceive that you are making statements in opposition to yourself. For if our Y'shua also knows Him whom you call the unknown elohim, then He is not known by you alone. Yea, if our Y'shua knows Him, then Moshe also, who prophesied that Y'shua should come, assuredly could not himself be ignorant of Him. For he was a navi; and he who prophesied of the Son doubtless knew the Father. For if it is in the option of the Son to reveal the Father to whom He will, then the Son, who has been with the Father from the beginning, and through all generations, as He revealed the Father to Moshe, so also to the other naviim; but if this be so, it is evident that the Father has not been unknown to any of them. But how could the Father be revealed to you, who do not believe in the Son, since the Father is known to none except him to whom the Son is pleased to reveal Him? But the Son reveals the Father to those who honor the Son as they honor the Father."

The Supreme Light

Chapter 122

Then Shimon said: "Remember that you said that *YHWH* has a son, which is doing *Him* wrong; for how can *He* have a son, unless *He* is subject to passions, like men or animals? But on these points, there is not time now to show your profound folly, for I hasten to make a statement concerning the immensity of the supreme light; and so now listen. My opinion is that there is a certain power of immense and ineffable light, whose greatness may be held to be incomprehensible, of which power even the *maker of the world* is ignorant, and Moshe the Torah-giver, and *Y'shua* your *Master*."

Shimon's Presumption

Chapter 123

Then Kefa: "Does it not seem to you to be madness that any one should take upon himself to assert that there is another elohim than the Elohim of all; and should say that he supposes there is a certain power, and should presume to affirm this to others, before he himself is sure of what he says? Is anyone so rash as to believe your words, of which he sees that you are yourself doubtful, and to admit that there is a certain power unknown to Elohim the Creator, and to Moshe, and the naviim, and Torah, and even to Y'shua our Master, which power is so good, that it will not make itself known to any but to one only, and that one such an one as you! Then, further, if that is a new power, why does it not confer upon us some new sense, in addition to those five that we possess, that by that new sense, bestowed upon us by it, we may be able to receive and understand itself which is new? Or if it cannot bestow such a sense upon us, how has it bestowed it upon you? Or if it has revealed

itself to you, why not also to us? But if you of yourself understand things that not even the naviim were able to perceive or understand, come, tell us what each one of us is thinking now; for if there is such a ruach in you that you know those things that are above the skies, which are unknown to all, and incomprehensible by all, much more easily do you know the thoughts of men upon the earth. But if you cannot know the thoughts of us who are standing here, how can you say that you know those things which, you assert, are known to none?

The Sixth Sense

Chapter 124

“But believe me that you could never know what light is unless you had received both vision and understanding from light itself; so also in other things. Hence, having received understanding, you are framing in imagination something greater and more sublime, as if dreaming, but deriving all your hints from those five senses, to whose Giver you are unthankful. But be sure of this, that until you find some new sense that is beyond those five that we all enjoy, you cannot assert the existence of a new elohim.” Then Shimon answered: “Since all things that exist are in accordance with those five senses, that power that is more excellent than all cannot add anything new.” Then Kefa said: “It is false; for there is also a sixth sense, namely that of foreknowledge: for those five senses are capable of knowledge, but the sixth is that of foreknowledge: and this the naviim possessed. How, then, can you know an elohim who is unknown to all, who do not know the sense of the navi, which is that of insight?” Then Shimon began to say: “This power of which I speak, incomprehensible and more excellent than all, ay, even than that *Elohim* who made the world, neither any of the malachim has known, nor of the demons, nor of the Yahudaïm, nay, nor any creature that subsists by means of *Elohim the creator*. How, then, could that *Creator’s* Torah teach me that which the *Creator Himself* did not know, since neither did Torah itself know it, that it might teach it?”

An Absurd Conclusion

Chapter 125

Then Kefa said: “I wonder how you have been able to learn more from Torah than Torah was able to know or to teach; and how you say that you adduce proofs from Torah of those things that you are pleased to assert, when you declare that neither Torah, nor He who gave Torah—that is, the Creator of the world knows those things of which you speak! But at this also I wonder—how you, who alone know these things—should be standing here now with us all, circumscribed by the limits of this small court.” Then Shimon, seeing Kefa and all the people laughing, said: “Do you laugh, Kefa, while so great and lofty matters are under discussion?” Then said Kefa:

“Be not enraged, Shimon, for we are doing no more than keeping our promise: for we are neither shutting our ears, as you said, nor did we take to flight as soon as we heard you propound your unutterable things; but we have not even stirred from the place. For indeed you do not even propound things that have any resemblance to truth, which might to a certain extent frighten us. Yet, at all events, disclose to us the meaning of this saying, how from Torah you have learned of an elohim whom Torah itself does not know, and of whom He who gave Torah is ignorant.” Then Shimon said: “If you have done laughing, I will prove it by clear assertions.” Then Kefa said: “Assuredly I will give over, that I may learn from you how you have learned from Torah what neither Torah nor the YHWH of Torah Himself knows.”

Shimon’s Blasphemy

Chapter 126

Then says Shimon: “Listen: it is manifest to all, and ascertained in a manner of which no account can be given, that there is one sovereign, who is better than all, from whom all that is took its beginning; whence also of necessity, all things that are after him are subject to him, as the chief and most excellent of all. When, therefore, I had ascertained that the *Eloah* who created the world, according to what Torah teaches, is in many respects weak, whereas weakness is utterly incompatible with a perfect elohim, and I saw that *He* is not perfect, I necessarily concluded that there is another who is perfect. For this *Elohim*, as I have said, according to what the writing of Torah teaches, is shown to be weak in many things. In the first place, because the man whom *He* formed was not able to remain such as he had intended *Him* to be; and because *He* cannot be good who gave Torah to the first man, that he should eat of all the trees of paradise, but that he should not touch the tree of knowledge; and if he should eat of it, he should die. For why should *He* forbid him to eat, and to know what is good and what evil, that, knowing, he might shun the evil and choose the good? But this *He* did not permit; and because he did eat in violation of the commandment, and discovered what is good, and learned for the sake of honor to cover his nakedness (for he perceived it to be unseemly to stand naked before his *Creator*), *He* condemns to death him who had learned to do honor to *Elohim*, and curses the serpent who had shown him these things. But truly, if man was to be injured by this means, why did *He* place the cause of injury in paradise at all? But if that which *He* placed in paradise was good, it is not the part of one that is good to restrain another from good?

How Shimon Learned What Torah Does Not Teach

Chapter 127

“Thus then, since *He* who made man and the world is, according to what Torah relates, imperfect, we are given to understand, without doubt, that there is another who is perfect. For it is of necessity that there is one most excellent of all, on whose

account also every creature keeps its rank. Whence also I, knowing that it is every way necessary that there be some one more benignant and more powerful than that imperfect *Elohim* who gave Torah, understanding what is perfect from comparison of the imperfect, understood even from the Scripture that *elohim* who is not mentioned there. And in this way I was able, O Kefa, to learn from Torah what Torah did not know. But even if Torah had not given indications from which it might be gathered that the *Elohim* who made the world is imperfect, it was still possible for me to infer from those evils that are done in this world, and are not corrected, either that its *Creator* is powerless, if *He* cannot correct what is done amiss; or else, if *He* does not wish to remove the evils, that *He* is *Himself* evil; but if *He* neither can nor will, that *He* is neither powerful nor good. And from this it cannot but be concluded that there is another *elohim* more excellent and more powerful than all. If you have aught to say to this, say on."

Shimon's Objections Turned Against Himself

Chapter 128

Kefa answered: "O Shimon, they are liable to conceive such absurdities against YHWH who do not read Torah with the instruction of masters, but account themselves *morim*, and think that they can understand Torah, though he has not explained it to them who have learned of the Master. Nevertheless, now that we also may seem to follow the scrolls of Torah according to your apprehension of it; inasmuch as you say that the creator of the world is shown to be both impotent and evil, how is it that you do not see that that power of yours, which you say is superior to all, fails and lies under the very same charges? For the very same thing may be said of it, that it is either powerless, since it does not correct those things that here are done amiss; or if it can and will not, it is evil; or if it neither can nor will, then it is both impotent and imperfect. Whence that new power of yours is not only found liable to a similar charge, but even to a worse one, if, in addition to all these things, it is believed to be, when it is not. For He who created the world, His existence is manifest by His very operation in creating the world, as you yourself also confess. But this power that you say that you alone know affords no indication of itself, by which we might perceive, at least, that it is, and subsists.

No Elohim Above the Creator

Chapter 129

"What kind of conduct, then, would it be that we should forsake YHWH, in whose world we live and enjoy all things necessary for life, and follow I know not whom, from whom we not only obtain no good, but cannot even know that he exists? Nor truly does he exist. For whether you call him light, and brighter than that light that we see, you borrow that very name from the Creator of the world; or whether you say

that he is a substance above all, you derive from Him the idea with enlargement of speech. Whether you make mention of mind, or goodness, or life, or whatever else, you borrow the words from Him. Since, then, you have nothing new concerning that power you speak of, not only as regards understanding, but even in respect of naming him, how do you introduce a new *elohim*, for whom you cannot even find a new name? For not only is the Creator of the world called a Power, but even the ministers of His glory, and all the heavenly host. Do you not then think it better that we should follow our Creator YHWH, as a Father who trains us and endows us as He knows how? But if, as you say, there be some *elohim* more benign than all, it is certain that he will not be angry with us; or if he be angry, he is evil; for if our YHWH is angry and punishes, He is not evil, but righteous, for He corrects and amends His own sons; but he who has no concern with us, if he will punish us, how should he be good? Inflicting punishments upon us because we have not been drawn by vain imaginations to forsake our own Father and follow him – how can you assert that he is so good, when he cannot be regarded as even just?”

Shimon's Inconsistency

Chapter 130

Then Shimon: “Do you so far err, Kefa, as not to know that our spirits were made by that good *elohim*, the most excellent of all; but they have been brought down as captives into this world?” To this Kefa answered: “Then he is not unknown by all, as you said a little while ago; and yet how did the good *elohim* permit his spirits to be taken captive, if he be a power over all?” Then Shimon said: “He sent *elohim the creator* to make the world; and *He*, when *He* had made it, gave out that *Himself* was *Elohim*.” Then Kefa said: “Then he is not, as you said, unknown to Him who made the world; nor are spirits ignorant of him, if indeed they were stolen away from him. To whom, then, can he be unknown, if both the Creator of the world know him, as having been sent by him; and all spirits know him, as having been violently withdrawn from him? Then, further, I wish you would tell us whether he who sent the creator of the world did not know that he would not keep faith? For if he did not know it, then he was not prescient; while if he foreknew it, and suffered it, he is himself guilty of this deed, since he did not prevent it; but if he could not, then he is not omnipotent. But if, knowing it as good, he did not prohibit it; he is found to be better, who presumed to do that which he who sent him did not know to be good.”

Shimon's Elohim Unjust

Chapter 131

Then Shimon said: “He receives those who will come to him, and does them good.” Kefa answered: “But there is nothing new in this; for He whom you acknowledge to be the Creator of the world also does so.” Then Shimon: “But the good *elohim*

bestows salvation if he is only acknowledged; but the *Creator of the world* demands also that Torah be fulfilled.” Then said Kefa: “He saves adulterers and men-slayers, if they know him; but good, and sober, and merciful persons, if they do not know him, in consequence of their having no information concerning him, he does not save! Great and good truly is he whom you proclaim, who is not so much the savior of the evil, as he is one who shows no mercy to the good.” Then Shimon: “It is truly very difficult for man to know him, as long as he is in the flesh; for blacker than all darkness, and heavier than all clay, is this body with which the spirit is surrounded.” Then says Kefa: “That good elohim of yours demands things that are difficult; but He who is truly Elohim seeks easier things. Let him then, since he is so good, leave us with our Father and Creator; and when once we depart from the body, and leave that darkness that you speak of, we will more easily know Him; and then the spirit will better understand that Elohim is its Creator, and will remain with Him, and will no more be harassed with diverse imaginations; nor will wish to betake itself to another power, which is known to none but Shimon only, and which is of such goodness that no one can come to it, unless he be first guilty of impiety towards his own father! I know not how this power can be called either good or just, which no one can please except by acting impiously towards him by whom he was made!”

The Creator Our Father

Chapter 132

Then Shimon: “It is not disobedient for the sake of greater profit and advantage to rise to him who is of richer glory.” Then Kefa: “If, as you say, it is not disobedient to flee to a stranger, it is at all events much more obedient to remain with our own father, even if he be poor. But if you do not think it disobedient to leave our father, and flee to another, as being better than he; and you do not believe that our Creator will take this amiss; much more the good elohim will not be angry, because, when we were strangers to him, we have not fled to him, but have remained with our own Creator. Yea, I think he will rather commend us the more for this, that we have kept faith with YHWH our Creator; for he will consider that, if we had been his creatures, we should never have been seduced by the allurements of any other to forsake him. For if any one, allured by richer promises, will leave his own father and betake himself to a stranger, it may be that he will leave him in his turn, and go to another who will promise him greater things, and this the rather because he is not his son, since he could leave even him who by nature was his father.” Then Shimon said: “But what if spirits are from him, and do not know him, and he is truly their father?”

The Creator the Supreme Elohim

Chapter 133

Then Kefa said: "You represent him as weak enough. For if, as you say, he is more powerful than all, it can never be believed the weaker wrenched the spoils from the stronger. Or if YHWH the Creator was able by violence to bring down spirits into this world, how can it be that, when they are separated from the body and freed from the bonds of captivity, the good elohim will call them to the sufferance of punishment, on the ground that they, either through his remissness or weakness, were dragged away to this place, and were involved in the body, as in the darkness of ignorance? You seem to me not to know what a father and an elohim is: but I could tell you both whence spirits are, and when and how they were made; but it is not permitted to me now to disclose these things to you, who are in such error in respect of the knowledge of YHWH." Then said Shimon: "A time will come when you will be sorry that you did not understand me speaking of the ineffable power." Then said Kefa: "Give us then, as I have often said, as being yourself a new elohim, or as having yourself come down from him, some new sense, by means of which we may know that new elohim of whom you speak; for those five senses, which elohim our Creator has given us, keep faith to their own Creator, and do not perceive that there is any other YHWH, for so their nature necessitates them."

Imagination

Chapter 134

To this Shimon answered: "Apply your mind to those things that I am going to say, and cause it, walking in pathways of shalom, to attain to those things that I will demonstrate. Listen now, therefore. Did you never in thought reach forth your mind into regions or islands situated far away, and remain so fixed in them, that you could not even see the people that were before you, or know where you were sitting, by reason of the delightfulness of those things on which you were gazing?" And Kefa said: "It is true, Shimon, this has often occurred to me." Then Shimon said: "In this way now reach forth your sense into heaven, yea above the heaven, and behold that there must be some place beyond the world, or outside the world, in which there is neither heaven nor earth, and where no shadow of these things produces darkness; and consequently, since there are neither bodies in it, nor darkness occasioned by bodies, there must of necessity be immense light; and consider of what sort that light must be, which is never succeeded by darkness. For if the light of this sun fills this whole world, how great do you suppose that bodiless and infinite light to be? So great, doubtless, that this light of the sun would seem to be darkness and not light, in comparison."

Kefa's Experience of Imagination

Chapter 135

When Shimon thus spoke, Kefa answered: "Now listen patiently concerning both these matters, that is, concerning the example of stretching out the senses, and concerning the immensity of light. I know that I myself, O Shimon, have sometimes in thought extended my sense, as you say, into regions and islands situated afar off, and have seen them with my mind not less than if it had been with my eyes. When I was at Kfar Nachum, occupied in the taking of fishes, and sat upon a rock, holding in my hand a hook attached to a line, and fitted for deceiving the fishes, *I was so absorbed* that I did not feel a fish adhering to it while my mind eagerly ran through my beloved Yahrushalayim, to which I had frequently gone up, waking, for the sake of offerings and prayers. But I was accustomed also to admire this Caesarea, hearing of it from others, and to long to see it; and I seemed to myself to see it, although I had never been in it; and I thought of it what was suitable to be thought of a great city, its gates, walls, baths, streets, lanes, markets, and the like, in accordance with what I had seen in other cities; and to such an extent was I delighted with the intentness of such inspection, that, as you said, neither saw one who was present and standing by me, nor knew where myself was sitting." Then said Shimon: "Now you say well."

Kefa's Reverie

Chapter 136

Then Kefa: "In short, when I did not perceive, through the occupation of my mind, that I had caught a very large fish that was attached to the hook, and that although it was dragging the hook-line from my hand, my brother Adamyah, who was sitting by me, seeing me in a reverie and almost ready to fall, thrusting his elbow into my side as if he would awaken me from sleep, said: 'Do you not see, Kefa, what a large fish you have caught? Are you out of your senses, that you are thus in a stupor of astonishment? Tell me, what is the matter with you?' But I was angry with him for a little, because he had withdrawn me from the delight of those things that I was contemplating; then I answered that I was not suffering from any malady, but that I was mentally gazing on the beloved Yahrushalayim, and at the same time on Caesarea; and that, while I was indeed with him in the body, in my mind I was wholly carried away thither. But he, I know not whence inspired, uttered a hidden and secret word of truth.

Adamyah's Rebuke

Chapter 137

“‘Give over,’ says he, ‘O Kefa. What is it that you are doing? For those who are beginning to be possessed with a demon, or to be disturbed in their minds, begin in this way. They are first carried away by fancies to some pleasant and delightful things, then they are poured out in vain and fond motions towards things that have no existence. Now this comes of a certain disease of mind, by reason of that they see not the things that are, but long to bring to their sight those that are not. But thus, it is also to those who are suffering frenzy, and seem to themselves to see many images, because their spirit, being torn and withdrawn from its place by excess of cold or of heat, suffers a failure of its natural service. But those also who are in distress through thirst, when they fall asleep, seem to themselves to see rivers and fountains, and to drink; but this befalls them through being distressed by the dryness of the unmoistened body. Therefore, it is certain that this occurs through some ailment either of the spirit or body.’

Fallacy of Imagination

Chapter 138

“In short, that you may receive the faith of the matter; concerning Yahrushalayim, which I had often seen, I told my brother what places and what gatherings of people I had seemed to myself to see. But also concerning Caesarea, which I had never seen, I nevertheless contended that it was such as I had conceived it in my mind and thought. But when I came hither, and saw nothing at all like to those things that I had seen in vision, I blamed myself, and observed distinctly, that I had assigned to it gates, and walls, and buildings from others that I had seen, taking the likeness in reality from others. Nor indeed can anyone imagine anything new, and of which no form has ever existed. For even if anyone should fashion from his imagination bulls with five heads, he only forms them with five heads out of those that he has seen with one head. And you therefore, now, if truly you seem to yourself to perceive anything with your thought, and to look above the skies, there is no doubt but that you imagine them from those things that you see, placed as you are upon the earth. But if you think that there is easy access for your mind above the skies, and that you are able to conceive the things that are there, and to apprehend knowledge of that immense light, I think that for him who can comprehend these things, it were easier to throw his sense, which knows how to ascend thither, into the heart and breast of some one of us who stand by, and to tell what thoughts he is cherishing in his breast. If therefore you can declare the thoughts of the heart of any one of us who is not pre-engaged in your favour, we may be able to believe you - that you are able to know those things that are above the skies, although these are much loftier.”

Existence and Conception

Chapter 139

To this Shimon replied: "O you who have woven a web of many frivolities, listen now. It is impossible that anything that comes into a man's thoughts should not also subsist in truth and reality. For things that do not subsist have no appearances; but things that have no appearances cannot present themselves to our thoughts." Then said Kefa: "If everything that can come into our thoughts has a subsistence, then, with respect to that place of immensity that you say is outside the world, if one thinks in his heart that it is light, and another that it is darkness, how can one and the same place be both light and darkness, according to their different thoughts concerning it?" Then said Shimon: "Let pass for the present what I have said; and tell us what you suppose to be above the skies."

The Torah Teaches of Immensity

Chapter 140

Then said Kefa: "If you believed concerning the true fountain of light, I could instruct you what and of what sort is that which is immense, and should render, not a vain fancy, but a consistent and necessary account of the truth, and should make use not of sophisticated assertions but testimonies of Torah and nature, that you might know that Torah especially contains what we ought to believe in regard to immensity. But if the doctrine of immensity is not unknown to Torah, then assuredly, naught else can be unknown to it; and therefore, it is a false supposition of yours, that there is anything of which Torah is not cognizant. Much more will nothing be unknown to Him who gave Torah. Yet I cannot speak anything to you of immensity and of those things that are without limit, unless first you either accept our account of those heavens that are bounded by a certain limit, or else propound your own account of them. But if you cannot understand concerning those that are comprehended within fixed boundaries, much more can you neither know nor learn anything concerning those that are without limit."

The Visible and the Invisible Shamayim

Chapter 141

To this Shimon answered: "It seems to me to be better to believe simply that elohim is, and that that heaven that we see is the only heaven in the whole universe." But Kefa said: "Not so; but it is proper to confess one Elohim who truly is; but that there are heavens, which were made by Him, as also Torah says, of which one is the higher, in which also is contained the visible firmament; and that that higher heaven is perpetual and ageless, with those who dwell in it; but that this Visible Sky is to be dissolved and to pass away at the end of the age, in order that that heaven that is

older and higher may appear after the judgment to the devoted and the worthy.” To this Shimon answered: “That these things are so, as you say, may appear to those who believe them; but to him who seeks for reasons of these things, it is impossible that they can be produced from Torah, and especially concerning the immensity of light.”

Faith and Reason

Chapter 142

Then Kefa: “Do not think that we say that these things are only to be received by faith, but also that they are to be asserted by reason. For indeed it is not safe to commit these things to bare faith without reason, since assuredly truth cannot be without reason. And therefore he who has received these things fortified by reason, can never lose them; whereas he who receives them without proofs, by an assent to a simple statement of them, can neither keep them safely, nor is certain if they are true; because he who easily believes, also easily yields. But he who has sought reason for those things that he has believed and received, as though bound by chains of reason itself, can never be torn away or separated from those things that he has believed. And therefore, according as any one is more anxious in demanding a reason, by so much will he be the firmer in preserving his faith.”

Adjournment

Chapter 143

To this Shimon replied: “It is a great thing that you promise, that the eternity of boundless light can be shown from Torah.” And when Kefa said, “I will show it whenever you please,” Shimon answered: “Since now it is a late hour, I will stand by you and oppose you tomorrow; and if you can prove that this world was created, and that spirits are immortal, you will have me to assist you in your preaching.” When he had said thus, he departed, and was followed by a third part of all the people who had come with him, who were about one thousand men. But the rest with bended knees prostrated themselves before Kefa; and he, invoking upon them the name of YHWH, cured some who had demons, healed others who were sick, and so dismissed the people rejoicing, commanding them to come early the next day. But Kefa, when the crowds had withdrawn, commanded the table to be spread on the ground, in the open air, in the court where the disputation had been held, and sat down together with those eleven; but I dined reclining with some others who also had made a beginning of hearing the word of YHWH, and were greatly beloved.

Separation from the Unclean

Chapter 144

But Kefa, most benignantly regarding me, lest that separation might cause me sorrow, says to me: "It is not from pride, O Clement, that I do not eat with those who have not yet been purified; but I fear I might injure myself, and do no good to them. For this I would have you know for certain, that everyone who has at any time worshipped idols, and has adored those whom the pagans call elohim, or has eaten of the things sacrificed to them, is not without an unclean spirit; for he has become a guest of demons, and has been partaker with that demon of which he has formed the image in his mind, either through fear or love. And by these means he is not free from an unclean spirit, and therefore needs the purification of mikvah, that the unclean spirit may go out of him, which has made its abode in the inmost affections of his spirit, and what is worse, gives no indication that it lurks within, for fear it should be exposed and expelled."

The Remedy

Chapter 145

"For these unclean spirits love to dwell in the bodies of men, that they may fulfil their own desires by their service, and, inclining the motions of their spirits to those things that they themselves desire, may compel them to obey their own lusts, that they may become wholly vessels of demons, one of whom is this Shimon, who is seized with such disease, and cannot now be healed, because he is sick in his will and purpose. Nor does the demon dwell in him against his will; and therefore, if any one would drive it out of him, since it is inseparable from himself, and, so to speak, has now become his very spirit, he should seem rather to kill him, and to incur the guilt of manslaughter. Let no one of you therefore be saddened at being separated from eating with us, for every one ought to observe that it is for just so long a time as he pleases. For he who wishes soon to be immersed is separated but for a little time, but he for a longer time who wishes to be immersed later. Every one therefore has it in his own power to demand a shorter or a longer time for his repentance; and therefore it lies with you, when you wish it, to come to our table; and not with us, who are not permitted to take food with anyone who has not been immersed. It is rather you, therefore, who hinder us from eating with you, if you interpose delays in the way of your purification, and defer your mikvah." Having said thus, and having blessed, he took food. And afterwards, when he had given thanks to YHWH, he went into the house and went to bed; and we all did the like, for it was now night.

Book 3

Pearls before Swine

Chapter 146

Meantime Kefa, rising at the crowing of the cock, and wishing to rouse us, found us awake, the evening light still burning; and when, according to custom, he had saluted us, and we had all sat down, he thus began. "Nothing is more difficult, you brothers, than to reason concerning the truth in the presence of a mixed multitude of people. For that which is may not be spoken to all as it is, on account of those who hear immorally and treacherously; yet it is not proper to deceive, on account of those who desire to hear the truth sincerely. What, then, will he do who has to address a mixed multitude? will he conceal what is true? How, then, will he instruct those who are worthy? But if he set forth pure truth to those who do not desire to obtain salvation, he does injury to Him by whom he has been sent, and from whom he has received commandment not to throw the pearls of His words before swine and dogs, who, striving against them with arguments and sophisms, roll them in the rand of carnal understanding, and by their barkings and base answers break and weary the preachers of YHWH's word. So I also, for the most part, by using a certain circumlocution, endeavor to avoid publish the chief knowledge concerning the Supreme Shaddai to unworthy ears." Then, beginning from the Father, and the Son, and the Ruach HaKodesh, he briefly and plainly expounded to us, so that all of us hearing him wondered that men have forsaken the truth, and have turned themselves to vanity.

Second Day's Discussion

Chapter 147

But when the day had dawned, someone came in and said: "There is a very great multitude waiting in the court, and in the midst of them stands Shimon, endeavoring to preoccupy the ears of the people with most immoral persuasions." Then Kefa, immediately going out, stood in the place where he had disputed the day before, and all the people turning to him with joy, gave heed to him. But when Shimon perceived that the people rejoiced at the sight of Kefa, and were moved to love him, he said in confusion: "I wonder at the folly of men, who call me a magician, and love Kefa; whereas, having knowledge of me of old, they ought to love me rather. And therefore, from this sign those who have sense may understand that Kefa may rather seem to be the magician, since affection is not borne to me, to whom it is almost due from acquaintance, but is abundantly expended upon him, to whom it is not due by any familiarity."

Shimon a Seducer

Chapter 148

While Shimon was talking on in this style, Kefa, having saluted the people in his usual way, thus answered: "O Shimon, his own conscience is sufficient for everyone to confute him; but if you wonder at this, that those who are acquainted with you not only do not love you but even hate you, learn the reason from me. Since you are a seducer you profess to proclaim the truth; and on this account you had many haverim who had a desire to learn the truth. But when they saw in you things contrary to what you professed, they being, as I said, lovers of truth, began not only not to love you, but even to hate you. But yet they did not immediately forsake you, because you still promised that you could show them what is true. As long, therefore, as no one was present who could show them, they bore with you; but since the hope of better instruction has dawned upon them, they despise you, and seek to know what they understand to be better. And you indeed, acting by nefarious arts, thought at first that you should escape detection. But you are detected. For you are driven into a corner, and, contrary to your expectation, you are made notorious, not only as being ignorant of the truth, but as being unwilling to hear it from those who know it. For if you had been willing to hear, that saying would have been exemplified in you, of Him who said that 'there is nothing hidden that will not be known, nor covered that will not be disclosed.'"

Shimon Claims the Fulfillment of Kefa's Promise

Chapter 149

While Kefa spoke these words and others to the same effect, Shimon answered: "I will not have you detain me with long speeches, Kefa; I claim from you what you promised yesterday. You then said that you could show that Torah teaches concerning the immensity of the ageless light, and that there are only two heavens, and these created, and that the higher is the abode of that light, in which the ineffable *Father* dwells alone for ever; but that after the pattern of that heaven is made this Visible Sky, which you asserted is to pass away. You said, therefore, that the *Father* of all is one, because there cannot be two infinities; else neither of them would be infinite, because in that in which the one subsists, he makes a limit of the subsistence of the other. Since then you not only promised this, but are able to show it from Torah, leave off other matters and set about this." Then Kefa said: "If I were asked to speak of these things only on your account, who come only for the purpose of contradicting, you should never hear a single discourse from me; but seeing it is necessary that the husbandman, wishing to sow good ground, should sow some

seeds, either in stony places, or places that are to be trodden of men, or in places filled with brambles and briers (as our Master also set forth, indicating by these the diversities of the purposes of several spirits), I will not delay.”

Shimon's Arrogance

Chapter 150

Then said Shimon: “You seem to me to be angry; but if it be so, it is not necessary to enter into the conflict.” Then Kefa: “I see that you perceive that you are to be convicted, and you wish politely to escape from the contest; for what have you seen to have made me angry against you, a man desiring to deceive so great a multitude, and when you have nothing to say, pretending moderation, who also command, forsooth, by your authority that the controversy will be conducted as you please, and not as order demands?” Then Shimon: “I will enforce myself to bear patiently your unskillfulness that I may show that you indeed wish to seduce the people, but that I teach the truth. But now I refrain from a discussion concerning that boundless light. Answer me, therefore, what I ask of you. Since *YHWH*, as you say, made all things, whence comes evil?” Then said Kefa: “To put questions in this way is not the part of an opponent, but of a learner. If therefore you wish to learn, confess it; and I will first teach you how you ought to learn, and when you have learned to listen, then straightway I will begin to teach you. But if you do not wish to learn, as though you knew all things, I will first set forth the faith that I preach, and do you also set forth what you think to be true; and when the profession of each of us has been disclosed, let our hearers judge whose discourse is supported by truth.” To this Shimon answered: “This is a good joke: behold a fellow who offers to teach me! Nevertheless I will suffer you, and bear with your ignorance and your arrogance. I confess, then, I do wish to learn; let us see how you can teach me.”

Existence of Evil

Chapter 151

Then Kefa said: “If you truly wish to learn first learn this: how unskillfully you have framed your question. For you say, ‘Since *YHWH* has created all things, whence is evil?’ But before you asked this, three sorts of questions should have had the precedence: *First*, Whether there be evil? *Secondly*, what evil is? *Thirdly*, to whom it is, and whence?” To this Shimon answered: “O you most unskillful and unlearned: is there any man who does not confess that there is evil in this life? Whence I also, thinking that you had even the common sense of all men, asked, whence evil is; not as wishing to learn, since I know all things, least of all from you, who know nothing, but that I might show you to be ignorant of all things. And that you may not suppose that it is because I am angry

that I speak somewhat sternly, know that I am moved with compassion for those who are present, whom you are attempting to deceive.” Then Kefa said: “The more immoral are you, if you can do such wrong, not being angry; but smoke must rise where there is fire. Nevertheless, I will tell you, lest I should seem to take you up with words, so as not to answer to those things that you have spoken disorderly. You say that all confess the existence of evil, which is verily false; for, first of all, the whole Hebrew tribe denies its existence.”

Not Admitted by All

Chapter 152

Then Shimon, interrupting his discourse, said: “They do rightly who say that there is no evil.” Then Kefa answered: “We do not propose to speak of this now, but only to state the fact that the existence of evil is not universally admitted. But the second question that you should have asked is, ‘What is evil - a substance, an accident, or an act?’ And many other things of the same sort. And after that, towards what, or how it is, or to whom it is evil—whether to YHWH, or to malachim, or to men, to the righteous or the immoral, to all or to some, to one’s self or to no one? And then you should inquire, whence is it?-whether from YHWH, or from nothing; whether it has always been, or has had its beginning in time; whether it is useful or useless? And many other things that a proposition of this sort demands.” To this Shimon answered: “Pardon me; I was in error concerning the first question; but suppose that I now ask first, whether evil is or not?”

Manner of Conducting the Discussion

Chapter 153

Then Kefa said: “In what way do you put the question; as wishing to learn, or to teach, or for the sake of raising the question? If indeed as wishing to learn, I have something to teach you first, that coming by consequence and the right order of doctrine; you may understand from yourself what evil is. But if you put the question as an instructor, I have no need to be taught by you, for I have a Master from whom I have learned all things. But if you ask merely for the sake of raising a question and disputing, let each of us first set forth his opinion, and so let the matter be debated. For it is not reasonable that you should ask as one wishing to learn, and contradict as one teaching, so that after my answer it should be in your discretion to say whether I have spoken well or ill. So, you cannot stand in the place of a gainsayer and be judge of what we say. And therefore, as I said, if a discussion is to be held, let each of us state his sentiments; and while we are placed in conflict, these attentive hearers will be just shoftim.”

Desire of Instruction

Chapter 154

Then Shimon said: “Does it not seem to you to be absurd that an unskilled people should sit in judgment upon our sayings?” Then Kefa: “It is not so; for what is less clear to one, can be investigated by many, for oftentimes even a popular rumor has the aspect of a prophecy. But in addition to all this, all these people stand here constrained by the love of YHWH, and by a desire to know the truth, and therefore all these are to be regarded as one, by reason of their affection being one and the same towards the truth; as, on the other hand, two are many and diverse, if they disagree with each other. But if you wish to receive an indication how all these people who stand before us are as one man, consider from their very silence and quietness how with all patience, as you see, they do honor to the truth of Elohim, even before they learn it, for they have not yet learned the greater observance that they owe to it. So I hope, through the mercy of YHWH, that He will accept the obedient purpose of their mind towards Him, and will give the palm of victory to him who preaches the truth, that He may make manifest to them the herald of truth.”

Common Principles

Chapter 155

Then Shimon: “On what subject do you wish the discussion to be held? Tell me, that I also may define what I think, and so the inquiry may begin.” And Kefa answered: “If indeed, you will do as I think right, I would have it done according to the precept of my Master, who first of all commanded the Hebrew tribe, whom He knew to have knowledge of YHWH, and that it is He who made the world, not that they should inquire about Him whom they knew, but that, knowing Him, they should investigate His will and His righteousness; because it is placed in men’s power that, searching into these things, they may find, and do, and observe those things concerning that they are to be judged. Therefore He commanded us to inquire, not whence evil cometh, as you asked just now, but to seek the righteousness of YHWH, and His kingdom; and all these things, says He, will be added to you.” Then Shimon said: “Since these things are commanded to Hebrews, as having a right knowledge of YHWH, and being of opinion that everyone has it in his power to do these things concerning that he is to be judged—but my opinion differs from theirs—where do you wish me to begin?”

Freedom of the Will

Chapter 156

Then said Kefa: “I advise that the first inquiry be, whether it is in our power to know whence we are to be judged.” But Shimon said: “Not so; but concerning YHWH, about whom all who are present are desirous to hear.”

Then Kefa: "You admit, then, that something is in the power of the will: only confess this, if it is so, and let us inquire, as you say, concerning YHWH." To this Shimon answered: "By no means" Then Kefa said: "If, then, nothing is in our power, it is useless for us to inquire anything concerning YHWH, since it is not in the power of those who seek to find; hence I said well, that this should be the first inquiry, whether anything is in the power of the will." Then said Shimon: "We cannot even understand this that you say, if there is anything in the power of the will." But Kefa, seeing that he (Shimon) was turning to contention, and, through fear of being overcome, was confounding all things as being in general uncertain, answered: "How then do you know that it is not in the power of man to know anything, since this very thing at least you know?"

Responsibility

Chapter 157

Then Shimon said: "I know not whether I know even this; for everyone, according as it is decreed to him by fate, either does, or understands, or suffers." Then Kefa said: "See, my brothers, into what absurdities Shimon has fallen, who before my coming was teaching that men have it in their power to be wise and to do what they will, but now, driven into a corner by the force of my arguments, he denies that man has any power either of perceiving or of acting; and yet he presumes to profess himself to be a teacher! But tell me how then YHWH judges according to truth every one for his doings, if men have it not in their own power to do anything? If this opinion he held, all things are torn up by the roots; vain will be the desire of following after goodness; yea, even in vain do the shoftim of the world administer laws and punish those who do amiss, for they had it not in their power not to sin; vain also will be laws of tribes that assign penalties to evil deeds. Miserable also will those be who laboriously keep righteousness; but blessed those who, living in pleasure, exercise tyranny, living in luxury and immorality. According to this, therefore, there can be neither righteousness, nor goodness, nor any virtue, nor, as you would have it, any elohim. But, O Shimon, I know why you have spoken thus: truly because you wished to avoid inquiry, lest you should be openly confuted; and therefore, you say that it is not in the power of man to perceive or to discern anything. But if this had really been your opinion, you would not surely, before my coming, have professed yourself before the people to be a teacher. I say, therefore, that man is under his own control." Then said Shimon: "What is the meaning of being under his own control? Tell us." To this Kefa: "If nothing can be learned, why do you wish to hear?" And Shimon said: "You have nothing to answer to this."

Origin of Evil

Chapter 158

Then said Kefa: "I will speak, not as under compulsion from you, but at the request of the hearers. The power of choice is the sense of the spirit, possessing a quality by which it can be inclined towards what acts it wills." Then Shimon, applauding Kefa for what he had spoken, said: "Truly you have expounded it magnificently and incomparably, for it is my duty to bear testimony to your speaking well. Now if you will explain to me this that I now ask you, in all things else I will submit to you. What I wish to learn, then, is this: if what elohim wishes to be, is; and what He does not wish to be, is not. Answer me this." Then Kefa: "If you do not know that you are asking an absurd and incompetent question, I will pardon you and explain; but if you are aware that you are asking inconsequently, you do not well." Then Shimon said: "I swear by the supreme divinity, whatsoever that may be, which judges and punishes those who sin, that I know not what I have said inconsequently, or what absurdity there is in my words, that is, in those that I have just uttered."

YHWH the Author of Good, Not of Evil

Chapter 159

To this Kefa answered: "Since, then, you confess that you are ignorant, now learn. Your question demanded our deliverance on two matters that are contrary to one another. For every motion is divided into two parts, so that a certain part is moved by necessity, and another by will; and those things that are moved by necessity are always in motion, those that are moved by will, not always. For example, the sun's motion is performed by necessity to complete its appointed circuit, and every state and service of heaven depends upon necessary motions. But man directs the voluntary motions of his own actions. And thus there are some things that have been created for this end, that in their services they should be subject to necessity, and should be unable to do aught else than what has been assigned to them; and when they have accomplished this service, the Creator of all things, who thus arranged them according to His will, preserves them. But there are other things, in which there is a power of will, and that have a free choice of doing what they will. These, as I have said, do not remain always in that order in which they were created: but according as their will leads them, and the judgment of their mind inclines them, they effect either good or evil; and therefore He has proposed rewards to those who do well, and penalties to those who do evil.

“Who has Resisted His Will?”

Chapter 160

You say, therefore, if YHWH wishes anything to be, it is; and if He does not wish it, it is not. But if I were to answer that what He wishes is, and what He wishes not is not, you would say that then He wishes the evil things to be that are done in the world, since everything that He wishes is, and everything that He wishes not is not. But if I had answered that it is not so that what YHWH wishes is, and what He wishes not is not, then you would retort upon me that YHWH must then be powerless, if He cannot do what He wills; and you would be all the more petulant, as thinking that you had got a victory, though had said nothing to the point. Therefore, you are ignorant, O Shimon, yea very ignorant, how the will of YHWH acts in each individual case. For some things, as we have said, He has so willed to be, that they cannot be otherwise than as they are ordained by Him; and to these He has assigned neither rewards nor punishments; but those that He has willed to be so that they have it in their power to do what they will, He has assigned to them according to their actions and their wills, to earn either rewards or punishments. Since, therefore, as I have informed you, all things that are moved are divided into two parts, according to the distinction that I formerly stated, everything that YHWH wills is, and everything that He wills not is not.”

No Goodness without Liberty

Chapter 161

To this Shimon answered: “Was not *He* able to make us all such that we should be good, and that we should not have it in our power to be otherwise?” Kefa answered: “This also is an absurd question. For if He had made us of an unchangeable nature and incapable of being moved away from good, we should not be really good, because we could not be aught else; and it would not be of our purpose that we were good; and what we did would not be ours, but of the necessity of our nature. But how can that be called good, which is not done of purpose? And on this account the world required long periods, until the number of spirits that were predestined to fill it should be completed, and then that Visible Sky should be folded up like a scroll, and that which is higher should appear, and the spirits of the blessed, being restored to their bodies, should be ushered into light; but the spirits of the immoral, for their impure actions being surrounded with fiery spirit, should be plunged into the abyss of unquenchable fire, to endure punishments through eternity. Now that these things are so, Y’shua has testified to us; concerning whom, if you wish to know that He is a navi, I will instruct you by innumerable declarations. For of those things that were spoken by Him, even now everything that He said is being fulfilled; and those things that He spoke with respect to the future are believed to be about to be fulfilled, for faith is given to the future from those things that have already come to pass.”

The Visible Sky: Why Made

Chapter 162

But Shimon, perceiving that Kefa was clearly assigning a reason from the head of prophecy, from which the whole question is settled, declined that the discourse should take this turn; and thus answered: "Give me an answer to the questions that I put, and tell me, if that Visible Sky is, as you say, to be dissolved, why was it made at first?" Kefa answered: "It was made for the sake of this present life of men, that there might be some sort of interposition and separation, lest any unworthy one might see the habitation of the celestials and the abode of YHWH Himself, which are prepared in order to be seen by those only who are of pure heart. But now, that is in the time of the conflict, it has pleased Him that those things be invisible, which are destined as a reward to the conquerors." Then Shimon said: "If the *Creator* is good, and the world is good, how will *He* who is good ever destroy that which is good? But if *He* will destroy that which is good, how will *He Himself* be thought to be good? But if *He* will dissolve and destroy it as evil, how will *He* not appear to be evil, *He* who has made that which is evil?"

Why to Be Dissolved

Chapter 163

To this Kefa replied: "Since we have promised not to run away from your blasphemies, we endure them patiently, for you will yourself render an account for the things that you speak. Listen now, therefore. If indeed that heaven that is visible and transient had been made for its own sake, there would have been some reason in what you say that it ought not to be dissolved. But if it was made not for its own sake, but for the sake of something else, it must of necessity be dissolved, that that for which it seems to have been made may appear. As I might say, by way of illustration, however fairly and carefully the shell of the egg may seem to have been formed, it is yet necessary that it be broken and opened, that the chick may issue from it, and that may appear for which the form of the whole egg seems to have been molded. So also, therefore, it is necessary that the condition of this world pass away, that that more joyous condition of the heavenly malkuth may shine forth."

Corruptible Things Made by the Incorruptible

Chapter 164

Then Shimon: "It does not seem to me that the heaven, which has been made by *Elohim*, can be dissolved. For things made by the eternal one are ageless, while things made by a *corruptible one* are temporary and decaying." Then Kefa: "It is not

so. Indeed corruptible and temporary things of all sorts are made by mortal creatures; but the Eternal does not always make things corruptible, or always incorruptible; but according to the will of Elohim the Creator, so will be the things that He creates. For the power of Elohim is not subject to instruction, but His will is Torah to His creatures.” Then Shimon answered: “I call you back to the first question. You said now that *Elohim* is visible to no one; but when that heaven will be dissolved, and that superior condition of the heavenly malkuth will shine forth, then those who are pure in heart will see *YHWH*; which statement is contrary to Torah, for there it is written that *YHWH* said, ‘None will see my face and live.’”

How the Pure in Heart See YHWH

Chapter 165

Then Kefa answered: “To those who do not read Torah according to the tradition of Moshe, my speech appears to be contrary to it; but I will show you how it is not contradictory. *YHWH* is seen by the mind, not by the body; by the *Ruach*, not by the flesh. Whence also malachim, who are spirits, see *YHWH*; and therefore men, as long as they are men, cannot see Him. But after the resurrection of the dead, when they will have been made like the malachim, they will be able to see *YHWH*. And thus my statement is not contrary to Torah; neither is that which our Master said, ‘*Blessed are they of a pure heart, for they will see YHWH.*’ For He showed that a time will come in which some men will be made malachim, who in the spirit of their mind will see *YHWH*.” After these and many similar sayings, Shimon began to assert with many oaths, saying: “Concerning one thing only render me a reason, whether the spirit is immortal, and I will submit to your will in all things. But let it be tomorrow, for to-day it is late.” When therefore Kefa began to speak, Shimon went out, and with him a very few of his associates; and that for shame. But all the rest, turning to Kefa, on bended knees prostrated themselves before him; and some of those who were afflicted with diverse sicknesses, or invaded by demons, were healed by the prayer of Kefa, and departed rejoicing, as having obtained at once the halakah of the true *YHWH*, and also His mercy. When therefore the crowds had withdrawn, and only we his attendants remained with him, we sat down on couches placed on the ground, each one recognizing his accustomed place, and having taken food, and given thanks to *YHWH*, we went to sleep.

Diligence in Study

Chapter 166

But on the following day, Kefa, as usual, rising before dawn, found us already awake and ready to listen; and thus began: “I entreat you, my brothers and fellow-servants, that if any of you is not able to wake, he should not torment himself through respect to my presence, because sudden change is difficult; but if for a long time one

gradually accustoms himself, that will not be distressing that comes of use. For we had not all the same training; although in course of time we will be able to be molded into one habit, for they say that custom holds the place of a second nature. But I call YHWH to witness that I am not offended, if anyone is not able to wake; but rather by this, if, when any one sleeps all through the night, he does not in the course of the day fulfill that which he omitted in the night. For it is necessary to give heed intently and unceasingly, to the study of doctrine, that our mind may be filled with the thought of YHWH only: because in the mind that is filled with the thought of YHWH, no place will be given to the immoral one.”

Kefa's Private Instruction

Chapter 167

When Kefa spoke thus to us, every one of us eagerly assured him, that we were already awake, being satisfied with short sleep, but that we were afraid to arouse him, because it did not become the talmidim to command the Master; “and yet even this O Kefa we had almost ventured to take upon ourselves, because our hearts, agitated with longing for your words, drove sleep wholly from our eyes. But again our affection towards you opposed it, and did not suffer us violently to rouse you.” Then Kefa said: “Since therefore you assert that you are willingly awake through desire of hearing, I wish to repeat to you more carefully, and to explain in their order, the things that were spoken yesterday without arrangement. And this I propose to do throughout these daily disputations, that by night, when privacy of time and place is afforded, I will unfold in correct order, and by a straight line of explanation, anything that in the controversy has not been stated with sufficient fullness.” And then he began to point out to us how the yesterday's discussion ought to have been conducted, and how it could not be so conducted on account of the contentiousness or the unskillfulness of his opponent; and how therefore he only made use of assertion, and only overthrew what was said by his adversary, but did not expound his own doctrines either completely or distinctly. Then repeating the several matters to us, he discussed them in regular order and with full reason.

Learners and Frivolous Objectors

Chapter 168

But when the day began to be light, after prayer he went out to the crowds and stood in his accustomed place, for the discussion; and seeing Shimon standing in the middle of the crowd, he saluted the people in his usual way, and said to them: “I confess that I am grieved with respect to some men, who come to us in this way that they may learn something, but when we begin to teach them, they profess that they themselves are masters, and while indeed they ask questions as ignorant persons, they contradict as knowing trees. But maybe someone will say, that he who puts a

question puts it indeed in order that he may learn, but when that which he hears does not seem to him to be right, it is necessary that he should answer, and that seems to be contradiction that is not contradiction, but further inquiry.

Against Order is Against Reason

Chapter 169

“Let such a one then hear this: The teaching of all doctrine has a certain order, and there are some things that must be delivered first, others in the second place, and others in the third, and so all in their order; and if these things be delivered in their order, they become plain; but if they be brought forward out of order, they will seem to be spoken against reason. And therefore, order is to be observed above all things, if we seek for the purpose of finding what we seek. For he who enters rightly upon the road will observe the second place in due order, and from the second will more easily find the third; and the further he proceeds, so much the more will the way of knowledge become open to him, even until he arrive at the city of truth, whither he is bound, and that he desires to reach. But he who is unskilful, and knows not the way of inquiry, as a traveller in a foreign country, ignorant and wandering, if he will not employ a native of the country as a guide—undoubtedly when he has strayed from the way of truth, will remain outside the gates of life, and so, involved in the darkness of black night, will walk through the paths of perdition. Inasmuch therefore as, if those things that are to be sought be sought in an orderly manner, they can most easily be found, but the unskilful man is ignorant of the order of inquiry. It is right that the ignorant man should yield to the knowing one, and first learn the order of inquiry, that so at length he may find the method of asking and answering.”

Learning before Teaching

Chapter 170

To this Shimon replied: “Then truth is not the property of all, but of those only who know the art of disputation, which is absurd; for it cannot be, since *He* is equally the *elohim* of all, that all should not be equally able to know *His* will.” Then Kefa: “All were made equal by Him, and to all He has given equally to be receptive of truth. But that none of those who are born are born with education, but education is subsequent to birth, no one can doubt. Since, therefore, the birth of men holds equity in this respect, that all are equally capable of receiving discipline, the difference is not in nature but in education. Who does not know that the things which any one learns he was ignorant of before he learned them?” Then Shimon said “You say truly.” Then Kefa said, “If then in those arts that are in common use, one first learns and then teaches, how much more ought those who profess to be the educators of spirits, first to learn, and so to teach, that they may not expose themselves to ridicule, if they promise to afford knowledge to others, when they

themselves are unskillful?" Then Shimon: "This is true in respect of those arts that are in common use; but in the word of knowledge, as soon as anyone has heard, he has learned."

Self-Evidence of the Truth

Chapter 171

Then said Kefa: "If indeed one hear in an orderly and regular manner he is able to know what is true; but he who refuses to submit to the rule of a reformed life and a pure behaviour, which truly is the proper result of knowledge of the truth, will not confess that he knows what he does know. For this is exactly what we see in the case of some who, abandoning the trades that they learned in their youth, betake themselves to other performances, and by way of excusing their own sloth, begin to find fault with the trade as unprofitable." Then Shimon: "Ought all who hear to believe that whatever they hear is true?" Then Kefa: "Whoever hears an orderly statement of the truth, cannot by any means gainsay it, but knows that what is spoken is true, provided he also willingly submit to the rules of life. But those who, when they hear, are unwilling to betake themselves to good works, are prevented by the desire of doing evil from acquiescing in those things that they judge to be right. Hence it is manifest that it is in the power of the hearers to choose which of the two they prefer. But if all who hear were to obey, it would be rather a necessity of nature, leading all in one way. For as no one can be persuaded to become shorter or taller, because the force of nature does not permit it; so also, if either all were converted to the truth by a word, or all were not converted, it would be the force of nature that compelled all in the one case, and none at all in the other, to be converted."

YHWH Righteous as Well as Good

Chapter 172

Then said Shimon: "Inform us, therefore, what he who desires to know the truth must first learn." Then Kefa: "Before all things it must be inquired what it is possible for man to find out. For of necessity the judgment of YHWH turns upon this, if a man was able to do good and did it not. And therefore, men must inquire whether they have it in their power by seeking to find what is good, and to do it when they have found it; for this is that for which they are to be judged. But more than this there is no occasion for anyone but a navi to know: for what is the need for men to know how the world was made? This, indeed, would be necessary to be learned if we had to enter upon a similar construction. But now it is sufficient for us, in order to the worship of YHWH, to know that He made the world; but how He made it is no subject of inquiry for us, because, as I have said, it is not incumbent upon us to acquire the knowledge of that art, as though we were about to make something similar. But neither are we to be judged for this, why we have not learned how the world was

made, but only for that, if we be without knowledge of its Creator. For we will know that the Creator of the world is the righteous and good YHWH, if we seek Him in the paths of righteousness. For if we only know regarding Him that He is good, such knowledge is not sufficient for salvation. For in the present life not only the worthy, but also the unworthy, enjoy His goodness and His benefits. But if we believe Him to be not only good, but also righteous, and if, according to what we believe concerning YHWH, we observe righteousness in the whole course of our life, we will enjoy His goodness for ever. In a word, to the Hebrews, whose opinion concerning YHWH was that He is only good, our Master said that they should seek also His righteousness; that is, that they should know that He is good indeed in this present time, that all may live in His goodness, but that He will be righteous at the day of judgment, to bestow ageless rewards upon the worthy, from which the unworthy will be excluded.

YHWH's Justice Shown at the Day of Judgment

Chapter 173

Then Shimon: "How can one and the same being be both good and righteous?" Kefa answered: "Because without righteousness, goodness would be unrighteousness; for it is the part of a good Elohim to bestow His sunshine and rain equally on the just and the unjust; but this would seem to be unjust, if He treated the good and the bad always with equal fortune, and were it not that He does it for the sake of the fruits, which all may equally enjoy who are born in this world. But as the rain given by Elohim equally nourishes the corn and the tares, but at the time of harvest the crops are gathered into the barn, but the chaff or the tares are burnt in the fire, so in the day of judgment, when the righteous will be introduced into the Malkuth Shamayim, and the unrighteous will be cast out, then also the justice of Elohim will be shown. For if He remained for ever alike to the evil and the good, this would not only not be good, but even unrighteous and unjust; that the righteous and the unrighteous should be held by Him in one order of desert."

Immortality of the Spirit

Chapter 174

Then said Shimon: "The one point on which I should wish to be satisfied is, whether the spirit is immortal; for I cannot take up the burden of righteousness unless I know first concerning the immortality of the spirit; for indeed if it is not immortal, the profession of your preaching cannot stand." Then said Kefa: "Let us first inquire whether YHWH is just; for if this were ascertained, the perfect order of obedience would straight-way be established." Then Shimon: "With all your boasting of your knowledge of the order of discussion, you seem to me now to have answered contrary to order; for when I ask you to show whether the spirit is immortal, you say

that we must first inquire whether *Elohim* is just." Then said Kefa: "That is perfectly right and regular." Shimon: "I should wish to learn how."

Proved by the Success of the Immoral in This Life

Chapter 175

"Listen, then," said Kefa: "Some men who are blasphemers against YHWH, and who spend their whole life in injustice and pleasure die in their own bed and obtain honorable burial; while others who worship YHWH, and maintain their life frugally with all honesty and sobriety, die in deserted places for their observance of righteousness, so that they are not even thought worthy of burial. Where, then, is the justice of YHWH, if there be no immortal spirit to suffer punishment in the future for disobedient deeds, or enjoy rewards for piety and righteousness?" Then Shimon said: "It is this indeed that makes me incredulous, because many well-doers perish miserably and again many evil-doers finish long lives pleasantly."

Complaints of Shimon

Chapter 176

Then said Kefa: "This very thing that draws you into incredulity affords to us a certain conviction that there will be a judgment. For since it is certain that YHWH is just, it is a necessary consequence that there is another world, in which everyone receiving according to his deserts will prove the justice of YHWH. But if all men were now receiving according to their deserts, we should truly seem to be deceivers when we say that there is a judgment to come; and therefore the very fact that in the present life a return is not made to everyone according to his deeds affords to those who know that YHWH is just an indubitable proof that there will be a judgment." Then said Shimon: "Why, then, am I not persuaded of it?" Kefa: "Because you have not heard Y'shua saying, 'Seek first His righteousness, and all these things will be added to you.'" Then said Shimon: "Pardon me if I am unwilling to seek righteousness before I know if the spirit is immortal." Then Kefa: "You also pardon me this one thing, because I cannot do otherwise than the Navi of truth has instructed me." Then said Shimon: "It is certain that you cannot assert that the spirit is immortal, and therefore you cavil, knowing that if it be proved to be mortal, the whole profession of that obedience that you are attempting to propagate will be plucked up by the roots. And therefore, indeed, I commend your prudence, while I do not approve your persuasiveness; for you persuade many to embrace your obedience, and to submit to the restraint of pleasure in hope of future good things; to whom it occurs that they lose the enjoyment of things present, and are deceived with hopes of things future. For as soon as they die, their spirit will at the same time be extinguished."

“Full of All Subtlety and All Mischief”

Chapter 177

But Kefa, when he heard him speak thus, grinding his teeth, and rubbing his forehead with his hand, and sighing with profound grief, said: “Armed with the cunning of the old serpent, you stand forth to deceive inner-beings; and therefore, as the serpent is more subtle than any other beast, you profess that you are a teacher from the beginning. And again, like the serpent you wished to introduce many elohim; but now, being confuted in that, you assert that there is no elohim at all. For by occasion of I know not what unknown elohim, you denied that the Creator of the world is YHWH, but asserted that He is either an evil being, or that He has many equals, or, as we have said, that He is not elohim at all. And when you had been overcome in this position, you now assert that the spirit is mortal, so that men may not live righteously and uprightly in hope of things to come. For if there be no hope for the future, why should not mercy be given up, and men indulge in luxury and pleasures, from which it is manifest that all unrighteousness springs? And while you introduce so disobedient a doctrine into the miserable life of men, you call yourself obedient, and me disobedient, because, under the hope of future good things, I will not suffer men to take up arms and fight against one another, plunder and subvert everything, and attempt whatsoever lust may dictate. And what will be the condition of that life that you would introduce, that men will attack and be attacked, be enraged and disturbed, and live always in fear? For those who do evil to others must expect like evil to themselves. Do you see that you are a leader of disturbance and not of shalom, of iniquity and not of equity? But I feigned anger, not because I could not prove that the spirit is immortal, but because I pity the spirits that you are endeavouring to deceive. I will speak, therefore, but not as compelled by you; for I know how I should speak; and you will be the only one who wants not so much persuasion as admonition on this subject. But those who are really ignorant of this, I will instruct as is suitable.”

Shimon’s Subterfuges

Chapter 178

Then says Shimon: “If you are angry, I will neither ask you any questions, nor do I wish to hear you.” Then Kefa: “If you are now seeking a pretext for escaping, you have full liberty, and need not use any special pretext. For all have heard you speaking all amiss, and have perceived that you can prove nothing, but that you only asked questions for the sake of contradiction; which any one can do. For what difficulty is there in replying, after the clearest proofs have been adduced, ‘You have said nothing to the purpose?’ But that you may know that I am able to prove to you in a single sentence that the spirit is immortal, I will ask you with respect to a point

that all know; answer me, and I will prove to you in one sentence that it is immortal.” Then Shimon, who had thought that he had got, from the anger of Kefa, a pretext for departing, stopped on account of the remarkable promise that was made to him, and said: “Ask me then, and I will answer you what all know, that I may hear in a single sentence, as you have promised, how the spirit is immortal.”

Sight or Hearing?

Chapter 179

Then Kefa: “I will speak so that it may be proved to you before all the rest. Answer me, therefore, which of the two can better persuade an incredulous man, seeing or hearing?” Then Shimon said: “Seeing.” Then Kefa: “Why then do you wish to learn from me by words, what is proved to you by the thing itself and by sight?” Then Shimon: “I know not what you mean.” Then Kefa: “If you do not know, go now to your house, and entering the inner bedroom you will see an image placed, containing the figure of a murdered boy clothed in purple; ask him, and he will inform you either by hearing or seeing. For what need is there to hear from him if the spirit is immortal, when you see it standing before you? For if it were not in being, it assuredly could not be seen. But if you know not what image I speak of, let us straightway go to your house, with ten other men, of those who are here present.”

The Fatal Thrust

Chapter 180

But Shimon hearing this, and being smitten by his conscience, changed colour and became bloodless; for he was afraid, if he denied it, that his house would be searched, or that Kefa in his indignation would betray him more openly, and so all would learn what he was. Thus, he answered: “I beseech you, Kefa, by that good *Elohim* who is in you, to overcome the immorality that is in me. Receive me to repentance, and you will have me as an assistant in your preaching. For now, I have learned in very deed that you are a navi of the true *Elohim*, and therefore you alone know the secret and hidden things of men.” Then said Kefa: “You see, brothers, Shimon seeking repentance; in a little while you will see him returning again to his infidelity. For, thinking that I am a navi, forasmuch as I have disclosed his immorality, which he supposed to be secret and hidden, he has promised that he will repent. But it is not lawful for me to lie, nor must I deceive, whether this infidel be saved or not saved. For I call heaven and earth to witness, that I spoke not by a prophetic spirit what I said, and what I intimated, as far as was possible, to the listening crowds; but I learned from some who once were his associates in his works, but have now been converted to our faith, what things he did in secret. Therefore, I spoke what I knew, not what I foreknew.”

Shimon's Rage

Chapter 181

But when Shimon heard this, he assailed Kefa with curses and reproaches, saying: "O most immoral and most deceitful of men, to whom fortune, not truth, has given the victory. But I sought repentance not for defect of knowledge, but in order that you, thinking that by repentance I should become your talmid, might entrust to me all the secrets of your profession, and so at length, knowing them all, I might confute you. But as you cunningly understood for what reason I had pretended teshuvah, and acquiesced as if you did not understand my stratagem, that you might first expose me in presence of the people as unskillful, then foreseeing that being thus exposed to the people, I must of necessity be indignant, and confess that I was not truly penitent, you anticipated me, that you might say, that I should, after my teshuvah, again return to my infidelity, that you might seem to have conquered on all sides, both if I continued in the teshuvah that I had professed, and if I did not continue; and so you should be believed to be wise, because you had foreseen these things, while I should seem to be deceived, because I did not foresee your trick. But you foreseeing mine have used subtlety and circumvented me. But, as I said, your victory is the result of fortune, not of truth: yet I know why I did not foresee this; because I stood by you and spoke with you in my goodness, and bore patiently with you. But now I will show you the power of my divinity, so that you will quickly fall down and worship me.

Shimon's Vaunt

Chapter 182

"I am the first power who is always and without beginning. But having entered the womb of Rachel, I was born of her as a man, that I might be visible to men. I have flown through the air; I have been mixed with fire and been made one body with it; I have made statues to move; I have animated lifeless things; I have made stones bread; I have flown from mountain to mountain; I have moved from place to place upheld by malachim' hands and have lighted on the earth. Not only have I done these things; but even now I am able to do them, that by facts I may prove to all, that I am the son of elohim, enduring to eternity, and that I can make those who believe on me endure in like manner forever. But your words are all vain; nor can you perform any real works *such as I have now mentioned*, as he also who sent you is a magician, who yet could not deliver himself from the suffering of the stake."

Attempts to Create a Disturbance

Chapter 183

To this speech of Shimon, Kefa answered: "Do not meddle with the things that belong to others; for that you are a magician, you have confessed and made manifest by the very deeds that you have done; but our Master, who is the Son of YHWH and of man, is manifestly good; and that he is truly the Son of YHWH has been told, and will be told to those to whom it is fitting. But if you will not confess that you are a magician, let us go, with all this multitude, to your house, and then it will be evident who is a magician." While Kefa was speaking thus, Shimon began to assail him with blasphemies and curses, that he might make a riot, and excite all so that he could not be refuted, and that Kefa, withdrawing on account of his blasphemy, might seem to be overcome. But he stood fast, and began to charge him more vehemently.

Shimon's Retreat

Chapter 184

Then the people in indignation cast Shimon from the court, and drove him forth from the gate of the house; and only one person followed him when he was driven out. Then silence being obtained, Kefa began to address the people in this manner: "You ought, brothers, to bear with immoral men patiently; knowing that although YHWH could cut them off, yet He suffers them to remain even till the day appointed, in which judgment will pass upon all. Why then should not we bear with those whom YHWH suffers? Why should not we bear with fortitude the wrongs that they do to us, when He who is almighty does not take vengeance on them, that both His own goodness and the impiety of the immoral may be known? But if the immoral one had not found Shimon to be his minister, he would doubtless have found another: for it is of necessity that in this life offences come, 'but woe to that man by whom they come; 'and therefore Shimon is rather to be mourned over, because he has become a choice vessel for the immoral one, which undoubtedly would not have been had he not received power over him for his former sins. For why should I further say that he once believed in our Y'shua, and was persuaded that spirits are immortal? Although in this he is deluded by demons, yet he has persuaded himself that he has the spirit of a murdered boy ministering to him in whatever he pleases to employ it in; in which truly, as I have said, he is deluded by demons, and therefore I spoke to him according to his own ideas: for he has learned from the Yahuda'im that judgment and vengeance are to be brought forth against those who set themselves against the true faith, and do not repent. But here are men to whom, as being perfect in crimes, the immoral one appears that he may deceive them, so that they may never be turned to repentance.

Kefa's Benediction

Chapter 185

“You therefore who are turned to YHWH by repentance, bend to Him your knees.” When he had said this, all the multitude bent their knees to YHWH; and Kefa, looking towards heaven, prayed for them with tears that YHWH, for His goodness, would deign to receive those betaking themselves to Him. And after he had prayed and had instructed them to meet early the next day, he dismissed the multitude. Then according to custom, having taken food, we went to sleep.

Kefa's Accessibility

Chapter 186

Kefa, therefore, rising at the usual hour of the night, found us waking; and when, saluting us in his usual manner, he had taken his seat, first of all Niceta said: “If you will permit me, my master Kefa, I have something to ask of you.” Then Kefa said: “I permit not only you but all, and not only now but always, that everyone confesses what moves him and the part in his mind that is pained, in order that he may obtain healing. For things that are covered with silence and are not made known to us are cured with difficulty, like maladies of long standing; and therefore, since the medicine of seasonable and necessary discourse cannot easily be applied to those who keep silence, everyone ought to declare in what respect his mind is feeble through ignorance. But to him who keeps silence, it belongs to YHWH alone to give a remedy. We indeed also can do it, but by the lapse of a long time. For it is necessary that the discourse of doctrine, proceeding in order from the beginning and meeting each single question, should disclose all things and resolve and reach to all things, even to that which everyone required in his mind; but that, as I have said, can only be done in the course of a long time. Now, then, ask what you please.”

False Signs and Miracles

Chapter 187

Then Niceta said: “I give you abundant thanks, O most clement Kefa; but this is what I desire to learn: how Shimon, who is the enemy of YHWH, is able to do such and so great things? For indeed he told no lie in his declaration of what he has done.” To this the blessed Kefa thus answered: “YHWH, who is one and true, has resolved to prepare good and faithful haverim for His first begotten; but knowing that none can be good unless they have in their power that perception by which they may become good, that they may be of their own intent what they choose to be—and otherwise they could not be truly good, if they were kept in goodness not by purpose, but by necessity—has given to everyone the power of his own will, that he may be what he wishes to be. And again, foreseeing that that power of will would make some choose

good things and others evil, and so that the human race would necessarily be divided into two classes, He has permitted each class to choose both a place and a king, whom they would. For the good King rejoices in the good, and the immoral one in the evil. And although I have expounded those things more fully to you, O Clement, in that treatise in which I discoursed on foreknowledge and the end, yet it is fitting that I should now make clear to Niceta also, as he asks me, what is the reason than Shimon, whose thoughts are against YHWH, is able to do so great marvels.

Self-Love the Foundation of Goodness

Chapter 188

“First of all, then, he is evil, in the judgment of YHWH, who will not inquire what is advantageous to himself. For how can anyone love another if he does not love himself? Or to whom will that man not be an enemy who cannot be a friend to himself? In order, therefore, that there might be a distinction between those who choose good and those who choose evil, YHWH has concealed that which is profitable to men, i.e., the possession of the Malkuth Shamayim, and has laid it up and hidden it as a secret treasure, so that no one can easily attain it by his own power or knowledge. Yet He has brought the report of it under various names and opinions through successive generations, to the hearing of all: so that whosoever should be lovers of good, hearing it, might inquire and discover what is profitable and salutary to them; but that they should ask it, not from themselves but from Him who has hidden it, and should pray that access and the way of knowledge might be given to them: which way is opened to those only who love it above all the good things of this world; and on no other condition can anyone even understand it, however wise he may seem; but that those who neglect to inquire what is profitable and salutary to themselves, as self-haters and self-enemies, should be deprived of its good things, as lovers of evil things.

YHWH to Be Supremely Loved

Chapter 189

“It behooves, therefore, the good to love that *way* above all things, that is, above riches, glory, rest, parents, relatives, friends, and everything in the world. But he who perfectly loves this possession of the Malkuth Shamayim will undoubtedly cast away all practice of evil habit, negligence, sloth, malice, anger, and such like. For if you prefer any of these to it, as loving the vices of your own lust more than YHWH, you will not attain to the possession of the heavenly kingdom; for truly it is foolish to love anything more than YHWH. For whether they are parents, they die; or relatives, they do not continue; or friends, they change. But YHWH alone is ageless, and abides unchangeable. He, therefore, who will not seek after that which is profitable to him, is

evil to such an extent that his immorality exceeds the very prince of impiety. For he abuses the goodness of YHWH to the purpose of his own immorality, and pleases himself; but the other neglects the good things of his own salvation, that by his own destruction he may please the evil one.”

Ten Commandments Corresponding to the Plagues

Chapter 190

“On account of those, therefore, who by neglect of their own salvation please the evil one, and those who by study of their own profit seek to please the good One, ten things have been prescribed as a test to this present age, according to the number of the ten plagues that were brought upon Mitsrayim. For when Moshe, according to the commandment of YHWH, demanded of Pharaoh that he should let the people go, and in token of his heavenly commission showed signs, his rod being thrown upon the ground was turned into a serpent. And when Pharaoh could not by these means be brought to consent, as having freedom of will, again the magicians seemed to do similar signs, by permission of YHWH, that the purpose of the melek might be proved from the freedom of his will, whether he would rather believe the signs wrought by Moshe, who was sent by YHWH, or those that the magicians rather seemed to work than actually wrought. For truly he ought to have understood from their very name that they were not workers of truth, because they were not called messengers of YHWH, but magicians, as the tradition also intimates. Moreover, they seemed to maintain the contest up to a certain point, and afterwards they confessed of themselves, and yielded to their superior. Therefore, the last plague is inflicted, the destruction of the first-born, and then Moshe is commanded to consecrate the people by the sprinkling of blood; and so, gifts being presented, with so much entreaty he is asked to depart with the people.

Shimon Resisted Kefa, as the Magicians Moshe

Chapter 191

“In a similar transaction I see that I am even now engaged. For as then, when Moshe exhorted the melek to believe YHWH, the magicians opposed him by a pretended exhibition of similar signs, and so kept back the unbelievers from salvation; so also now, when I have come forth to teach all tribes to believe in the true YHWH, Shimon the magician resists me, acting in opposition to me, as they also did in opposition to Moshe; in order that whosoever they be from among the tribes that do not use sound judgment, they may be made manifest; but that those may be saved who rightly distinguish signs from signs.” While Kefa thus spoke, Niceta answered: “I beseech you that you would permit me to state whatever occurs to my mind.” Then Kefa, being delighted with the eagerness of his talmidim, said: “Speak what you will.”

Miracles of the Magicians

Chapter 192

Then said Niceta: "In what respect did the Mitsrayim sin in not believing Moshe, since the magicians wrought like signs, even although they were done rather in appearance than in truth? For if I had been there then, should I not have thought, from the fact that the magicians did like things to those that Moshe did, either that Moshe was a magician, or that the magicians wrought their signs by divine commission? For I should not have thought it likely that the same things could be affected by magicians, even in appearance, which he who was sent by YHWH performed. And now, in what respect do they sin who believe Shimon, since they see him do so great marvels? Or is it not marvellous to fly through the air, to be so mixed with fire as to become one body with it, to make statues walk, brazen dogs bark, and other such like things, which assuredly are sufficiently wonderful to those who know not how to distinguish? Yea, he has also been seen to make bread of stones. But if he sins who believes those who do signs, how will it appear that he also does not sin who has believed our Master for His signs and works of power?"

Truth Veiled with Love

Chapter 193

Then said Kefa: "I take it well that you bring the truth to the rule, and do not suffer hindrances of faith to lurk in your inner being. For thus you can easily obtain the remedy. Do you remember that I said that the worst of all things is when anyone neglects to learn what is for his good?" Niceta answered: "I remember." Then Kefa: "And again, that YHWH has veiled His truth, that He may disclose it to those who faithfully follow Him?" "Neither," said Niceta, "have I forgotten this." Then said Kefa: "What think you then? That YHWH has buried His truth deep in the earth, and has heaped mountains upon it, that it may be found by those only who are able to dig down into the depths? It is not so; but as He has surrounded the mountains and the earth with the expanse of heaven, so has He veiled the truth with the curtain of His own love, that he alone may be able to reach it who has first knocked at the gate of divine love.

Good and Evil in Pairs

Chapter 194

"For, as I was beginning to say, YHWH has appointed for this world certain pairs; and he who comes first of the pairs is of evil, he who comes second, of good. And in this is given to every man an occasion of right judgment, whether he is simple or prudent. For if he is simple and believes him who comes first, though moved thereto

by signs and prodigies, he must of necessity, for the same reason, believe him who comes second; for he will be persuaded by signs and prodigies, as he was before. When he believes this second one, he will learn from him that he ought not to believe the first, who comes of evil; and so, the error of the former is corrected by the emendation of the latter. But if he will not receive the second, because he has believed the first, he will deservedly be condemned as unjust; for unjust it is, that when he believed the first on account of his signs, he will not believe the second, though he bring the same, or even greater signs. But if he has not believed the first, it follows that he may be moved to believe the second. For his mind has not become so completely inactive but that it may be roused by the redoubling of marvels. But if he is prudent, he can make distinction of the signs. And if indeed he has believed in the first, he will be moved to the second by the increase in the miracles, and by comparison he will apprehend that are better; although clear tests *of miracles* are recognized by all learned men, as we have shown in the regular order of our discussion. But if any one, as being whole and not needing a physician, is not moved to the first, he will be drawn to the second by the very continuance of the thing, and will make a distinction of signs and marvels after this fashion; he who is of the evil one, the signs that he works do good to no one; but those that the good man works are profitable to men.

Uselessness of Pretended Miracles

Chapter 195

“For tell me, I pray you, what is the use of showing statues walking, dogs of brass or stone barking, mountains dancing, of flying through the air, and such like things, which you say that Shimon did? But those *signs* that are of the good One, are directed to the advantage of men, as are those that were done by our Master, who gave sight to the blind and hearing to the deaf, raised up the feeble and the lame, drove away sicknesses and demons, raised the dead, and did other like things, as you see also that I do. Those signs, therefore, which make for the benefit of men, and confer some good upon them, the immoral one cannot do, excepting only at the end of the age. For then it will be permitted him to mix in with his signs some good ones, as the expelling of demons or the healing of diseases; by this means going beyond his bounds and being divided against himself and fighting against himself, he will be destroyed. And therefore Y’shua has foretold that in the last times there will be such temptation, that, if it be possible, the very elect will be deceived; that is to say, that by the marks of signs being confused, even those must be disturbed who seem to be expert in discovering spirits and distinguishing miracles.

Ten Pairs

Chapter 196

“The ten pairs of which we have spoken have therefore been assigned to this world from the beginning of time. Cain and Avel were one pair. The second was the Nephilim and Noach; the third, Pharaoh and Avraham; the fourth, the Peleset and Yitzchak; the fifth, Esau and Ya’akov; the sixth, the magicians and Moshe the Torah-giver; the seventh, the tempter and the Son of Adamah; the eighth, Shimon and I, Kefa; the ninth, all tribes, and he who will be sent to sow the word among the tribes; the tenth, anti-moshiach and Moshiach. Concerning these pairs, we will give you fuller information at another time.” When Kefa spoke thus, Aquila said: “Truly there is need of constant teaching, that one may learn what is true about everything.”

The Life of the Notzrim

Chapter 197

But Kefa said: “Who is he that is earnest toward instruction, and that studiously inquires into every particular, except him who loves his own spirit to salvation, and renounces all the affairs of this world, that he may have leisure to attend to the word of YHWH only? Such is he whom alone Y’shua deems wise, even he who sells all that he has and buys the one true pearl, who understands what is the difference between temporal things and ageless, small and great, men and YHWH. For he understands what is the ageless hope in presence of the true and good YHWH. But who is he that loves YHWH, save him who knows His wisdom? And how can anyone obtain knowledge of YHWH’s wisdom, unless he is constant in hearing His word? Whence it comes, that he conceives a love for Him, and venerates Him with worthy honor, pouring out hymns and prayers to Him, and most pleasantly resting in these, accounting it his greatest damage if at any time he speak or do aught else even for a moment of time; because, in reality, the spirit that is filled with the love of YHWH can neither look upon anything except what pertains to YHWH, nor, by reason of love of Him, can be satisfied with meditating upon those things that it knows to be pleasing to Him. But those who have not conceived affection for Him, nor bear His love lighted up in their mind, are as it were placed in darkness and cannot see light; and therefore, even before they begin to learn anything of YHWH, they immediately faint as though worn out by labor; and filled with weariness, they are straightway hurried by their own peculiar habits to those words with which they are pleased. For it is wearisome and annoying to such persons to hear anything about YHWH; and that for the reason I have stated, because their mind has received no sweetness of divine love.”

A Deserter from Shimon's Camp

Chapter 198

While Kefa was thus speaking, the day dawned; and, behold, one of the talmidim of Shimon came, crying out: "I beseech you, O Kefa, receive me, a wretch, who have been deceived by Shimon the magician, to whom I gave heed as to a heavenly elohim, by reason of those miracles that I saw him perform. But when I heard your discourses, I began to think him a man, and indeed an immoral man; nevertheless, when he went out from this, I alone followed him, for I had not yet clearly perceived his impieties. But when he saw me following him, he called me blessed, and led me to his house; and about the middle of the night he said to me, 'I will make you better than all men, if you will remain with me even till the end.' When I had promised him this, he demanded of me an oath of perseverance; and having got this, he placed upon my shoulders some of his polluted and accursed secret things, that I might carry them, and ordered me to follow him. But when we came to the sea, he went aboard a boat that was there, and took from my neck what he had ordered me to carry. And as he came out a little after, bringing nothing with him, he must have thrown it into the sea. Then he asked me to go with him, saying that he was going to Rome, and that there he would please the people so much, that he should be reckoned a god, and publicly gifted with divine honors. 'Then,' said he, 'if you wish to return hither, I will send you back, loaded with all riches, and upheld by various services.' When I heard this, and saw nothing in him in accordance with this profession, but perceived that he was a magician and a deceiver, I answered: 'Pardon me, I pray you; for I have a pain in my feet, and therefore I am not able to leave Caesarea. Besides, I have a wife and little children, whom I cannot leave by any means.' When he heard this, he charged me with sloth, and set out towards Dora, saying, 'You will be sorry, when you hear what glory I will get in the city of Rome.' And after this he set out for Rome, as he said; but I hastily returned hither, entreating you to receive me to teshuvah, because I have been deceived by him."

Declaration of Shimon's Immorality

Chapter 199

When he who had returned from Shimon had thus spoken, Kefa ordered him to sit down in the court. And he himself going forth, and seeing immense crowds, far more than on the previous days, stood in his usual place; and pointing out him who had come, began to discourse as follows: "This man whom I point out to you, brothers, has just come to me, telling me of the immoral practices of Shimon, and how he has thrown the implements of his immorality into the sea, not induced to do so by repentance, but being afraid lest, being detected, he should be subjected to the public laws. And he asked this man, as he tells me, to remain with him, promising

him immense gifts; and when he could not persuade him to do so, he left him, reproaching him for sluggishness, and set out for Rome.” When Kefa had intimated this to the crowd, the man himself who had returned from Shimon stood up, and began to state to the people everything relating to Shimon’s crimes. And when they were shocked by the things that they heard that Shimon had done by his magical acts, Kefa said:

Kefa Resolves to Follow Shimon

Chapter 200

“Be not, my brothers, distressed by those things that have been done, but give heed to the future: for what is passed is ended; but the things that threaten are dangerous to those who will fall in with them. For offences will never be wanting in this world, so long as the enemy is permitted to act according to his will; in order that the prudent and those who understood his wiles may be conquerors in the contests that he raises against them; but that those who neglect to learn the things that pertain to the salvation of their inner-beings, may be taken by him with merited deceptions. Since, therefore, as you have heard, Shimon has gone forth to preoccupy the ears of the Goyim who are called to salvation, it is necessary that I also follow upon his track, so that whatever disputations he raises may be corrected by us. But inasmuch as it is right that greater anxiety should be felt concerning you who are already received within the walls of life—for if that which has been actually acquired perish, a positive loss is sustained; while with respect to that which has not yet been acquired, if it can be got, there is so much gain; but if not, the only loss is that there is no gain; in order, therefore, that you may be more and more confirmed in the truth, and the tribes who are called to salvation may in no way be prevented by the immorality of Shimon, I have thought good to ordain Zacchai as pastor over you, and to remain with you myself for three months; and so to go to the Goyim, lest through our delaying longer, and the crimes of Shimon stalking in every direction, they should become incurable.”

Zacchai Made Mevaqqre of Caesarea

Chapter 201

At this announcement all the people wept, hearing that he was going to leave them; and Kefa, sympathizing with them, himself also shed tears; and looking up to heaven, he said: “To You, O YHWH, who have made heaven and earth, and all things that are in them, we pour out the prayer of supplication, that You would comfort those who have recourse to You in their tribulation. For by reason of the affection that they have towards You, they do love me who have declared to them Your truth. So guard them with the right hand of Your compassion; for neither Zacchai nor any other man can be a sufficient guardian to them.” When he had said

this, and more to the same effect, he laid his hands upon Zacchai, and prayed that he might blamelessly discharge the duty of his oversight. Then he ordained twelve zaqenim and four attendants, and said: "I have ordained you this Zacchai as a Mevaqqre, knowing that he has the fear of YHWH, and is expert in the Scriptures. You ought therefore to honour him as holding the place of Moshiach, obeying him for your salvation, and knowing that whatever honour and whatever injury is done to him, redounds to Moshiach, and from Moshiach to YHWH. Hear him therefore with all attention, and receive from him the halakah of the faith; and from the zaqenim the admonitions of life; and from the attendants the order of discipline. Have a diligent care of widows; vigorously assist orphans; take pity on the poor; teach the young modesty;-and in a word, sustain one another as circumstances will demand; worship YHWH who created heaven and earth; believe in Moshiach; love one another; be compassionate to all; and fulfil love not only in word, but in act and deed."

Invitation to Mikvah

Chapter 202

When he had given them these and such like precepts, he made proclamation to the people, saying: "Since I have resolved to stay three months with you, if any one desires it, let him be immersed in the mikvah, that, stripped of his former evils, he may for the future, in consequence of his own conduct, become heir of heavenly blessings, as a reward for his good actions. Whosoever will, then, let him come to Zacchai and give his name to him, and let him hear from him the mysteries of the Malkuth Shamayim. Let him attend to frequent fastings, and approve himself in all things, that at the end of these three months he may be immersed on the day of the festival. But every one of you will be immersed in ever flowing waters, the name of the Master Y'shua being invoked over him; he being first anointed with oil set-apart by prayer, that so at length, being consecrated by these things, he may attain a perception of set-apart things."

Twelve Sent Before Him

Chapter 203

And when he had spoken at length on the subject of mikvah, he dismissed the crowd, and betook himself to his usual place of abode; and there, while the twelve stood around him (namely, Zacchai and Tzephanyah, Yosef and Micha-El, El-Iezar and Pinchas, El-Azar and El-Isha, I Clement and Nakdimon, Niceta and Aquila), he addressed us to the following effect: "Let us, my brothers, consider what is right; for it is our duty to bring some help to the tribes, which are called to salvation. You have yourselves heard that Shimon has set out, wishing to anticipate our journey. Him we should have followed step by step, that wherever he tries to subvert any, we might immediately confute him. But since it appears to me to be unjust to forsake those

who have been already converted to YHWH, and to bestow our care upon those who are still afar off, I think it right that I should remain three months with those in this city who have been turned to the faith, and should strengthen them; and yet that we should not neglect those who are still far off, lest it be that if they be long infected with the power of pernicious doctrine, it be more difficult to recover them. Therefore I wish (only, however, if you also think it right), that for Zacchai, whom we have now ordained Mevaqqre, Benyamin the son of Saba be substituted; and for Clement (whom I have resolved to have always by me, because, coming from the Goyim, he has a great desire to hear the word of YHWH) there be substituted Chananyah the son of Safra; and for Niceta and Aquila, who have been but lately converted to the faith of Moshiach, Reuben the brother of Zacchai, and Zacharyah the builder. I wish, therefore, to complete the number of twelve by substituting these four for the other four, that Shimon may feel that I, in them, am always with him.”

Arrangements Approved by All the Brothers

Chapter 204

Having therefore separated me, Clement, and Niceta and Aquila, he said to those twelve: “I wish you, the day after tomorrow, to proceed to the Goyim and to follow in the footsteps of Shimon that you may inform me of all his proceedings. You will also inquire diligently the sentiments of every one and announce to them that I will come to them without delay; and, in short, in all places instruct the Goyim to expect my coming.” When he had spoken these things and others to the same effect he said: “You also, my brothers, if you have anything to say to these things, say on lest it be not right that seems good to me alone.” Then all, with one voice applauding him, said: “We ask you rather to arrange everything according to your own judgment, and to order what seems good to yourself; for this we think to be the perfect work of obedience, if we fulfil what you command.”

Departure of the Twelve

Chapter 205

Therefore, on the day appointed, when they had arranged themselves before Kefa, they said: “Do not think, O Kefa, that it is a small grief to us that we are to be deprived of the privilege of hearing you for three months; but since it is good for us to do what you order, we will most readily obey. We will always retain in our hearts the remembrance of your face; and so, we set out actively, as you have commanded us.” Then he, having poured out a prayer to YHWH for them, dismissed them. And when those twelve who had been sent forward had gone, Kefa entered, according to custom, and stood in the place of disputation. And a multitude of people had come together, even a larger number than usual; and all with tears gazed upon him, by reason of what they had heard from him the day before, that he was about to go

forth on account of Shimon. Then, seeing them weeping, he himself also was similarly affected, although he endeavoured to conceal and to restrain his tears. But the trembling of his voice, and the interruption of his discourse, betrayed that he was distressed by similar emotion.

Kefa Prepares the Caesareans for His Departure

Chapter 206

However, rubbing his forehead with his hand, he said: "Be of good courage, my brothers, and comfort your sorrowful hearts by means of counsel, referring all things to YHWH, whose will alone is to be fulfilled and to be preferred in all things. For let us suppose for a moment, that by reason of the affection that we have towards you, we should act against His will, and remain with you, is He not able, by sending death upon me, to appoint to me a longer separation from you? And therefore, it is better for us to carry out this shorter separation with His will, as those to whom it is prescribed to obey YHWH in all things. Hence you also ought to obey Him with like submission, inasmuch as you love me from no other reason than on account of your love of Him. As haverim of YHWH, therefore, acquiesce in His will; but also judge yourselves what is right. Would it not have seemed immoral, if, when Shimon was deceiving you, I had been detained by the brothers in Yahrushalayim, and had not come to you, and that although you had Zacchai among you, a good and eloquent man? So now also consider that it would be immoral, if, when Shimon has gone forth to assail the Goyim, who are wholly without a defender, I should be detained by you, and should not follow him. So, let us see to it, that we do not, by an unreasonable affection, accomplish the will of the immoral one."

More Than Ten Thousand immersed

Chapter 207

"Meantime I will remain with you three months, as I promised. Be you constant in hearing the word; and at the end of that time, if any are able and willing to follow us, they may do so, if duty will admit of it. And when I say *if duty will admit* I mean that no one by his departure must sadden anyone who ought not to be saddened, as by leaving parents who ought not to be left, or a faithful wife, or any other person to whom he is bound to afford comfort for YHWH's sake." Meantime, disputing and teaching day by day, he filled up the tithe appointed with the labour of teaching; and when the festival day arrived, upwards of ten thousand were immersed.

Tidings of Shimon

Chapter 208

But in those days a letter was received from the brothers who had gone before, in which were detailed the crimes of Shimon, how going from city to city he was deceiving multitudes, and everywhere maligning Kefa, so that, when he should come, no one might afford him a hearing. For he asserted that Kefa was a magician, a godless man, injurious, cunning, ignorant, and professing impossible things. "For," says he, "he asserts that the dead will rise again, which is impossible. But if any one attempts to confute him, he is cut off by secret snares by him, through means of his attendants. So, I also," says he, "when I had vanquished him and triumphed over him, fled for fear of his snares, lest he should destroy me by incantations, or compass my death by plots." They intimated also that he mainly stayed at Tripolis.

Farewell to Caesarea

Chapter 209

Kefa therefore ordered the letter to be read to the people; and after the reading of it, he addressed them and gave them full instructions about everything, but especially that they should obey Zacchai, whom he had ordained Mevaqqre over them. Also, he commended the zaqenim and the attendants to the people, and not less the people to them. And then, announcing that he should spend the winter at Tripolis, he said: "I commend you to the favour of YHWH, being about to depart tomorrow, with YHWH's will. But during the whole three months that he spent at Caesarea, for the sake of instruction, whatever he discoursed of in the presence of the people in the day-time, he explained more fully and perfectly in the night, in private to us, as more faithful and completely approved by him. And at the same time he commanded me, because he understood that I carefully stored in my memory what I heard, to commit to writing whatever seemed worthy of record, and to send it to you, my master Ya'akov, as also I did, in obedience to his command."

Contents of Clement's Dispatches to Ya'akov

Chapter 210

The first scroll, therefore, of those that I formerly sent to you, contains an account of Y'shua, and of the peculiarity of the understanding of Torah, according to what the tradition of Moshe teaches. The second contains an account of the beginning, and whether there be one beginning or many, and that Torah of the Hebrews knows what immensity is. The third, concerning YHWH, and those things that have been ordained by Him. The fourth, that though there are many that are called elohim, there is but one true Elohim, according to the testimonies of the Scriptures. The fifth, that there are two heavens, one of which is that visible firmament that will pass

away, but the other is ageless and invisible. The sixth, concerning good and evil; and that all things are subjected to good by the Father; and why, and how, and whence evil is, and that it cooperates with good, but not with a good purpose; and what are the signs of good, and what those of evil; and what is the difference between duality and conjunction. The seventh, what are the things that the twelve shlichim treated of in the presence of the people in the Hekel. The eighth, concerning the words of YHWH that seem to be contradictory, but are not; and what is the explanation of them. The ninth, that Torah that has been given by YHWH is righteous and perfect, and that it alone can make pure. The tenth, concerning the carnal birth of men, and concerning the generation that is by mikvah; and what is the succession of carnal seed in man; and what is the account of his spirit, and how the freedom of the will is in it, which, seeing it is not unbegotten, but made, could not be immoveable from good. Concerning these several subjects, therefore, whatever Kefa discoursed at Caesarea, according to his command, as I have said, I have sent you written in ten volumes. But on the next day, as had been determined, we set out from Caesarea with some faithful men, who had resolved to accompany Kefa.

Book 4

Halt at Dora

Chapter 211

Having set out from Caesarea on the way to Tripolis, we made our first stoppage at a small town called Dora, because it was not far distant; and almost all those who had believed through the preaching of Kefa could scarcely bear to be separated from him, but walked along with us, again and again gazing upon him, again and again embracing him, again and again conversing with him, until we came to the inn. On the following day we came to Ptolemais, where we stayed ten days; and when a considerable number had received the word of YHWH, we signified to some of them who seemed particularly attentive, and wished to detain us longer for the sake of instruction, that they might, if so disposed, follow us to Tripolis. We acted in the same way at Tyre, and Sidon, and Berytus, and announced to those who desired to hear further discourses, that we were to spend the winter at Tripolis. Therefore, as all those who were anxious followed Kefa from each city, we were a great multitude of elect ones when we entered into Tripolis. On our arrival, the brothers who had been sent before met us before the gates of the city; and taking us under their charge, conducted us to the various lodgings that they had prepared. Then there arose a commotion in the city, and a great assemblage of persons desirous to see Kefa.

Reception in the House of Maro

Chapter 212

And when we had come to the house of Maro, in which preparation had been made for Kefa, he turned to the crowd, and told them that he would address them the day after tomorrow. Therefore, the brothers who had been sent before assigned lodgings to all who had come with us. Then, when Kefa had entered into the house of Maro, and was asked to partake of food, he answered that he would by no means do so, until he had ascertained whether all those that had accompanied him were provided with lodgings. Then he learned from the brothers who had been sent before, that the citizens had received them not only hospitably, but with all kindness, by reason of their love towards Kefa; so much so, that several were disappointed because there were no guests for them; for that all had made such preparations, that even if many more had come, there would still have been a deficiency of guests for the hosts, not of hosts for the guests.

Shimon's Flight

Chapter 213

Thereupon Kefa was greatly delighted, and praised the brothers, and blessed them, and requested them to remain with him. Then, when he had bathed in the sea, and had taken food, he went to sleep in the evening; and rising, as usual, at cock-crow, while the evening light was still burning, he found us all awake. Now there were in all sixteen of us, viz. Kefa and me, Clement, Niceta and Aquila, and those twelve who had preceded us. Saluting us, then, as was his wont, Kefa said: "Since we are not taken up with others to-day, let us be taken up with ourselves. I will tell you what took place at Caesarea after your departure, and you will tell us of the doings of Shimon here." And while the conversation was going on these subjects, at daybreak some of the members of the family came in and told Kefa that Shimon, when he heard of Kefa's arrival, departed in the night, on the way to Syria. They also stated that the crowds thought that the day that he had said was to intervene was a very long time for their affection, and that they were standing in impatience before the gate, conversing among themselves about those things that they wished to hear, and that they hoped that they should by all means see him before the time appointed; and that as the day became lighter the multitudes were increasing, and that they were trusting confidently, whatever they might be presuming upon, that they should hear a discourse from him. "Now then" said they "instruct us to tell them what seems good to you; for it is absurd that so great a multitude should have come together, and should depart with sadness, through no answer being returned to them. For they will not consider that it is they that have not waited for the appointed day but rather they will think that you are slighting them."

The Harvest Plenteous

Chapter 214

Then Kefa, filled with admiration, said: "You see, brothers, how every word of YHWH spoken prophetically is fulfilled. For I remember that He said, 'The harvest indeed is plenteous, but the laborers are few; ask therefore the Master of the harvest, that He would send out laborers into His harvest.' Behold, therefore, the things that are foretold in a mystery are fulfilled. But whereas He said also, 'Many will come from the east and the west, from the north and the south, and will recline in the bosom of Avraham, and Yitzchak, and Ya'akov'; this also is, as you see, in like manner fulfilled. So I entreat you, my fellow-servants and helpers that you would learn diligently the order of preaching, and the ways of absolutions, that you may be able to save the inner-beings of men, who by the secret power of YHWH acknowledge whom they ought to love even before they are taught. For you see that these men, like good servants, long for him whom they expect to announce to them the coming of their Master, that they may be able to fulfill His will when they have learned it. The desire, therefore, of hearing the word of YHWH, and inquiring into His will, they have from YHWH; and this is the beginning of the gift of YHWH, which is given to the Goyim, that by this they may be able to receive the halakah of truth.

Moshe and Moshiach

Chapter 215

"For so also it was given to the people of the Hebrews from the beginning, that they should love Moshe, and believe his word; whence also it is written: 'The people believed YHWH, and Moshe His servant.' What, therefore, was of the peculiar gift from YHWH toward the tribe of the Hebrews, we see now to be given also to those who are called from among the Goyim to the faith. But the method of works is put into the power and will of every one, and this is their own; but to have an affection towards a teacher of truth. This is a gift of the heavenly Father. But salvation is in this, that you do His will of whom you have conceived a love and affection through the gift of YHWH; lest that saying of His be addressed to you that He spoke, 'Why call you me Master, Master, and do not what I say?' It is therefore the peculiar gift bestowed by YHWH upon the Hebrews that they believe Moshe; and the peculiar gift bestowed upon the Goyim is that they love Y'shua. For this also the Master intimated, when He said, 'I will confess' to You, O Father, Eloha of sky and earth, because You have concealed these things from the wise and prudent, and have revealed them to babies. By which it is certainly declared, that the people of the Hebrews, who were instructed out of Torah, did not know Him; but the people of the Goyim have acknowledged Y'shua, and venerate Him; on which account also they will be saved, not only acknowledging Him, but also doing His will. But he who is of

the Goyim, and who has it of YHWH to believe Moshe, ought also to have it of his own purpose to love Y'shua also. And again, the Hebrew, who has it of YHWH to believe Moshe, ought to have it also of his own purpose to believe in Y'shua; so that each of them, having in himself something of the divine gift, and something of his own exertion, may be perfect by both. For concerning such a one our Master spoke, as of a rich man, 'Who brings forth from his treasures things new and old.'

A Congregation

Chapter 216

"But enough has been said of these things for time presses, and the eager attention of the people invites us to address them." And when he had thus spoken, he asked where there was a suitable place for discussion. And Maro said: "I have a very spacious hall that can hold more than five hundred men, and there is also a garden within the house; or if it please you to be in some public place, all would prefer it, for there is nobody who does not desire at least to see your face." Then Kefa said: "Show me the hall, or the garden." And when he had seen the hall, he went in to see the garden also; and suddenly the whole multitude, as if someone had called them, rushed into the house, and from there broke through into the garden, where Kefa was already standing, selecting a fit place for discussion.

The Sick Healed

Chapter 217

But when he saw that the crowds had, like the waters of a great river, poured over the narrow passage, he mounted upon a pillar that stood near the wall of the garden, and first saluted the people in his usual manner. But some of those who were present, and who had been for a long time distressed by demons, threw themselves on the ground, while the unclean spirits entreated that they might be allowed but for one day to remain in the bodies that they had taken possession of. But Kefa rebuked them, and commanded them to depart; and they went out without delay. After these, others who had been afflicted with long-standing sicknesses asked Kefa that they might receive healing; and he promised that he would entreat YHWH for them as soon as his discourse of instruction was completed. But as soon as he promised, they were freed from their sicknesses; and he ordered them to sit down apart, with those who had been freed from the demons, as after the fatigue of labour. Meantime, while this was going on, a vast multitude assembled, attracted not only by the desire of hearing Kefa, but also by the report of the cures that had been accomplished. But Kefa, beckoning with his hand to the people to be still, and settling the crowds in tranquillity, began to address them as follows:

Providence Vindicated

Chapter 218

“It seems to me necessary, at the outset of a discourse concerning the true worship of YHWH, first of all to instruct those who have not as yet acquired any knowledge of the subject that throughout YHWH must be maintained to be without blame, by which the world is ruled and governed. Moreover, the reason of the present undertaking, and the occasion offered by those whom the power of YHWH has healed, suggest this subject for a beginning, namely, to show that for good reason very many persons are possessed of demons, that so the justice of YHWH may appear. For ignorance will be found to be the mother of almost all evils. But now let us come to the reason.

State of Innocence a State of Enjoyment

Chapter 219

“When YHWH had made man after His own image and likeness, He grafted into His work a certain breathing and odour of His divine might, that so men, being made partakers of His Only-begotten, might through Him be also haverim of YHWH and sons of adoption. Whence also He Himself, as Y’shua, knowing with what actions the Father is pleased, instructed them in what way they might obtain that privilege. At that time, therefore, there was among men only one worship of YHWH – a pure mind and an uncorrupted spirit. And for this reason, every creature kept an inviolable covenant with the human race. For by reason of their reverence of the Creator, no sickness, or bodily disorder, or corruption of food, had power over them; whence it came to pass, that a life of a thousand years did not fall into the frailty of old age.

Sin the Cause of Suffering

Chapter 220

“But when men, leading a life void of distress, began to think that the continuance of good things was granted them not by the divine bounty, but by the chance of things, and to accept as a debt of nature, not as a gift of YHWH’s goodness, their enjoyment without any exertion of the delights of the divine complaisance—men, being led by these things into contrary and disobedient thoughts, came at last, at the instigation of idleness, to think that the life of elohim was theirs by nature, without any labours or merits on their part. Hence they go from bad to worse, to believe that neither is the world governed by the providence of YHWH, nor is there any place for virtues, since they knew that they themselves possessed the fullness of ease and delights, without the assignment of any works previously, and without any labours were treated as the haverim of YHWH.

Suffering Salutory

Chapter 221

“By the most righteous judgment of YHWH, therefore, labours and afflictions are assigned as a remedy to men languishing in the vanity of such thoughts. And when labour and tribulations came upon them, they were excluded from the place of delights and amenity. Also, the earth began to produce nothing to them without labour; and then men’s thoughts being turned in them, they were warned to seek the aid of their Creator, and by prayers and vows to ask for the divine protection. And thus, it came to pass, that the worship of YHWH, which they had neglected by reason of their prosperity, they recovered through their adversity; and their thoughts towards YHWH, which indulgence had perverted, affliction corrected. So therefore YHWH, seeing that this was more profitable to man, removed from them the ways of benignity and abundance, as being hurtful, and introduced the way of vexation and tribulation.

Translation of Enoch

Chapter 222

“But that He might show that these things were done on account of the ungrateful, He translated to immortality a certain one of the first race of men, because He saw that he was not unmindful of His favour, and because he hoped to call on the name of YHWH; while the rest, who were so ungrateful that they could not be amended and corrected even by labours and tribulations, were condemned to a terrible death. Yet amongst them also He found a certain one, who was righteous with his house, whom He preserved, having enjoined him to build the tayvah, in which he and those who were commanded to go with him might escape, when all things should be destroyed by a deluge: in order that, the immoral being cut off by the overflow of waters, the world might receive a purification; and he who had been preserved for the continuance of the race, being purified by water, might anew repair the world.

Origin of Idolatry

Chapter 223

“But when all these things were done, men turned again to impiety; and on this account Torah was given by YHWH to instruct them in the manner of living. But in process of time, the worship of YHWH and righteousness were corrupted by the unbelieving and the immoral, as we will show more fully by and by. Moreover, perverse and erratic religions were introduced, to which the greater part of men gave themselves up, by occasion of holidays and solemnities, instituting drinking and banquets, following pipes, and flutes, and harps, and diverse kinds of musical

instruments, and indulging themselves in all kinds of drunkenness and luxury. Hence every kind of error took rise; hence they invented groves and altars, flesh and victims, and after drunkenness they were agitated as if with mad emotions. By this means power was given to the demons to enter into minds of this sort, so that they seemed to lead insane dances and to rave like Bacchanalians; hence were invented the gnashing of teeth, and bellowing from the depth of their bowels; hence a terrible countenance and a fierce aspect in men, so that he whom drunkenness had subverted and a demon had instigated, was believed by the deceived and the erring to be filled with the Deity.

YHWH Both Good and Righteous

Chapter 224

“Hence, since so many false and erratic religions have been introduced into the world, we have been sent, as good merchants, bringing unto you the worship of the true YHWH, handed down from the fathers, and preserved; as the seeds of which we scatter these words amongst you, and place it in your choice to choose what seems to you to be right. For if you receive those things that we bring you, you will not only be able yourselves to escape the incursions of the demon, but also to drive them away from others; and at the same time you will obtain the rewards of ageless good things. But those who will refuse to receive those things that are spoken by us will be subject in the present life to diverse demons and disorders of sicknesses, and their spirits after their departure from the body will be tormented forever. For YHWH is not only good, but also just; for if He were always good, and never just to render to everyone according to his deeds, goodness would be found to be injustice. For it were injustice if the disobedient and the obedient were treated by Him alike.

How Demons Get Power over Men

Chapter 225

“Therefore demons, as we have just said, when once they have been able, by means of opportunities afforded them, to convey themselves through base and evil actions into the bodies of men, if they remain in them a long time through their own negligence, because they do not seek after what is profitable to their inner-beings, they necessarily compel them for the future to fulfil the desires of the demons who dwell in them. But what is worst of all, at the end of the age, when that demon will be consigned to ageless fire, of necessity the spirit also that obeyed him, will with him be tortured in ageless fires, together with its body that it has polluted.

Why They Wish to Possess Men

Chapter 226

“Now that the demons are desirous of occupying the bodies of men, this is the reason. They are spirits bearing their purpose turned to immorality. Therefore by immoderate eating and drinking, and lust, they urge men on to sin, but only those who entertain the purpose of sinning, who, while they seem simply desirous of satisfying the necessary cravings of nature, give opportunity to the demons to enter into them, because through excess they do not maintain moderation. For as long as the measure of nature is kept, and legitimate moderation is preserved, the mercy of YHWH does not give them liberty to enter into men. But when either the mind falls into impiety, or the body is filled with immoderate meat or drink, then, as if invited by the will and purpose of those who thus neglect themselves, they receive power as against those who have broken Torah imposed by YHWH.

The Besorah Gives Power over Demons

Chapter 227

“You see, then, how important is the acknowledgment of YHWH, and the observance of the divine obedience, which not only protects those who believe from the assaults of the demon, but also gives them command over those who rule over others. And therefore, it is necessary for you, who are of the Goyim, to betake yourselves to YHWH, and to keep yourselves from all uncleanness, that the demons may be expelled, and YHWH may dwell in you. And at the same time, by prayers, commit yourselves to YHWH, and call for His aid against the impudence of the demons; for ‘whatever things you ask, believing, you will receive.’ But even the demons themselves, in proportion as they see faith grow in a man, in that proportion they depart from him, residing only in that part in which something of infidelity still remains; but from those who believe with full faith, they depart without any delay. For when a spirit has come to the faith of YHWH, it obtains the virtue of heavenly water, by which it extinguishes the demon like a spark of fire.

This Power in Proportion to Faith

Chapter 228

“There is therefore a measure of faith, which, if it be perfect, drives the demon perfectly from the inner being; but if it has any defect, something on the part of the demon still remains in the portion of infidelity; and it is the greatest difficulty for the inner being to understand when or how, whether fully or less fully, the demon has been expelled from it. For if he remains in any quarter, when he gets an opportunity, he suggests thoughts to men’s hearts; and they, not knowing whence they come, believe the suggestions of the demons, as if they were the perceptions of their own

spirits. Thus, they suggest to some to follow pleasure by occasion of bodily necessity; they excuse the passions of others by excess of gall; they colour over the madness of others by the vehemence of melancholia; and even extenuate the folly of some as the result of abundance of phlegm. But even if this were so, still none of these could be hurtful to the body, except from the excess of meats and drinks; because, when these are taken in excessive quantities, their abundance, which the natural warmth is not sufficient to digest, curdles into a sort of poison, and it, flowing through the bowels and all the veins like a common sewer, renders the motions of the body unhealthy and base. Therefore, moderation is to be attained in all things, that neither may place be given to demons, nor the spirit, being possessed by them, be delivered along with them to be tormented in ageless fires.

Demons Incite to Idolatry

Chapter 229

“There is also another error of the demons, which they suggest to the senses of men, that they should think that those things that they suffer, they suffer from such as are called elohim, in order that thereby, offering zebahim and gifts, as if to propitiate them, they may strengthen the worship of false religion, and avoid us who are interested in their salvation, that they may be freed from error; but this they do, as I have said, not knowing that these things are suggested to them by demons, for fear they should be saved. It is therefore in the power of every one, since man has been made possessed of free-will, whether he will hear us to life, or the demons to destruction. Also, to some, the demons, appearing visibly under various figures, sometimes throw out threats, sometimes promise relief from sufferings, that they may instil into those whom they deceive the opinion of their being elohim, and that it may not be known that they are demons. But they are not concealed from us, who know the mysteries of the creation, and for what reason it is permitted to the demons to do those things in the present world; how it is allowed them to transform themselves into what figures they please, and to suggest evil thoughts, and to convey themselves, by means of meats and of drink consecrated to them, into the minds or bodies of those who partake of it, and to concoct vain dreams to further the worship of some idol.

Folly of Idolatry

Chapter 230

“And yet who can be found so senseless as to be persuaded to worship an idol, whether it is made of gold or of any other metal? To whom is it not manifest that the metal is just that which the artificer pleased? How then can the Almighty be thought to be in that which would not be at all unless the artificer had pleased? Or how can they hope that future things should be declared to them by that in which there is no

perception of present things? For although they should divine something, they should not straightway be held to be elohim; for divination is one thing – divinity is another. For the Pythons also seem to ‘see,’ yet they are not elohim; and, in short, they are driven out of men by the Notzrim. And how can that be the same elohim that is put to flight by a man? But maybe you will say, what as to their effecting cures, and their showing how one can be cured? On this principle, medical doctors ought also to be worshipped as elohim, for they cure many; and in proportion as any one is more skilful, the more he will cure.

Heathen Oracles

Chapter 231

“Whence it is evident that they, since they are demoniac spirits, know some things both more quickly and more perfectly *than men*; for they are not retarded in their learning by the heaviness of a body. And therefore they, as being spirits, know without delay and without difficulty what medical doctors attain after a long time and by much labour. It is not wonderful, therefore, if they know somewhat more than men do; but this is to be observed, that what they know they do not employ for the salvation of inner-beings, but for the deception of them, that by means of it they may indoctrinate them in the worship of false religion. But YHWH, that the error of so great deception might not be concealed, and that He Himself might not seem to be a cause of error in permitting them so great license to deceive men by divinations, and cures, and dreams, has of His mercy furnished men with a remedy, and has made the distinction of falsehood and truth patent to those who desire to know. This, therefore, is that distinction: what is spoken by the True Eloha, whether by naviim or by diverse visions, is always true; but what is foretold by demons is not always true. It is therefore an evident sign that those things are not spoken by the True Eloha, in which at any time there is falsehood; for in truth there is never falsehood. But in the case of those who speak falsehoods, there may occasionally be a slight mixture of truth, to give as it were seasoning to the falsehoods.

Why They Sometimes Come True

Chapter 232

“But if any one says, ‘What is the use of this, that they should be permitted even sometimes to speak truth and thereby so much error be introduced amongst men?’ Let him take this for answer: If they had never been allowed to speak any truth, then they would not foretell anything at all; while if they did not foretell, they would not be known to be demons. But if demons were not known to be in this world, the cause of our struggle and contest would be concealed from us, and we should suffer openly what was done in secret, that is, if the power were granted to them of only acting against us, and not of speaking. But now, since they sometimes speak truth, and

sometimes falsehood, we ought to acknowledge, as I have said, that their responses are of demons, and not of YHWH, with whom there is never falsehood.

Evil Not in Substance

Chapter 233

“But if any one, proceeding more curiously, inquires: ‘What then was the use of YHWH's making these evil things, which should have so great a tendency to subvert the minds of men?’ To one proposing such a question, we answer that we must first of all inquire whether there is any evil in substance. And although it would be sufficient to say to him that it is not suitable that the creature judge the Creator, but that to judge the work of another belongs to him who is either of equal skill or equal power; yet, to come directly to the point, we say absolutely that there is no evil in substance. But if this be so, then the Creator of substance is vainly blamed.

Why YHWH Permits Evil

Chapter 234

“But you will meet me by saying, ‘Even if it has come to this through freedom of will, was the Creator ignorant that those whom He created would fall away into evil? He ought therefore not to have created those who, He foresaw, would deviate from the path of righteousness.’ Now we tell those who ask such questions, that the purpose of assertions of the sort made by us is to show why the immorality of those who as yet were not, did not prevail over the goodness of the Creator. For if, wishing to fill up the number and measure of His creation, He had been afraid of the immorality of those who were to be, and like one who could find no other way of remedy and cure, except only this, that He should refrain from His purpose of creating, lest the immorality of those who were to be should be ascribed to Him; what else would this show but unworthy suffering and unseemly feebleness on the part of the Creator, who should so fear the acting of those who as yet were not, that He refrained from His purposed creation?

Evil Beings Turned to Good Account

Chapter 235

“But, setting aside these things, let us consider this earnestly, that YHWH the Creator of the universe, foreseeing the future differences of His creation, foresaw and provided diverse ranks and different offices to each of His creatures, according to the peculiar movements that were produced from freedom of will; so that while all men are of one substance in respect of the method of creation, there should yet be diversity in ranks and offices, according to the peculiar movements of minds, to be

produced from liberty of will. Therefore, He foresaw that there would be faults in His creatures; and the method of His justice demanded that punishment should follow faults, for the sake of amendment. It behoved, therefore, that there should be ministers of punishment, and yet that freedom of will should draw them into that order. Moreover, those also must have enemies to conquer, who had undertaken the contests for the heavenly rewards. Thus, therefore, neither are those things destitute of utility that are thought to be evil, since the conquered unwillingly acquire ageless rewards for those by whom they are conquered. But let this suffice on these points, for in process of time even more secret things will be disclosed.

Evil Malachim Seducers

Chapter 236

“Now therefore, since you do not yet understand how great darkness of ignorance surrounds you, meantime I wish to explain to you whence the worship of idols began in this world. And by idols, I mean those lifeless images that you worship, whether made of wood, or earthenware, or stone, or brass, or any other metals: of these the beginning was in this wise. Certain malachim, having left the course of their proper order, began to favour the vices of men, and in some measure to lend unworthy aid to their lust, in order that by these means they might indulge their own pleasures the more; and then, that they might not seem to be inclined of their own accord to unworthy services, taught men that demons could, by certain arts-that is, by magical invocations-be made to obey men; and so, as from a furnace and workshop of immorality, they filled the whole world with the smoke of impiety, the light of piety being withdrawn.

Ham the First Magician

Chapter 237

“For these and some other causes, a flood was brought upon the world, as we have said already, and will say again; and all who were upon the earth were destroyed, except the family of Noach, who survived, with his three sons and their wives. One of these, by name Ham, ingloriously discovered the magical act, and handed down the instruction of it to one of his sons, who was called Mitzraim, from whom the race of the Mitsrayim and Babylonians and Persians are descended. Him the tribes who then existed called Zoroaster, admiring him as the first author of the magic art; trader whose name also many scrolls on this subject exist. He therefore, being much and frequently intent upon the stars, and wishing to be esteemed a god among them, began to draw forth, as it were, certain sparks from the stars, and to show them to men, in order that the rude and ignorant might be astonished, as with a miracle; and desiring to increase this estimation of him, he attempted these things again and

again, until he was set on fire, and consumed by the demon himself, whom he accosted with too great importunity.

Tower of Babel

Chapter 238

“But the foolish men who were then, whereas they ought to have abandoned the opinion that they had conceived of him, inasmuch as they had seen it confuted by his mortal punishment, extolled him the more. For raising a sepulchre to his honour, they went so far as to adore him as a friend of YHWH, and one who had been removed to the sky in a chariot of lightning, and to worship him as if he were a living star. Hence also his name was called Zoroaster after his death, that is, *living star*, by those who, after one generation, had been taught to speak the Greek language. In fine, by this example, even now many worship those who have been struck with lightning, honouring them with sepulchres, and worshipping them as haverim of Elohim. But this man was born in the fourteenth generation, and died in the fifteenth, in which the tower was built, and the languages of men were divided into many.

Fire-Worship of the Persians

Chapter 239

“First among them was named a certain melek Nimrod, the magic art having been handed down to him as by a burst, whom the Greeks also called Ninus, and from whom the city of Nineveh took its name. Thus, therefore, diverse and erratic superstitions took their beginning from the magic art. For, because it was difficult to draw away the human race from the love of YHWH, and attach them to deaf and lifeless images, the magicians made use of higher efforts, that men might be turned to erratic worship, by signs among the stars, and motions brought down as it were from the sky, and by the will of YHWH. And those who had been first deceived, collecting the ashes of Zoroaster—who, as we have said, was burnt up by the indignation of the demon, to whom he had been too troublesome—brought them to the Persians, that they might be preserved by them with perpetual watching, as divine fire fallen from the sky, and might be worshipped as a heavenly elohim.

Hero-Worship

Chapter 240

“By a like example, other men in other places built Hekelim, set up statues, instituted mysteries and ceremonies and zebahim, to those whom they had admired, either for some arts or for virtue, or at least had held in very great affection; and rejoiced, by means of all things belonging to elohim, to hand down their fame to posterity; and

that especially, because, as we have already said, they santed to be supported by some fantasies of magic art, so that by invocation of demons something seemed to be done and moved by them towards the deception of men. To these they add also certain solemnities, and drunken banquets, in which men might with all freedom indulge; and demons, conveyed into them in the chariot of bloating, might be mixed with their very bowels, and holding a place there, might bind the acts and thoughts of men to their own will. Such errors, then, having been introduced from the beginning, and having been aided by lust and drunkenness, in which carnal men chiefly delight, the obedience of Elohim, which consisted in continence and sobriety, began to become rare amongst men, and to be well-nigh abolished.

Idolatry Led to All Immorality

Chapter 241

“For whereas at first, men worshipping a righteous and all-seeing YHWH, neither dared sin nor do injury to their neighbours, being persuaded that YHWH sees the actions and movements of every one; when religious worship was directed to lifeless images, concerning that they were certain that they were incapable of hearing, or sight, or motion, they began to sin licentiously, and to go forward to every crime, because they had no fear of suffering anything at the hands of those whom they worshipped as elohim. Hence the madness of wars burst out; hence plundering’s, rapines, captivities, and liberty reduced to slavery; each one, as he could, satisfied his lust and his covetousness, although no power can satisfy covetousness. For, as fire, the more fuel it gets, the more extensively it is kindled and strengthened, so also the madness of covetousness is made greater and more vehement by means of those things that it acquires.

Invitation

Chapter 242

“So begin now with better understanding to resist yourselves in those things that you do not rightly desire; if so be that you can in any way repair and restore in yourselves that purity of obedience and innocence of life that at first were bestowed upon man by YHWH, that thereby also the hope of immortal blessings may be restored to you. And give thanks to the bountiful Father of all, by Him whom He has constituted King of shalom, and the treasury of unspeakable honours, that even at the present time your sins may be washed away with the water of the fountain, or river, or even sea: the threefold name of blessedness being called over you, that by it not only evil spirits may be driven out, if any dwell in you, but also that, when you have forsaken your sins, and have with entire faith and entire purity of mind believed in YHWH, you may drive out immoral spirits and demons from others also, and may be able to set others free from sufferings and sicknesses. For the demons themselves know and

acknowledge those who have given themselves up to YHWH, and sometimes they are driven out by the mere presence of such, as you saw a little while ago, how, when we had only addressed to you the word of salutation, straightway the demons, on account of their respect for our obedience, began to cry out, and could not bear our presence even for a little.

The Weakest Yahwist More Powerful Than the Strongest Demon

Chapter 243

“Is it, then, that we are of another and a superior nature, and that therefore the demons are afraid of us? Nay, we are of one and the same nature with you, but we differ in obedience. But if you will also be *like us*, we do not grudge it, but rather we exhort you, and wish you to be assured, that when the same faith and obedience and innocence of life will be in you that is in us, you will have equal and the same power and virtue against demons, through YHWH rewarding your faith. For as he who has soldiers under him, although he may be inferior, and they superior to him in strength, yet ‘says to this one, Go, and he goes; and to another, Come, and he comes; and to another, Do this, and he does it; ‘and this he is able to do, not by his own power, but by the fear of Caesar; so every faithful one commands the demons, although they seem to be much stronger than men, and that not by means of his own power, but by means of the power of YHWH, who has put them in subjection. For even that which we have just spoken of, that Caesar is held in awe by all soldiers, and in every camp, and in his whole kingdom, though he is but one man, and maybe feeble in respect of bodily strength, this is not effected but by the power of YHWH, who inspires all with fear, that they may be subject to one.

Temptation of Moshiach

Chapter 244

“This we would have you know assuredly, that a demon has no power against a man, unless one voluntarily submits himself to his desires. Whence even that one who is the prince of immorality, approached Him who, as we have said, is appointed of YHWH King of shalom, tempting Him, and began to promise Him all the kavod of the world; because he knew that when he had offered this to others, for the sake of deceiving them, they had worshipped him. Therefore, disobedient as he was, and unmindful of himself, which indeed is the special peculiarity of immorality, he presumed that he should be worshipped by Him by whom he knew that he was to be destroyed. Therefore, our Master, confirming the worship of one YHWH, answered him: ‘It is written, “You will worship YHWH your Elohim, and Him only will you serve.’” And he, terrified by this answer, and fearing lest the true obedience of the

one and true YHWH should be restored, hastened straightway to send forth into this world false naviim, and false shlichim, and false morim, who should speak indeed in the name of Moshiach, but should accomplish the will of the demon.

False Shlichim

Chapter 245

“So, observe the greatest caution, that you believe no teacher, unless he brings from Yahrushalayim the testimonial of Ya’akov Y’shua’s brother, or of whosoever may come after him. For no one, unless he has gone up thither, and there has been approved as a fit and faithful teacher for preaching the word of Moshiach—unless, I say, he brings a testimonial thence, is by any means to be received. But let neither navi nor sholiach be looked for by you at this time, besides us. For there is one Navi Emet, whose words we twelve shlichim preach; for He is the accepted year of YHWH, having us shlichim as His twelve months. But for what reason the world itself was made, or what diversities have occurred in it, and why our Master, coming for its restoration, has chosen and sent us twelve shlichim, will be explained more at length at another time. Meantime He has commanded us to go forth to preach, and to invite you to the supper of the heavenly King, which the Father has prepared for the marriage of His Son, and that we should give you wedding garments, that is, the favor of mikvah; which whosoever obtains, as a spotless robe with which he is to enter to the supper of the King, ought to beware that it be not in any part of it stained with sin, and so he be rejected as unworthy and reprobate.

The Garments Unspotted

Chapter 246

“But the ways in which this garment may be spotted are these: If any one withdraw from YHWH the Father and Creator of all, receiving another teacher besides Moshiach, who alone is the faithful and Navi Emet, and who has sent us twelve shlichim to preach the word; if anyone think otherwise than worthily of the substance of YHWH, which excels all things. These are the things that even fatally pollute the armor of mikvah. But the things that pollute it in actions are these: murders, adulteries, hatreds, avarice, and evil ambition. And the things that pollute at once the spirit and the body are these: to partake of the table of demons, that is, to taste things sacrificed, or blood, or a carcass that is strangled, and if there be aught else that has been offered to demons. Be this therefore the first step to you of three; which step brings forth thirty commands, and the second sixty, and the third a hundred, as we will expound more fully to you at another time.”

The Qahal Dismissed

Chapter 247

When he had thus spoken, and had charged them to come to the same place in good time on the following day, he dismissed the crowds; and when they were unwilling to depart, Kefa said to them: "Do me this favour on account of the fatigue of yesterday's journey; and now go away, and meet in good time tomorrow." And so they departed with joy. But Kefa, commanding me to withdraw a little for the purpose of prayer, afterwards ordered the couches to be spread in the part of the garden that was covered with shade; and every one, according to custom, recognizing the place of his own rank, we took food. Then, as there was still some portion of the day left, he conversed with us concerning YHWH's miracles; and when evening was come, he entered his bedroom and went to sleep.

Book 5

Kefa's Salutation

Chapter 248

But on the following day, Kefa, rising a little earlier than usual, found us asleep; and when he saw it, he gave orders that silence should be kept for him, as though he himself wished to sleep longer, that we might not be disturbed in our rest. But when we rose refreshed with sleep, we found him, having finished his prayer, waiting for us in his bedchamber. And as it was already dawn, he addressed us shortly, saluting us according to his custom, and forthwith proceeded to the usual place for the purpose of teaching; and when he saw that many had assembled there, having invoked shalom upon them according to his usual manner, he began to speak as follows:

Suffering the Effect of Sin

Chapter 249

"Elohim, the Creator of all, at the beginning made man after His own image, and gave him dominion over the earth and sea, and over the air; as the Navi Emet has told us, and as the very reason of things instructs us. For man alone is rational, and it is fitting that reason should rule over the irrational. At first, therefore, while he was still righteous, he was superior to all disorders and all frailty; but when he sinned, as we taught you yesterday, and became the servant of sin, he became at the same time liable to frailty. This therefore is written, that men may know that, as by disobedience they have been made liable to suffer, so by obedience they may be made free from suffering; and not only free from suffering, but by even a little belief in Elohim be able to cure the sufferings of others. For thus the Navi Emet promised

us, saying, 'Amen I say to you, that if you have faith as a grain of mustard seed, you will say to this mountain, 'Remove hence,' and it will remove.' Of this saving you have yourselves also had proofs; for you saw yesterday how at our presence the demons removed and were put to flight, with those sufferings that they had brought upon men.

Faith and Unbelief

Chapter 250

"Whereas therefore some men suffer and others cure those who suffer, it is necessary to know the cause at once of the suffering and the cure. And this is proved to be nothing else than unbelief on the part of the sufferers, and belief on the part of those who cure them. For unbelief, while it does not believe that there is to be a judgment by Elohim, affords license to sin, and sin makes men liable to sufferings; but faith, believing that there is to be a judgment of Elohim, restrains men from sin; and those who do not sin are not only free from demons and sufferings, but can also put to flight the demons and sufferings of others.

Ignorance the Mother of Evils

Chapter 251

"From all these things, therefore, it is concluded that all evil springs from ignorance; and ignorance herself, the mother of all evils, is sprung from carelessness and sloth, and is nourished, and increased, and rooted in the senses of men by negligence; and if any one teach that she is to be put to flight, she is with difficulty and indignantly torn away, as from an ancient and hereditary abode. And therefore we must labor for a little, that we may search out the presumptions of ignorance, and cut them off by means of knowledge, especially in those who are preoccupied with some erroneous opinions, by means of which ignorance is the more firmly rooted in them, as under the appearance of a certain kind of knowledge; for nothing is worse than for one to believe that he knows what he is ignorant of, and to maintain that to be true that is false. This is as if a drunken man should think himself to be sober, and should act indeed in all respects as a *drunken* man, and yet think himself to be sober, and should wish to be called so by others. Thus, therefore, are those also who do not know what is true, yet hold some appearance of knowledge, and do many evil things as if they were good, and hasten destruction as if it were to salvation.

Advantages of Knowledge

Chapter 252

“So, we must, above all things, hasten to the knowledge of the truth, that, as with a light kindled thereat, we may be able to dispel the darkness of errors! For ignorance, as we have said, is a great evil; but because it has no substance, it is easily dispelled by those who are in earnest. For ignorance is nothing else than not knowing what is good for us; once know this, and ignorance perishes. Therefore the knowledge of truth ought to be eagerly sought after; and no one can confer it except the Navi Emet. For this is the gate of life to those who will enter, and the road of good works to those going to the city of salvation.

Free Will

Chapter 253

“Whether any one, truly hearing the word of the Navi Emet Y’shua is willing or unwilling to receive it, and to embrace His burden, that is, the precepts of life, he has either in his power, for we are free in will. For if it were so, that those who hear had it not in their power to do otherwise than as they had heard, there were some power of nature in virtue of which it was not free to him to pass over to another opinion. Or if, again, no one of the hearers could at all receive it, this also were a power of nature that should compel the doing of some one thing, and should leave no place for the other course. But now, since it is free for the mind to turn its judgment to which side it pleases, and to choose the way that it approves, it is clearly obvious that there is in men a liberty of choice.

Responsibility of Knowledge

Chapter 254

“Therefore, before any one hears what is good for him, it is certain that he is ignorant; and being ignorant, he wishes and desires to do what is not good for him; therefore, he is not judged for that. But when once he has heard the causes of his error, and has received the method of truth, then, if he remain in those errors with which he had been long ago preoccupied, he will rightly be called into judgment to suffer punishment, because he has spent in the sport of errors that portion of life that was given him to be spent in living well. But he who, hearing those things, willingly receives them, and is thankful that the teaching of good things has been brought to him, inquires more eagerly, and does not cease to learn, until he ascertains whether there be truly another world, in which rewards are prepared for the good, and when he is assured of this, he gives thanks to YHWH because He has shown him the light of truth; and for the future directs his actions in all good works, for which he is assured that there is a reward prepared in the world to come; while he constantly

wonders and is astonished at the errors of other men, and that no one sees the truth that is placed before his eyes. Yet he himself, rejoicing in the riches of wisdom that he has found, desires insatiably to enjoy them, and is delighted with the practice of good works; hastening to attain, with a clean heart and a pure conscience, the world to come, when he will be able even to see Elohim, the Melek of all.

Desires of the Flesh to Be Subdued

Chapter 255

“But the sole cause of our wanting and being deprived of all these things is ignorance. For while men do not know how much good there is in knowledge, they do not suffer the evil of ignorance to be removed from them; for they know not how great a difference is involved in the change of one of these things for the other. So, I counsel every learner willingly to lend his ear to the word of YHWH and to hear with love of the truth what we say, that his mind, receiving the best seed, may bring forth joyful fruits by good deeds. For if, while I teach the things that pertain to salvation, any one refuses to receive them, and strives to resist them with a mind occupied by evil opinions, he will have the cause of his perishing, not from us, but from himself. For it is his duty to examine with just judgment the things that we say, and to understand that we speak the words of truth, that, knowing how things are, and directing his life in good actions, he may be found a partaker of the Malkuth Shamayim, subjecting to himself the desires of the flesh, and becoming Master of them, that so at length he himself also may become the pleasant possession of the Ruler of all.

The Two Kingdoms

Chapter 256

“For he who persists in evil and is the servant of evil cannot be made a portion of good so long as he persists in evil, because from the beginning, as we have said, Elohim instituted two tribes and has given to each man the power of becoming a portion of that malkuth to which he will yield himself to obey. And since it is decreed by Elohim that no one man can be a servant of both kingdoms, therefore endeavour with all earnestness to commit yourselves to the covenant and Torah of the good King. So also the Navi Emet, when He was present with us and saw some rich men negligent with respect to the worship of Elohim, thus unfolded the truth of this matter: ‘No one,’ said He, ‘can serve two masters; ye cannot serve Elohim and mammon’; calling riches, in the language of His country, *mammon*.

Y'shua haNavi Emet

Chapter 257

“He therefore is the Navi Emet who appeared to us, as you have heard, in Judaea, who, standing in public places, by a simple command made the blind see, the deaf hear, cast out demons, restored health to the sick and life to the dead; and since nothing was impossible to Him, He even perceived the thoughts of men, which is possible for none but Elohim only. He proclaimed the Malkuth of Elohim; and we believed Him as a Navi Emet in all that He spoke, deriving the confirmation of our faith not only from His words, but also from His works; and also because the sayings of the Torah, which many generations before had set forth His coming, were fulfilled in Him; and the figures of the doings of Moshe, and of the patriarch Ya'akov before him, bore in all respects a type of Him. It is evident also that the time of His advent, that is, the very time at which He came, was foretold by them; and, above all, it was contained in the sacred writings, that He was to be waited for by the Goyim. And all these things were equally fulfilled in Him.

The Expectation of the Goyim

Chapter 258

“But He whom a navi of the Yahudaïm foretold, that He was to be waited for by the Goyim, confirms above measure the truth of faith in Him. For if he had said that He was to be waited for by the Yahudaïm, he would not have seemed to prophesy anything extraordinary, that He whose coming had been promised for the salvation of the world should be the object of hope to the people of the same tribe with Himself, and to His own tribe: for that this would take place would seem rather to be a matter of natural inference than one requiring the grandeur of a prophetic utterance. But now, whereas the naviïm say that all that hope that is set forth concerning the salvation of the world, and the newness of the malkuth that is to be established by Moshiach, and all things that are declared concerning Him are to be transferred to the Goyim; the grandeur of the prophetic office is confirmed, not according to the sequence of things, but by an incredible fulfillment of the prophecy. For the Yahudaïm from the beginning had understood by a most certain tradition that this man should at some time come, by whom all things should be restored; and daily meditating and looking out for His coming, when they saw Him amongst them and accomplishing the signs and miracles, as had been written of Him, being blinded with envy, they could not recognize Him when present, in the hope of whom they rejoiced while He was absent; yet the few of us who were chosen by Him understood it.

Call of the Goyim

Chapter 259

“But this was all accomplished by YHWH’s providence, that the knowledge of this good One should be handed over to the Goyim, and those who had never heard of Him, nor had learned from the naviim, should acknowledge Him, while those who had acknowledged Him in their daily meditations should not know Him. For, behold, by you who are now present, who desire to hear the doctrine of His faith and to know what, and how, and of what sort is His coming, the prophetic truth is fulfilled. For this is what the naviim foretold, that He is to be sought for by you who never heard of Him. And, therefore, seeing that the prophetic sayings are fulfilled even in yourselves, you rightly believe in Him alone, you rightly wait for Him, you rightly inquire concerning Him, that you not only may wait for Him, but also believing, you may obtain the inheritance of His kingdom; according to what He Himself said, that everyone is made the servant of him to whom he yields subjection.

Invitation of the Goyim

Chapter 260

“So awake, and take to yourselves our Master and Elohim, even that Master who is YHWH both of sky and land, and conform yourselves to His image and likeness, as the Navi ‘Emet Himself teaches, saying, ‘You all be merciful, as also your heavenly Father is merciful, who makes His sun to rise upon the good and the evil, and rains upon the just and the unjust.’ Imitate Him, therefore, and fear Him, as the commandment is given to men, ‘You will worship YHWH your Elohim, and Him only will you serve.’ For it is profitable to you to serve this Master alone, that through Him knowing the one Elohim ye may be freed from the many whom ye vainly feared. For he who fears not Elohim the Creator of all, but fears those whom he himself with his own hands has made, what does he do but make himself subject to a vain and senseless fear, and render himself more vile and abject than those very things, the fear of which he has conceived in his mind? But rather, by the goodness of Him who invites you, return to your former nobleness and by good deeds show that you bear the image of your Creator, that by contemplation of His likeness ye may be believed to be even His sons.

Idols Unprofitable

Chapter 261

“Begin, therefore, to cast out of your minds the vain ideas of idols, and your useless and empty fears, that at the same time you may also escape the condition of unrighteous bondage. For those have become your masters who could not even have been profitable servants to you. For how should lifeless images seem fit even

to serve you, when they can neither hear, nor see, nor feel anything? Yea, even the material of which they are made, whether it be gold or silver, or even brass or wood, though it might have profited you for necessary uses, you have rendered wholly inefficient and useless by fashioning elohim out of it. We therefore declare to you the true worship of Elohim, and at the same time warn and exhort the worshippers that by good deeds they imitate Him whom they worship, and hasten to return to His image and likeness, as we said before.

Folly of Idolatry

Chapter 262

“But I should like if those who worship idols would tell me if they wish to become like those whom they worship! Does any one of you wish to see in such sort as they see, or to hear after the manner of their hearing, or to have such understanding as they have? Far be this from any of my hearers! For this were rather to be thought a curse and a reproach to a man who bears in himself the image of Elohim, although he has lost the likeness. What sort of elohim, then, are they to be reckoned, the imitation of whom would be disgusting to their worshippers, and to have whose likeness would be a reproach? What then? Melt your useless images, and make useful vessels. Melt the unserviceable and inactive metal, and make implements fit for the use of men. But, says one, human laws do not allow us. He says well; for it is human laws, and not their own power, that prevents it. What kind of elohim, then, are those that are defended by human laws, and not by their own energies? And so also, they are preserved from thieves by watchdogs and the protection of bolts, at least if they be of silver, or gold, or even of brass; for those that are of stone and earthenware are protected by their own worthlessness, for no one will steal stone or crockery elohim. Hence those seem to be the more miserable whose more precious metal exposes them to the greater danger. Since, then, they can be stolen, since they must be guarded by men, since they can be melted, and weighed out, and forged with hammers, ought men possessed of understanding to hold them as elohim?

YHWH Alone a Fit Object of Worship

Chapter 263

“O, into what wretched plight the imagination of men has fallen! For if it is reckoned the greatest folly to fear the dead, what will we judge of those who fear something that is worse than the dead are? For those images are not even to be reckoned among the number of the dead, because they were never alive. Even the sepulchers of the dead are preferable to them, since, although they are now dead, yet they once had life; but those whom you worship never possessed even such base life as is in all, the life of frogs and owls. But why say more about them, since it is enough to say

to him who adores them: 'Do you not see that he whom you adore sees not, hear that he whom you adore hears not, and understand that he understands not? For he is the work of man's hand and necessarily is void of understanding. You therefore worship an elohim without sense, whereas everyone who has sense believes that not even those things are to be worshipped that have been made by the true Elohim and have sense, such as the sun, moon, and stars, and all things that are in the sky and upon earth. For they think it reasonable that not those things that have been made for the service of the world, but the Creator of those things themselves, and of the whole world, should be worshipped. For even these things rejoice when He is adored and worshipped, and do not take it well that the honour of the Creator should be bestowed on the creation. For the worship of Elohim alone is acceptable who alone is uncreated, and all things also are His creation. For as it belongs to him who alone is uncreated to be YHWH, so everything that has been created is not truly elohim

Suggestions of the Old Serpent

Chapter 264

"Above all, therefore, you ought to understand the deception of the old serpent and his cunning suggestions, who deceives you as it were by prudence, and as by a sort of reason creeps through your senses; and beginning at the head, he glides through your inner marrow, accounting the deceiving of you a great gain. Therefore, he insinuates into your mind's opinions of elohim of whatsoever kinds, only that he may withdraw you from the faith of YHWH Elohim, knowing that your sin is his comfort. For he, for his immorality, was condemned from the beginning to eat dust, for that he caused to be again resolved into dust him who had been taken from the dust, even till the time when your beings will be restored, being brought through the fire; as we will instruct you more fully at another time. From him, therefore, proceed all the errors and doubts, by which you are driven from the faith and belief of one elohim.

His First Suggestion

Chapter 265

"And first of all, he suggests to men's thoughts not to hear the words of truth, by which they might put to flight the ignorance of those things that are evils. And this he does, as by the presentation of another knowledge, making a show of that opinion that very many hold, to think that they will not be held guilty if they have been in ignorance, and that they will not be called to account for what they have not heard; and thereby he persuades them to turn aside from hearing the word. But I tell you, in opposition to this, that ignorance is in itself a most deadly poison, which is sufficient to ruin the spirit without any aid from without. And therefore, there is no one who is ignorant who will escape through his ignorance, but it is certain that he will perish.

For the power of sin naturally destroys the sinner. But since the judgment will be according to reason, the cause and origin of ignorance will be inquired into, as well as of every sin. For he who is unwilling to know how he may attain to life, and prefers to be in ignorance lest he thereby be made guilty, from this very fact is judged as if he knew and had knowledge. For he knew what it was that he was unwilling to hear; and the cunning obtained by the artifice of the serpent will avail him nothing for an excuse, for he will have to do with Him to whom the heart is open. But that you may know that ignorance of itself brings destruction, *I assure you that* when the spirit departs from the body, if it leave it in ignorance of Him by whom it was created, and from whom in this world it obtained all things that were necessary for its uses, it is driven forth from the light of His malkuth as ungrateful and unfaithful.

His Second Suggestion

Chapter 266

“Again, the immoral serpent suggests another opinion to men, that many of you are in the habit of bringing forward, that there is, as we say, one Elohim, who is Master of all; but these also, they say, are elohim. ‘For as there is one Caesar, and he has under him many shoftim—for example, prefects, consuls, tribunes, and other officers—in like manner we think, that while there is one elohim greater than all, yet still that these elohim are ordained in this world, after the likeness of those officers of whom we have spoken, subject indeed to that greater elohim, yet ruling us and the things that are in this world.’ In answer to this, I will show you how, in those very things that you propose for deception, you are confuted by the reasons of truth. You say ‘that elohim occupies the place of Caesar, and that those who are called elohim represent his judges and officers.’ Hold then, as you have adduced it, by the example of Caesar; and know that, as one of Caesar’s judges or administrators, as prefects, proconsuls, generals, or tribunes, may lawfully take the name of Caesar—or else both he who should take it and those who should confer it should be destroyed together—so also in this case you ought to observe, that if any one give the name of Elohim to any but YHWH Himself, and he accept it, they will partake one and the same destruction, by a much more terrible fate than the servants of Caesar. For he who offends against Caesar will undergo corporal destruction; but he who offends against Him who is the sole and true Elohim, will suffer ageless punishment, and that deservedly, as having injured by a wrongful condition the name that is unique.

Idolatry of Mitsrayim

Chapter 267

“Although this word *Elohim* is not the *name* of Elohim, but meantime that word is employed by men as His Name; therefore, as I have said, when it is used reproachfully, the reproach is referred to the injury of the true Name. In short, the ancient Mitsrayim, who thought that they had discovered the theory of the heavenly revolutions and the nature of the stars, nevertheless, through the demon’s blocking up their senses, subjected the true Name, YHWH, to all kinds of indignity. For some taught that their ox, which is called Apis, ought to be worshipped; others taught that the he goat, others that cats, the ibis, a fish also, a serpent, onions, drains, and the breaking of wind, ought to be regarded as deities, and innumerable other things, which I am ashamed even to mention.”

Idolatry of Mitsrayim More Reasonable Than Others

Chapter 268

When Kefa was speaking thus, all we who heard him laughed. Then said Kefa: “You laugh at the absurdities of others because through long custom you do not see your own; for indeed it is not without reason that you laugh at the folly of the Mitsrayim, who worship dumb animals, while they themselves are rational. But I will tell you how they also laugh at you; for they say, ‘We worship living animals, though mortal; but you worship and adore things that never were alive at all.’ They add this also, that they are figures and allegories of certain powers by whose help the race of men is governed. Taking refuge in this for shame, they fabricate these and similar excuses, and so endeavour to screen their error. But this is not the time to answer the Mitsrayim, and leaving the care of those who are present to heal the disease of the absent. For it is a certain indication that you are held to be free from sickness of this sort, since you do not grieve over it as your own, but laugh at it as that of others.

Second Suggestion Continued

Chapter 269

“But let us come back to you, whose opinion it is that YHWH should be regarded as Caesar, and the false elohim as if they were the ministers and deputies of Caesar. Follow me attentively, and I will presently show you the lurking-places of the serpent, which lie in the crooked windings of this argument. It ought to be regarded by all as certain and beyond doubt that no creature can be on a level with Elohim, because He was made by none, but He made all things; nor indeed can anyone be found so

irrational as to suppose that the thing made can be compared with the maker. If therefore the human mind, not only by reason, but even by a sort of natural instinct, rightly holds this opinion, then how can it be supposed that that which is called elohim, to which nothing can be compared or equalled, but that exceeds all and excels all—how can it be supposed that that Name that is above all is rightly given to those false elohim whom you think to be employed for the service and comfort of human life? But we will add this also. This world was undoubtedly made and is corruptible, as we will show more fully as we go along. In the meantime, it is admitted both that it has been made and that it is corruptible. If therefore the world cannot be called elohim, and rightly so, because it is corruptible, how will parts of the world take the name of elohim? For inasmuch as the whole world cannot be elohim, much more its parts cannot. Therefore, if we come back to the example of Caesar, you will see how far you are in error. It is not lawful for any one, though a man of the same nature with him, to be compared with Caesar. Do you think, then, that any one ought to be compared with Elohim, who excels all in this respect, which He was made by none, but He Himself made all things? But, indeed, you dare not give the name of Caesar to any other, because he immediately punishes one who offends against him. Yet you dare give that of Elohim to others, because He delays the punishment of offenders against Him, in order to give them time for their repentance.

Third Suggestion

Chapter 270

“Through the mouths of others also that serpent is prone to speak in this manner: ‘We adore visible images in honour of the invisible elohim.’ Now this is most certainly false. For if you really wished to worship the image of elohim, you would do good to man, and so worship the true image of Elohim in him. For the image of Elohim is in every man, though His likeness is not in all, but where the spirit is benign and the mind pure. If, therefore, you wish truly to honour the image of Elohim, we declare to you what is true, that you should do good to and pay honour and reverence to man, who is made in the image of Elohim; that you minister food to the hungry, drink to the thirsty, clothing to the naked, hospitality to the stranger, and necessary things to the prisoner; and that is what will be regarded as truly bestowed upon Elohim. And so far, do these things go to the honour of Elohim’s image that he who does not do these things is regarded as casting reproach upon YHWH’s image. What, then, is that honour of Elohim that consists in running from one stone or wooden figure to another, in venerating empty and lifeless figures as deities, and despising men in whom the image of Elohim is of a truth? Yea, rather be assured, that whoever commits murder or adultery or anything that causes suffering or injury to men, in all these the image of Elohim is violated. For to injure men is a great offense towards Elohim. Whenever, therefore, you do to another what you would not have another do to you, you defile the image of Elohim with undeserved distresses. Understand,

therefore, that that is the suggestion of the serpent lurking within you, who persuades you that you may seem to be obedient when you worship insensible things, and may not seem disobedient when you injure sensible and rational beings.

Fourth Suggestion

Chapter 271

271:1 “But to these things the serpent answers us with another mouth, and says: ‘If *YHWH* did not wish these things to be, then they should not be.’ I am not telling you how it is that many contrary things are permitted to be in this world for the probation of every one’s mind. But this is what is suitable to be said in the meantime: If, according to you, everything that was to be worshipped ought not to have been, there would have been almost nothing in this world. For what is there that you have left without worshipping it?

271:2 The sun, the moon, the stars, the water, the earth, mountains, trees, stones, men; there is no one of these that ye have not worshipped. According to your saying; therefore, none of these ought to have been made by *Elohim*, that you might not have anything that you could worship! Yea, He ought not even to have made men themselves to be the worshippers! But this is the very thing that the serpent that lurks within you desires, for he spares none of you! He would have no one of you escape from destruction! But it will not be so. For I tell you, that not that which is worshipped is at fault, but he who worships. For with *YHWH* is righteous judgment; and He judges in one way the sufferer and in another way the doer of wrong.

Fifth Suggestion

Chapter 272

“But you say: ‘Then those who adore what ought not to be adored should be immediately destroyed by *Elohim*, to prevent others doing the like.’ But are you wiser than *Elohim*, that you should offer Him counsel? He knows what to do. For with all who are placed in ignorance He exercises patience, because He is merciful and gracious; and He foresees that many of the immoral become righteous, and that even some of those who worship impure statues and polluted images have been converted to *Elohim*, and forsaking their sins and doing good works, attain to salvation. But it is said: ‘We ought never to have come even to the thought of doing these things.’ You do not know what freedom of will is, and you forget that he is good who is so by his own intention; but he who is retained in goodness by necessity cannot be called good, because it is not of himself that he is so. Because, therefore, there is in every one liberty to choose good or evil, he either acquires rewards, or brings destruction on himself. Nay it is said, ‘*Elohim* brings to our minds whatsoever we think.’ What do you mean, then? Ye blaspheme. For if He brings all our thoughts into our minds, then it is He that suggests to us thoughts of adultery,

and covetousness, and blasphemy, and every kind of effeminacy. Cease, I entreat of you, these blasphemies, and understand what is the honour worthy of Elohim. And say not, as some of you are likely to say, that '*Elohim* needs not honour from men.' Indeed, He truly is in need of none; but you ought to know that the honour that you bestow upon Elohim is profitable to yourselves. For what is so disgusting as for a man not to render thanks to his Creator?

Sixth Suggestion

Chapter 273

"But it is said: 'We do better who give thanks both to *Himself* and to all with *Him*.' In this you do not understand that there is the ruin of your salvation. For it is as if a sick man should call in for his cure at once a physician and poisoners; since the latter could indeed injure him but not cure him; and the true physician would refuse to mix his remedies with their poisons, lest either the man's destruction should be ascribed to the good, or his recovery to the injurious. But you say: 'Is *Elohim* then indignant or envious, if, when *He* benefits us, our thanks be rendered to others?' Even if He be not indignant, at all events He does not wish to be the author of error, which by means of His work credit should be given to a vain idol. And what is so evil and so ungrateful as to obtain a benefit from Elohim and to render thanks to blocks of wood and stone? So, arise, and understand your salvation. For YHWH is in need of no one, nor does He require anything, nor is He hurt by anything; but we are either helped or hurt in that we are grateful or ungrateful. For what does Elohim gain from our praises, or what does He lose by our blasphemies? Only this we must remember, that Elohim brings into proximity and friendship with Himself the spirit that renders thanks to Him. But the immoral demon possesses the ungrateful spirit.

Creation Takes Vengeance on Sinners

Chapter 274

"But this also I would have you know: that upon such beings Elohim does not take vengeance directly, but His whole creation rises up and inflicts punishments upon the immoral; and although in the present world the goodness of YHWH bestows the light of the world and the services of the earth alike upon the obedient and the disobedient, yet not without grief does the sun afford his light, and the other elements perform their service to the disobedient. And, in short, sometimes—even in opposition to the goodness of the Creator—the elements are wearied by the crimes of the immoral; and from there it is that either the fruit of the earth is blighted or the composition of the air is corrupted, or the heat of the sun is increased beyond measure, or there is an excessive amount of rain or of cold. From there pestilence, famine, and death in various forms stalk forth, for the creation hastens to take vengeance on the immoral; yet the goodness of Elohim restrains it, bridles its

indignation against the immoral, and compels it to be obedient to His mercy rather than to be inflamed by the sins and the crimes of men. For the patience of Elohim waits for the conversion of men as long as they are in this body.

Eternity of Punishments

Chapter 275

“But if any persist in immorality till the end of life, then as soon as the spirit, which is immortal, departs, it will pay the penalty of its persistence in immorality. For even the spirits of the disobedient are immortal, though it is likely they themselves would wish them to end with their bodies. But it is not so; for they endure without end the torments of ageless fire, and to their destruction they have not the quality of mortality. But maybe you will say to me, ‘You terrify us, O Kefa.’ And how will we speak to you the things that are in reality? Can we declare to you the truth by keeping silence? We cannot state the things otherwise than as they are. But if we were silent, we should make ourselves the cause of the ignorance that is ruinous to you and should satisfy the serpent that lurks within you and blocks up your senses, who cunningly suggests these things to you, that he may make you always the enemies of YHWH. But we are sent for this end, that we may betray his disguises to you; and melting your enmities, may reconcile you to Elohim, that you may be converted to Him, and may please Him by good works. For man is at enmity with Elohim and is in an unreasonable and rebellious state of mind and immoral disposition towards Him, especially when he thinks that he knows something, and yet is in ignorance. But when you lay aside these and begin to be pleased and displeased with the same things that please and displease YHWH and to will what YHWH wills—then you will truly be called His haverim.

YHWH’s Care of Human Things

Chapter 276

“But maybe some of you will say, ‘*Elohim* has no care of human things; and if we cannot even attain to the knowledge of *Him*, how will we attain to *His* friendship?’ That Elohim does concern Himself with the affairs of men, His government of the world bears witness: for the sun daily waits upon it, the showers minister to it; the fountains, rivers, winds, and all elements, attend upon it. And the more these things become known to men, the more do they indicate YHWH’s care over men. For unless by the power of the Most High, the more powerful would never minister to the inferior; and by this Elohim is shown to have not only a care over men but some great affection, since He has deputed such noble elements to their service. But that men may also attain to the friendship of Elohim is proved to us by the example of those to whose prayers He has been so favourable that He has withheld the sky from rain when they wished, and has again opened it when they prayed. And many

other things He has bestowed upon those who do His will, which could not be bestowed but upon His haverim. But you will say, 'What harm is done to *Elohim* if these things also are worshipped by us? 'If any one of you should pay to another the honour that is due to his father, from whom he has received innumerable benefits, and should reverence a stranger and foreigner as his father, should you not think that he was undutiful towards his father, and most deserving to be disinherited?

False Religion of Fathers to Be Abandoned

Chapter 277

"Others say, 'It is immoral if we do not worship those *idols* that have come down to us from our fathers, and prove false to the religion bequeathed to us by our ancestors.' On this principle, if any one's father was a robber or a base fellow, he ought not to change the manner of life handed down to him by his fathers, nor to be recalled from his father's errors to a better way; and it is reckoned evil if one does not sin with his parents, or does not persist in evil with them. Others say, 'We ought not to be troublesome to *Elohim* and to be always burdening *Him* with complaints of our miseries or with the exigencies of our petitions.' How foolish and witless an answer! Do you think it is troublesome to *Elohim* if you thank Him for His benefits, while you do not think it troublesome to Him if, for His gifts, you render thanks to stocks and stones? And how comes it, that when rain is withheld in a long drought, we all turn our eyes to the sky, and entreat the gift of rain from YHWH Almighty, and all of us with our little ones pour out prayers on *Elohim* and entreat His compassion? But truly ungrateful beings, when they obtain the blessing, quickly forget: for as soon as they have gathered in their harvest or their vintage, straightway they offer the first fruits to deaf and dumb images, and pay vows in Hekelim or groves for those things that YHWH *Elohim* has bestowed upon them, and then offer zebahim to demons; and having received a favour, deny the Bestower of the favour.

Paganism, Its Enormities

Chapter 278

"But some say, 'These things are instituted for the sake of joy, and for refreshing our minds; and they have been devised for this end, that the human mind may be relaxed for a little from cares and sorrows.' See now what a charge you yourselves bring upon the things that you practice. If these things have been invented for the purpose of lightening sorrow and affording enjoyment, how is it that the invocations of demons are performed in groves and woods? What is the meaning of the insane whirling's, and the slashing of limbs, and the cutting off of members? How is it that mad rage is produced in them? How is insanity produced? How is it that women are driven violently, raging with dishevelled hair? Whence the shrieking and gnashing of teeth? Whence the bellowing of the heart and the bowels, and all those things that,

whether they are pretended or are contrived by the ministration of demons, are exhibited to the terror of the foolish and ignorant? Are these things done for the sake of lightening the mind, or rather for the sake of oppressing it? Do ye not yet perceive nor understand that these are the counsels of the serpent lurking within you, which draws you away from the apprehension of truth by irrational suggestions of errors, that he may hold you as slaves and servants of lust and obscenity and every disgraceful thing?

Obedience to YHWH Calls to Sobriety and Modesty.

Chapter 279

“But I protest to you with the clear voice of preaching, that, on the contrary, obeying YHWH’s Torah calls you to sobriety and modesty; orders you to refrain from effeminacy and madness, and by patience and gentleness to prevent the inroads of anger; to be content with your own possessions, and with the virtue of frugality; not even when driven by poverty to plunder the goods of others, but in all things to observe justice; to withdraw yourselves wholly from the idol zebahim, for by these things you invite demons to you, and of your own accord give them the power of entering into you; and so you admit that which is the cause either of madness or of false love removed from Torah.

Origin of Immorality

Chapter 280

“Hence is the origin of all immorality; hence murders, adulteries, thefts; and a nursery is formed of all evils and immoralities, while you indulge in profane libations and odours, and give to immoral spirits an opportunity of ruling and obtaining some sort of authority over you. For when they invade your senses, what are they doing other than working the things that belong to lust and injustice and cruelty, and compel you to be obedient to all things that are pleasing to them? Elohim, indeed, permits you to suffer this at their hands by a certain righteous judgment, that from the very disgrace of your doings and your feelings you may understand how unworthy it is to be subject to demons and not to Elohim. Hence also, by the friendship of demons, men are brought to disgraceful and base deeds; hence, men proceed even to the destruction of life, either through the fire of lust, or through the madness of anger through excess of grief, so that, as is well known, some have even laid violent hands upon themselves. And this, as we have said, by a just sentence of Elohim they are not prevented from doing, that they may both understand to whom they have yielded themselves in subjection, and know whom they have forsaken.

Who are Worshippers of YHWH?

Chapter 281

“But someone will say, ‘These passions sometimes befall even those who worship *YHWH*.’ It is not true. For we say, that he is a worshipper of Elohim, who does the will of Elohim, and observes the precepts of His Torah. For in Elohim’s estimation he is not a Yahud who is called a Yahud among men (nor is he a Goy that is called a Goy), but he who, believing in Elohim, fulfils His Torah and does His will, though he be not circumcised. He is the true worshipper of Elohim, who not only is himself free from passions, but also sets others free from them; though they are so heavy that they are like mountains, he removes them by means of the faith with which he believes in Elohim. Yea, by faith he truly removes mountains with their trees, if it be necessary. But he who seems to worship Elohim, but is neither fortified by a full faith, nor by obedience to the commandments, but is a sinner, has given a place in himself, by reason of his sins, to passions, which are appointed of Elohim for the punishment of those who sin, that they may exact from them the deserts of their sins by means of punishments inflicted, and may bring them purified to the general judgment of all, provided always that their faith do not fail them in their chastisement. For the chastisement of unbelievers in the present life is a judgment, by which they begin to be separated from future blessings; but the chastisement of those who worship Elohim, while it is inflicted upon them for sins into which they have fallen, exacts from them the due of what they have done, that, before their judgment, they may pay the debt of their sin in the present life, and be freed, at least in half, from the ageless punishments that are there prepared.

Judgment to Come

Chapter 282

“But he does not receive these things as true who does not believe that there is to be a judgment by Elohim, and therefore, being bound by the pleasures of the present life, is shut out from ageless good things; and therefore we do not neglect to proclaim to you what we know to be necessary for your salvation, and to show you what is the true worship of Elohim, that, believing in Elohim, you may be able, by means of good works, to be heirs with us of the world to come. But if you are not yet convinced that what we say is true, meantime, in the first instance, you ought not to take it amiss and to be hostile to us because we announce to you the things that we consider to be good, and because we do not grudge to bestow also upon you that which we believe brings salvation to ourselves, labouring, as I have said, with all eagerness, that we may have you as fellow-heirs of the blessings that we believe are to befall ourselves. But whether those things that we declare to you are certainly

true, you will not be able to know otherwise than by rendering obedience to the things that are commanded, that you may be taught by the issue of things, and the most certain end of blessedness.

Conclusion of Discourse

Chapter 283

283:1 “And, therefore, although the serpent lurking within you occupies your senses with a thousand arts of corruption, and throws in your way a thousand obstacles by which he may turn you away from the hearing of saving instruction, all the more ought you to resist him, and despising his suggestions, to come together the more frequently to hear the word and receive instruction from us, because nobody can learn anything who is not taught. “And when he had done speaking, he ordered those to be brought to him who were oppressed by sickness or demons, and laid his hands upon them with prayer; and so he dismissed the crowds, charging them to resort to the hearing of the word during the days that he was to remain there.

283:2 Therefore, when the crowds had departed, Kefa washed his body in the waters that ran through the garden, with as many of the others as chose to do so; and then ordered the couches to be spread on the ground under a very shady tree, and directed us to recline according to the order established at Caesarea. And thus, having taken food and given thanks to Elohim after the manner of the Hebrews, as there was yet some portion of the day remaining, he ordered us to question him on any matters that we pleased. And although we were with him twenty in all, he explained to everyone whatever he pleased to ask of him; the particulars of which I set down in scrolls and sent to you some time ago. And when evening came, we entered with him into the lodging, and went to sleep, each one in his own place.

Book 6

Diligence in Study

Chapter 284

But as soon as day began to advance the dawn upon the retiring darkness, Kefa having gone into the garden to pray, and returning from there and coming to us, by way of excuse for awaking and coming to us a little later than usual, said this: “Now that the springtime has lengthened the day, of course the night is shorter. If, therefore, one desires to occupy some portion of the night in study, he must not keep the same hours for waking at all seasons, but should spend the same length of time in sleeping, whether the night be longer or shorter, and be exceedingly careful that he do not cut off from the period that he habitually keeps for study, and so add to his sleep and lessen his time of keeping awake. And this also is to be observed,

or else, if sleep be interrupted while the food is still undigested, the undigested mass leads the mind, and by the exhalation of crude spirits render the inner sense confused and disturbed. It is right, therefore, that that part also be cherished with sufficient rest, so that, those things being sufficiently accomplished that are due to it, the body may be able in other things to render due service to the mind.”

Much to Be Done in a Little Time

Chapter 285

When he had said this, as very many had already assembled in the accustomed place of the garden to hear him, Kefa went forth; and having saluted the crowds in his usual manner, began to speak as follows: “Since, indeed, as land neglected by the cultivator necessarily produces thorns and thistles, so your sense, by long neglect, has produced a plentiful crop of noxious opinions of things and dogmas of false science; there is need now of much care in cultivating the field of your mind, that the word of truth, which is the true and diligent husbandman of the heart, may cultivate it with continual instructions. It is therefore your part to render obedience to it, and to lop off superfluous occupations and anxieties, lest a noxious growth choke the good seed of the word. For it may be that a short and earnest diligence may repair a long time’s neglect; for the time of every one’s life is uncertain, and therefore we must hasten to salvation, apprehending that sudden death might seize upon him who delays.

Righteous Anger

Chapter 286

“And all the more eagerly must we strive on this account, that while there is time, the collected vices of evil custom may be cut off. And this you will not be able to do otherwise than by being angry with yourselves on account of your profitless and base doings, for this is righteous and necessary anger, by which everyone is indignant with himself and accuses himself for those things in which he has erred and done amiss. And by this indignation a certain fire is kindled in us, which, applied as it were to a barren field, consumes and burns up the roots of vile pleasure, and renders the soil of the heart more fertile for the good seed of the word of YHWH. And I think that you have sufficiently worthy causes of anger from which that most righteous fire may be kindled, if you consider into what errors the evil of ignorance has drawn you and how it has caused you to fall and rush headlong into sin, from what good things it has withdrawn you, and into what evils it has driven you, and, what is of more importance than all the rest, how it has made you liable to ageless punishments in the world to come. Is not the fire of most righteous indignation kindled within you for all these things, now that the light of truth has shone upon you; and does not the flame of that anger that is pleasing to Elohim rise within you, that

every sprout may be burnt up and destroyed from the root, if any shoot of evil concupiscence has budded within you?

Not Shalom, But a Sword

Chapter 287

Hence, also, He who has sent us, when He had come, and had seen that all the world had fallen into immorality, did not forthwith give shalom to him who is in error, lest He should confirm him in evil; but set the knowledge of truth in opposition to the ruins of ignorance of it, that, if men would repent and look upon the light of truth, they might rightly grieve that they all been deceived and drawn away into the precipices of error, and might kindle the fire of salutary anger against the ignorance that had deceived them. On this account, therefore, He said, 'I have come to send fire on the earth; and how I wish that it were kindled!' There is therefore a certain fight, which is to be fought by us in this life; for the word of truth and knowledge necessarily separates men from error and ignorance, as we have often seen putrefied and dead flesh in the body separated by the cutting knife from its connection with the living members. Such is the effect produced by knowledge of the truth. For it is necessary that, for the sake of salvation, the son, for example, who has received the word of truth, be separated from his unbelieving parents; or again, that the father be separated from his son, or the daughter from her mother. And in this manner the battle of knowledge and ignorance, of truth and error, arises between believing and unbelieving kinsmen and relations. And therefore, He who has sent us said again 'I am not come to send shalom on earth, but a sword.'

How the Fight Begins

Chapter 289

"But if anyone say, 'How does it seem right for men to be separated from their parents?' I will tell you how. Because, if they remained with them in error, they would do no good to them, and they would themselves perish with them. It is therefore right, and very right, that he who will be saved be separated from him who will not. But observe this also, that this separation does not come from those who understand aright; for they wish to be with their relatives, to do them good, and to teach them better things. But it is the vice peculiar to ignorance that it will not bear to have near it the light of truth, which confutes it; and therefore, that separation originates with them. For those who receive the knowledge of the truth, because it is full of goodness, desire, if it be possible, to share it with all, as given by YHWH; yea, even with those who hate and persecute them: for they know that ignorance is the cause of their sin. So, in short, the Master Himself, when He was being led to the stake by those who knew Him not, prayed to the Father for His murderers, and said, 'Father, forgive their sin, for they know not what they do!' The talmidim also, in

imitation of the Master, even when they were suffering, in like manner prayed for their murderers. But if we are taught to pray even for our murderers and persecutors, how ought we not to bear the persecutions of parents and relations, and to pray for their conversion?

YHWH to Be Loved More than Parents

Chapter 290

“Then let us consider carefully, in the next place, what reason we have for loving our parents. For this cause, it is said, we love them, because they seem to be the authors of our life. But our parents are not authors of our life, but means of it. For they do not bestow life, but afford the means of our entering into this life; while the one and sole author of life is YHWH. If, therefore we would love the Author of our life, let us know that it is He that is to be loved. But then it is said, ‘We cannot know *Him*; but them we know, and hold in affection.’ Be it so: you cannot know *what* Elohim is, but you can very easily know what Elohim is *not*. For how can any man fail to know that wood, or stone, or brass, or other such matter, is not Elohim? But if you will not give your mind to consider the things that you might easily apprehend, it is certain that you are hindered in the knowledge of Elohim, not by impossibility, but by indolence; for if you had wished it, even from these useless images you might have been set on the way of understanding.

The Earth Made for Men

Chapter 291

“For it is certain that these images are made with iron tools; but iron is wrought by fire, which fire is extinguished by water. But water is moved by spirit; and spirit has its beginning from YHWH. For thus says the navi Moshe: ‘In the beginning Elohim made the skies and the earth. But the earth was invisible, and unarranged; and darkness was over the deep: and the Ruach of Elohim was upon the waters,’ which Ruach, like the Creator’s hand, by command of Elohim separated light from darkness; and after that invisible sky produced this visible one, that He might make the higher places a habitation for malachim and the lower for men. For your sake, therefore, by command of Elohim, the water that was upon the face of the earth withdrew, that the earth might produce fruits for you; and into the earth also He inserted veins of moisture, that fountains and rivers might flow forth from it for you. For your sake it was commanded to bring forth living creatures and all things that could serve for your use and pleasure. Is it not for you that the winds blow, that the earth, conceiving by them, may bring forth fruits? Is it not for you that the showers fall, and the seasons change? Is it not for you that the sun rises and sets and the moon undergoes her changes? For you the sea offers its service that all things may

be subject to you, ungrateful as you are. For all these things will there not be a righteous punishment of vengeance, because beyond all else you are ignorant of the Bestower of all these things, whom you ought to acknowledge and reverence above all?

Necessity of Mikvah (Immersion)

Chapter 292

“But now I lead you to understanding by the same paths. For you see that all things are produced from waters. But water was made at first by the Only-begotten; and the Almighty Elohim is the head of the Only-begotten, by whom we come to the Father in such order as we have stated above. But when you have come to the Father you will learn that this is His will: that you be born anew by means of waters, which were the first created. For he who is regenerated by water, having filled up the measure of good works, is made heir of Him by whom he has been regenerated in incorruption. So, with prepared minds, approach as sons to a father, that your sins may be washed away, and it may be proven before Elohim that ignorance was their sole cause. For if, after the learning of these things, you remain in unbelief, the cause of your destruction will be imputed to yourselves, and not to ignorance. And do you suppose that you can have hope towards Elohim, even if you cultivate all obedience and all righteousness, but do not receive mikvah? Yea rather, he will be worthy or greater punishment, who does good works not well; for merit accrues to men from good works, but only if they be done as Elohim commands. Now Elohim has ordered everyone who worships Him to be sealed by mikvah; but if you refuse and obey your own will rather than YHWH’s, you are doubtless contrary and hostile to His will.

Use of Mikvah

Chapter 293

“But maybe you will say, ‘What does the mikvah in water contribute towards the worship of *Elohim*?’ In the first place, because that which has pleased Elohim is fulfilled. In the second place, because, when you are regenerated and born again of water and of Elohim, the frailty of your former birth, which you have through men, is cut off, and so at length you will be able to attain salvation; but otherwise it is impossible. For thus has the Navi Emet testified to us with an oath: ‘Amen I say to you, that unless a man is born again of water and of the Ruach, he will not enter into the Malkuth Shamayim.’ Therefore make haste; for there is in these waters a certain power of mercy that was borne upon them at the beginning, and acknowledges those who are immersed under the name of the Master Y’shua, and rescues them from future punishments, presenting as a gift to Elohim the spirits that are set-apart

by mikvah. Commit yourselves therefore to these waters, for they alone can quench the violence of the future fire; and he who delays to approach to them, it is evident that the idol of unbelief remains in him, and by it he is prevented from hastening to the waters that confer salvation. For whether you be righteous or unrighteous, mikvah is necessary for you in every respect: for the righteous, that perfection may be accomplished in him, and he may be born again to Elohim; for the unrighteous, that pardon may be guaranteed him for the sins that he has committed in ignorance. Therefore, all should hasten to be born again to Elohim without delay, because the end of every one's life is uncertain.

Necessity of Good Works

Chapter 294

“But when you have been regenerated by the waters of the mikvah, you must show by good works the likeness in you of that Father who has begotten you. Now that you know YHWH, honour Him as a father; and His honour is that you live according to His will. And His will is, that you so live as to know nothing of murder or adultery, to flee from hatred and covetousness, to put away anger, pride, and boasting, to abhor envy, and to count all such things entirely unsuitable to you. There is truly a certain peculiar observance of our way of life, which is not so much imposed upon men as it is sought out by every worshipper of Elohim by reason of its purity. By reason of chastity, I say, of which there are many kinds, but first, that everyone be careful that he ‘come not near a menstruous woman’; for this the Torah of Elohim regards as detestable. But though the Torah had given no admonition concerning these things, should we willingly, like beetles, roll ourselves in filth? For we ought to have something more than the animals, as reasonable men and capable of heavenly senses, whose chief study it ought to be to guard the conscience from every defilement of the heart.

Inward and Outward Cleansing

Chapter 295

“Moreover, it is good, and tends to purity also, to wash the body with water. I call it good, not as if it were that prime good of the purifying of the mind, but because this of the washing of the body is the sequel of that good. For so also our Master rebuked some of the Prushim (Pharisees) and Sophrim (scribes), who seemed to be better than others, separated from the people, calling them hypocrites, because they purified only those things that were seen of men, but left defiled and sordid their hearts, which YHWH alone sees. To some therefore of them—not to all—He said, ‘Woe to you, Sophrim and Prushim, hypocrites, because ye cleanse the outside of the cup and platter, but the inside is full of pollution! O blind Prushim, first make clean what is within, and what is without will be clean also.’ For truly, if the mind be

purified by the light of knowledge, when once it is clean and clear then it necessarily takes care of that which is on the outside of a man, that is, his flesh, that it also may be purified. But when that which is on the outside, the cleansing of the flesh, is neglected, it is certain that there is no care taken of the purity of the mind and the cleanness of the heart. Thus, therefore it comes to pass that he who is clean inwardly is without doubt cleansed outwardly also, but not always that he who is clean outwardly is also cleansed inwardly—to wit, when he does these things only that he may please men.

Importance of Chastity

Chapter 296

“But this kind of chastity is also to be observed, that sexual intercourse must not take place heedlessly and for the sake of mere pleasure, but for the sake of begetting children. And since this observance is found even amongst some of the lower animals, it would be a shame if it be not observed by men, reasonable and worshipping YHWH. But there is this further reason why chastity should be observed by those who hold the trite worship of Elohim, in those forms of it of which we have spoken, and others of like sort, that it is observed strictly even amongst those who are still held by the devil in error, for even amongst them there is in some degree the observance of chastity. What then? Will you not observe, now that you are reformed, what you observed when you were in error?”

Superiority of Moshiach’s Morality

Chapter 297

“But maybe some one of you will say, ‘Must we then observe all things that we did while we worshipped idols?’ Not all. But whatever things were done well, these you ought to observe even now; because, if anything is rightly done by those who are in error, it is certain that that is derived from the truth; whereas, if anything is not rightly done in the true obedience, that is, without doubt, borrowed from error. For good is good, though it be done by those who are in error; and evil is evil, though it be done by those who follow the truth. Or will we be so foolish, that if we see a worshipper of idols to be sober, we will refuse to be sober, lest we should seem to do the same things as he does who worships idols? It is not so. But let this be our study, that if those who err do not commit murder, we should not even be angry; if they do not commit adultery, we should not even covet another’s wife; if they love their neighbours, we should love even our enemies; if they lend to those who have the means of paying, we should give to those from whom we do not hope to receive anything. And in all things, we who hope for the inheritance of the ageless world ought to excel those who know only the present world; knowing that if their works, when compared with our works, be found like and equal in the day of judgment,

there will be confusion to us, because we are found equal in our works to those who are condemned on account of ignorance and had no hope of the world to come.

Knowledge Enhances Responsibility

Chapter 298

“And truly confusion is our worthy portion, if we have done no more than those who are inferior to us in knowledge. But if it be confusion to us to be found merely equal to them in works, what will become of us if the examination that is to take place find us inferior and worse than they are? Hear, therefore, how our Navi Emet has taught us concerning these things; for, with respect to those who neglect to hear the words of wisdom, He speaks thus: ‘The queen of the south will rise in judgment with this generation, and will condemn it, because she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Shlomo; and, behold, a greater than Shlomo is here, and they hear Him not.’” But with respect to those who refused to repent of their evil deeds, He spoke thus: ‘The men of Nineveh will rise in the judgment with this generation, and will condemn it; for they repented at the preaching of Yonah; and, behold, a greater than Yonah is here.’ You see, therefore, how He condemned those who were instructed out of the Torah, by adducing the example of those who came from Goyim ignorance, and showing that the former was not even equal to those who seemed to live in error. From all these things, then, the statement that He propounded is proven, that chastity, which is observed to a certain extent even by those who live in error, should be held much more purely and strictly, in all its forms, as we have already shown, by us who follow the truth; and the rather because with us ageless rewards are assigned to its observance.”

Mevaqqrim, Zaqenim, Azariim, and Widows Appointed

Chapter 299

When he had said these things and others to the same effect, he dismissed the crowds; and having, according to his custom, supped with his haverim, he went to sleep. And while in this manner he was teaching the word of YHWH for three whole months, and converting multitudes to the faith, at the last he ordered me to fast; and after the fast he conferred on me the mikvah of ever-flowing water, in the fountains adjoining the sea. And when, for the favour of regeneration divinely conferred upon me, we had joyfully kept holiday with our brothers, Kefa ordered those who had been appointed to go before him, to proceed to Antioch, and there to wait three months more. And they having gone, he himself led down to the fountains, which, I have said, are near the sea, those who had fully received the faith of YHWH, and immersed them; and celebrating the Passover with them, he appointed, as Mevaqqre over them, Maro, who had entertained him in his house, and who was now perfect in all things; and with him he appointed twelve zaqenim and attendants

at the same time. He also instituted the order of widows, and arranged all the services of the qahal; and charged them all to obey Maro their Mevaqqre in all things that he should command them. And thus, all things being suitably arranged, when the three months were fulfilled, we bade farewell to those who were at Tripolis, and set out for Antioch.

Book 7

Journey from Tripolis

Chapter 300

At length leaving Tripolis, a city of Phoinike, we made our first halt at Ortosias, not far from Tripolis; and there we remained the next day also, because almost all those that had believed in the Master Y'shua, unable to part from Kefa, followed him thus far. From there we came to Antharadus. But because there were many in our company, Kefa said to Niceta and Aquila: "As there are immense crowds of brothers with us, and we bring upon ourselves no little envy as we enter into every city, it seems to me that we must take means, without doing so unpleasing a thing as to prevent their following us, to secure that the immoral one will not stir up envy against us on account of any display! I wish, therefore, that you, Niceta and Aquila, would go before us with them, so that you may lead the multitude divided into two sections, that we may enter every city of the Goyim traveling apart, rather than in one assemblage.

Talmidim Divided into Two Bands

Chapter 301

"But I know that you think it sad to be separated from me for the space of at least two days. Believe me, that in whatever degree you love me, my word to you is tenfold greater. But if, by reason of our mutual affection, we will not do the things that are right and honourable, such love will appear to be unreasonable. And therefore, without reducing in the least our love, let us attend to those things that seem useful and necessary; especially since not a day can pass in which you may not be present at my discussions. For I purpose to pass through the most noted cities of the provinces one by one, as you also know, and to reside three months in each for the sake of teaching. Now, therefore, go before me to Laodike, which is the nearest city, and I will follow you after two or three days, so far as I purpose. But you will wait for me at the inn nearest to the gate of the city; and from there again, when we have spent a few days there, you will go before me to more distant cities. And this I wish you to do at every city, for the sake of avoiding envy as much as in us lies, and also that the brothers who are with us, finding lodgings prepared in the several cities by your foresight, may not seem to be vagabonds."

Order of March

Chapter 302

When Kefa thus spoke, they of course acquiesced, saying: "It does not greatly sadden us to do this, because we are ordered by you, who have been chosen by the foresight of Moshiach to do and to counsel well in all things; but also because, while

it is a heavy loss not to see our master Kefa for one, or it may be two days, yet it is not intolerable. And we think of our twelve brothers who go before us, and who are deprived of the advantage of hearing and seeing you for a whole month out of the three that you stay in every city. Therefore, we will not delay doing as you order, because you order all things right." And thus saying, they went forward, having received instructions that they should speak to the brothers who journeyed with them outside the city, and request them not to enter the cities in a crowd and with tumult, but apart, and divided.

Clement's Joy at Remaining with Kefa

Chapter 303

But when they were gone, I Clement rejoiced greatly because he had kept me with himself, and I said to him: "I give thanks to Elohim that you have not sent me forward with the others, for I should have died through sadness." Then said Kefa: "And what will the result be if necessity will demand that you be sent anywhere for the purpose of teaching? Would you die if you were separated from me for a good purpose? Would you not put a restraint upon yourself, to bear patiently what necessity has laid upon you? Or do you not know that haverim are always together, and are joined in memory, though they be separated bodily; as, on the other hand, some persons are near to one another in body, but are separate in mind?"

Clement's Affection for Kefa

Chapter 304

Then I answered: "Think not, my Master, that I suffer these things unreasonably; but there is a certain cause and reason of this affection of mine towards you. For I have you alone as the object of all my affections, instead of father and mother, and brothers; but above all this, is the fact that you alone are the cause of my salvation and knowledge of the truth. And also this I do not count of least moment, that my youthful age is subject to the snares of lusts; and I am afraid to be without you, by whose sole presence all effeminacy, however irrational it be, is put to shame; although I trust, by the mercy of Elohim, that even my mind, from what it has conceived through your instruction, will be unable to receive aught else into its thoughts. Besides, I remember your saying at Caesarea, 'If any one wishes to accompany me without violating dutifulness, let him accompany me.' And by this you meant that he should not make any one sad, to whom he ought according to YHWH's appointment to cleave; for example, that he should not leave a faithful wife, or parents, or the like. Now from these I am entirely free, and so I am fit for following you; and I wish you would grant me that I might perform to you the service of a servant."

Kefa's Simplicity of Life

Chapter 305

Then Kefa, laughing, said: "And do you not think, Clement, that very necessity must make you my servant? For who else can spread my sheets, and arrange my beautiful coverlets? Who will be at hand to keep my rings, and prepare my robes, which I must be constantly changing? Who will superintend my cooks, and provide various and choice meats to be prepared by most complicated and various art; and all those things that are procured at enormous expense, and are brought together for men of delicate upbringing, yea rather, for their appetite, as for some enormous beast? But maybe, although you live with me, you do not know my manner of life. I live on bread alone, with olives, and seldom even with pot-herbs; and my dress is what you see, a tunic with a tallit: and having these, I require nothing more. This is sufficient for me, because my mind does not regard things present, but things ageless, and therefore no present and visible thing delights me. Whence I embrace and admire indeed your good mind towards me; and I commend you the more, because, though you have been accustomed to so great abundance, you have been able so soon to abandon it and to accommodate yourself to this life of ours, which makes use of necessary things alone. For we—that is, I and my brother Adamyah—have grown up from our childhood not only orphans, but also extremely poor, and through necessity have become used to labour, whence now also we easily bear the fatigues of our journeyings. But rather, if you would consent and allow it, I, who am a working man, could more easily discharge the duty of a servant to you."

Kefa's Humility

Chapter 306

But I trembled when I heard this, and my tears immediately gushed forth, because so great a man, who is worth more than the whole world, had addressed such a proposal to me. Then he, when he saw me weeping, inquired the reason; and I answered him: "How have I so sinned against you, that you should distress me with such a proposal?" Then Kefa: "If it is evil that I said I should serve you, you were first in fault in saying the same thing to me." Then said I: "The cases are not alike: for it becomes me to do this to you; but it is grievous that you, who are sent as the herald of YHWH El Shaddai to save the spirits of men, should say it to me." Then said Kefa: "I should agree with you, were it not that our Master Y'shua, who came for the salvation of the whole world, and who was nobler than any of His creation, submitted to be a servant, that He might persuade us not to be ashamed to perform the ministry of servants to our brothers." Then said I: "It were foolishness in me to

suppose that I can prevail with you; nevertheless, I give thanks to the providence of Elohim, because I have merited to have you instead of parents.”

Clement's Family History

Chapter 307

Then said Kefa: “Is there then no one of your family surviving?” I answered: ‘There are indeed many powerful men, coming of the stock of Caesar; for Caesar himself gave a wife to my father, as being his relative, and educated along with him, and of a suitably noble family. By her my father had twin sons, born before me, not very like one another, as my father told me; for I never knew them. But indeed, I have not a distinct recollection even of my mother; but I cherish the remembrance of her face, as if I had seen it in a dream. My mother's name was Matthidia, my father's Faustinianus; my brothers', Faustinus and Faustus. Now, when I was barely five years old, my mother saw a vision—so I learned from my father—by which she was warned that, unless she speedily fled the city with her twin sons and was absent for ten years, she and her children should perish by a miserable fate.

Disappearance of His Mother and Brothers

Chapter 308

“Then my father, who tenderly loved his sons, put them on board a ship with their mother, and sent them to Athens to be educated, with slaves and maidservants, and a sufficient supply of money; retaining me only to be a comfort to him, and thankful for this, that the vision had not commanded me also to go with my mother. And at the end of a year my father sent men to Athens with money for them, desiring also to know how they did; but those who were sent never returned. Again, in the third year, my sorrowful father sent other men with money, who returned in the fourth year, and related that they had seen neither my mother nor my brothers, that they had never reached Athens, and that no trace had been found of any one of those who had been with them.

Disappearance of His Father

Chapter 309

“My father hearing this, and confounded with excessive sorrow, not knowing whither to go or where to seek, went down with me to the harbour, and began to ask of the sailors whether any of them had seen or heard of the bodies of a mother and two little children being cast ashore anywhere, four years ago. At that time, one told one story and another, but nothing definite was disclosed to us searching in this boundless sea. Yet my father, by reason of the great affection that he bore to his

wife and children, was fed with vain hopes, until he thought of placing me under guardians and leaving me at Rome, as I was now twelve years old, and himself going in quest of them. Therefore, he went down to the harbour weeping, and going on board a ship, took his departure; and from that time till now I have never received any letters from him, nor do I know whether he is alive or dead. But I rather suspect that he also has perished, either through a broken heart or by shipwreck; for twenty years have now elapsed since then, and no tidings of him have ever reached me.”

Different Effects of Suffering on Heathens and Believers

Chapter 310

Kefa, hearing this, shed tears of sympathy, and said to his haverim who were present: “If any man who is a worshipper of Elohim had endured what this man’s father has endured, immediately men would assign his belief as the cause of his calamities; but when these things come upon miserable Goyim, they charge their misfortunes upon fate. I call them miserable, because they are both vexed with errors here, and are deprived of future hope; whereas, when the worshippers of YHWH suffer these things, their patient endurance of them contributes to their cleansing from sin.”

Excursion to Aradus

Chapter 311

After this, one of those present began to ask Kefa that early next day we should go to a neighbouring island called Aradus, which was not more than six furlongs three-fourths of a mile off, to see a certain wonderful work that was in it; namely, Vinewood columns of immense size. To this Kefa assented, as he was very kind. But he charged us that, when we left the ship, we should not rush all together to see it. “For,” said he, “I do not wish you to be noticed by the crowd.” When therefore, next day, we reached the island by ship in the course of an hour forthwith we hastened to the place where the wonderful columns were. They were placed in a certain Hekel, in which there were very magnificent works of Phidias, on which every one of us gazed earnestly.

The Beggar Woman

Chapter 312

But when Kefa had admired only the columns, being no wise ravished with the favor of the painting, he went out, and saw before the gates a poor woman asking alms of those who went in; and looking earnestly at her, he said: “Tell me, O woman, what member of your body is wanting, that you subject yourself to the indignity of asking

alms, and do not rather gain your bread by laboring with your hands that Elohim has given you." But she, sighing, said: "Would that I had hands that could be moved; but now only the appearance of hands has been preserved, for they are lifeless, and have been rendered feeble and without feeling by my knowing of them." Then Kefa said: "What has been the cause of your inflicting so great an injury upon yourself?" "Want of courage," said she, "and nothing else; for if I had had any bravery in me, I could either have thrown myself from a precipice, or cast myself into the depths of the sea, and so ended my grieves."

The Woman's Grief

Chapter 313

Then Kefa said: "Do you think, O woman, that those who destroy themselves are set free from torments, and not rather that the spirits of those who lay violent hands upon themselves are subjected to greater punishments?" Then said she: "I wish I were sure that spirits live in the infernal regions, for I would gladly embrace the suffering of the penalty of suicide, only that I might see my darling children, if it were but for an hour." Then Kefa: "What thing is it so great, that affects you with so heavy sadness? I should like to know. For if you informed me of the cause, I might be able both to show you clearly, O woman, that spirits do live in the infernal regions; and instead of the precipice or the deep sea, I might give you some remedy, that you may be able to end your life without torment."

The Woman's Account

Chapter 314

Then the woman, hearing this welcome promise, began to say: "It is neither easy of belief, nor do I think it necessary to tell, what is my extraction, or what is my country. It is enough only to explain the cause of my grief, why I have rendered my hands powerless by gnawing them. Being born of noble parents, and having become the wife of a suitably powerful man, I had twin sons, and after them one other. But my husband's brother was vehemently enflamed with illegitimate love towards me; and as I valued chastity above all things, and would neither consent to so great immorality, nor wished to disclose to my husband the baseness of his brother, I considered whether in any way I could escape unpolluted, and yet not set brother against brother, and so bring the whole race of a noble family into disgrace. I made up my mind, therefore, to leave my country with my twins, until the incestuous lust should subside, which the sight of me was fostering and inflaming; and I thought that our other son should remain to comfort his father to some extent.

The Woman's Account Continued

Chapter 315

"Now in order to carry out this plan, I pretended that I had had a dream, in which some deity stood by me in a vision, and told me that I should immediately depart from the city with my twins, and should be absent until he should command me to return; and that, if I did not do so, I should perish with all my children. And so it was done. For as soon as I told the dream to my husband, he was terrified; and sending with me my twin sons, and also slaves and maidservants, and giving me plenty of money, he ordered me to sail to Athens, where I might educate my sons, and that I should stay there until he who commanded me to depart should give me leave to return. While I was sailing along with my sons, I was shipwrecked in the night by the violence of the winds, and, wretch that I am, was driven to this place; and when all had perished, a powerful wave caught me, and cast me upon a rock. And while I sat there with this only hope, that I might be able to find my sons, I did not throw myself into the deep, although then my spirit, disturbed and drunk with grief, had both the courage and the power to do it.

The Woman's Account Continued

Chapter 316

"But then the day dawned, and I with shouting and howling was looking around, if I could even see the corpses of my woeful sons anywhere washed ashore. Some of those who saw me were moved with compassion and searched, first over the sea, and then also along the shores, if they could find either of my children. But when neither of them was anywhere found, the women of the place, taking pity on me, began to comfort me, everyone telling her own grieves, that I might take consolation from the likeness of their calamities to my own. But this saddened me all the more; for my disposition was not such that I could regard the misfortunes of others as comforts to me. And when many desired to receive me hospitably, a certain poor woman who dwells here constrained me to enter into her hut, saying that she had had a husband who was a sailor, and that he had died at sea while a young man, and that, although many afterwards asked her in marriage, she preferred widowhood through love of her husband. 'Therefore,' said she, 'we will share whatever we can gain by the labour of our hands.'

The Woman's Account Continued

Chapter 317

"And, not to detain you with a long and profitless story, I willingly dwelt with her on account of the faithful affection that she retained for her husband. But not long after, my hands (melancholy woman that I was!), long torn with gnawing, became

powerless, and she who had taken me in fell into palsy, and now lies at home in her bed. Also, the affection of those women who had formerly pitied me grew cold. We are both helpless. I, as you see, sit begging; and when I get anything, one meal serves two wretches. Behold, now you have heard enough of my affairs; why do you delay the fulfilment of your promise, to give me a remedy, by which both of us may end our miserable life without torment?"

Kefa's Reflections on Her Account

Chapter 318

While she was speaking, Kefa, being distracted with much thought, stood like one thunder-struck; and I Clement coming up, said: "I have been seeking you everywhere, and now what are we to do?" But he commanded me to go before him to the ship, and there to wait for him; and because he must not be opposed, I did as he commanded me. But he, as he afterwards told me the whole, being struck with a sort of suspicion, asked of the woman her family, and her country, and the names of her sons; "and straightway," he said, "if you tell me these things, I will give you the remedy." But she, like one suffering violence, because she would not confess these things, and yet was desirous of the remedy, feigned one thing after another, saying that she was an Ephesian, and her husband a Sicilian, and giving false names to her sons. Then Kefa, supposing that she had answered truly, said: "Alas! O woman, I thought that some great joy should spring up to us today; for I suspected that you were a certain woman, concerning whom I lately learned certain like things." But she adjured him, saying: "I entreat you to tell me what they are, that I may know if amongst women there be one more accursed than myself."

Kefa's Statement to the Woman

Chapter 319

Then Kefa, incapable of deception, and moved with compassion, began to say: "There is a certain young man among those who follow me for the sake of belief and obedience, a Roman citizen, who told me that he had a father and twin brothers, of whom not one is left to him. 'My mother,' he said, 'as I learned from my father, saw a vision, that she should depart from the Roman city for a time with her twin sons, else they should perish by a dreadful death; and when she had departed, she was nevermore seen.' And afterwards his father set out to search for his wife and sons, and was also lost."

A Discovery

Chapter 320

When Kefa had thus spoken, the woman, struck with astonishment, fainted. Then Kefa began to hold her up, and to comfort her, and to ask what the matter was, or what she suffered. But she at length, with difficulty recovering her breath, and nerving herself up to the greatness of the joy that she hoped for, and at the same time wiping her face, said: "Is he here, the youth of whom you speak?" But Kefa, when he understood the matter, said: "Tell me first, or else you will not see him." Then she said: "I am the mother of the youth." Then says Kefa: "What is his name?" And she answered: "Clement." Then said Kefa: "It is himself; and he it was that spoke with me a little while ago, and whom I ordered to go before me to the ship." Then she fell down at Kefa's feet and began to entreat him that he would hasten to the ship. Then Kefa said: "Yes if you will promise me that you will do as I say." Then she said: "I will do anything; only show me my only son, for I think that in him I will see my twins also." Then Kefa said: "When you have seen him, remain apart for a little time, until we leave the island." "I will do so," she said.

A Joyful Meeting

Chapter 321

Then Kefa, holding her hand, led her to the ship. And when I saw him giving his hand to the woman, I began to laugh; yet, approaching to do him honor, I tried to substitute my hand for his, and to support the woman. But as soon as I touched her hand, she uttered a loud scream, and rushed into my embrace, and began to devour me with a mother's kisses. But I, being ignorant of the whole matter, pushed her off as a mad woman; and at the same time, though with reverence, I was somewhat angry with Kefa.

A Miracle

Chapter 322

But he said: "Cease! What are you doing, O Clement, my son? Do not push away your mother." But I as soon as I heard these words, immediately bathed in tears, fell upon my mother, who had fallen down, and began to kiss her. For as soon as I heard, by degrees I recalled her countenance to my memory; and the longer I gazed, the more familiar it grew to me. Meantime a great multitude assembled, hearing that the woman who used to sit and beg was recognized by her son, who was a good man. And when we wished to sail hastily away from the island, my mother said to me: "My darling son, it is right that I should bid farewell to the woman who took me in; for she is poor, and paralytic, and bedridden." When Kefa and all who were present heard this, they admired the goodness and prudence of the

woman; and immediately Kefa ordered some to go and to bring the woman in her bed as she lay. And when she had been brought, and placed in the midst of the crowd, Kefa said, in the presence of all: "If I am a preacher of truth, for confirming the faith of all those who stand by, that they may know and believe that there is one Elohim, who made the sky and earth, in the name of Y'shua HaMoshiach, His Son, let this woman rise." And as soon as he had said this, she arose whole, and fell down at Kefa's feet; and greeting her friend and acquaintance with kisses asked of her what was the meaning of it all. But she shortly related to her the whole proceeding of the recognition, so that the crowds standing around wondered.

Departure from Aradus

Chapter 323

Then Kefa, so far as he could, and as time permitted, addressed the crowds on the faith of Elohim, and the commandments of Torah; and then added, that if any one wished to know more accurately about these things, he should come to Antioch, "where," said he, "we have resolved to stay three months, and to teach fully the things that pertain to salvation. For if," said he, "men leave their country and their parents for commercial or military purposes, and do not fear to undertake long voyages, why should it be thought burdensome or difficult to leave home for three months for the sake of ageless life?" When he had said these things, and more to the same purpose, I presented a thousand drachmas to the woman who had been so hospitable to my mother, and who had recovered her health by means of Kefa, and in the presence of all committed her to the charge of a certain good man, the chief person in that town, who promised that he would gladly do what we requested of him. I also distributed a little money among some others, and among those women who were said formerly to have comforted my mother in her miseries, to whom I also expressed my thanks. And after this we sailed, along with my mother, to Antharadus.

Journeyings

Chapter 324

And when we had come to our lodging, my mother began to ask of me what had become of my father; and I told her that he had gone to seek her, and never returned. But she, hearing this, only sighed; for her great joy on my account lightened her other sorrows. And the next day she journeyed with us, sitting with Kefa's wife; and we came to Balaneae, where we stayed three days, and then went on to Pathos, and afterwards to Gabala; and so we arrived at Laodike, where Niceta and Aquila met us before the gates, and kissing us, conducted us to a lodging. But Kefa, seeing that it was a large and splendid city, said that it was worthy that we should stay in it ten days, or even longer. Then Niceta and Aquila asked of me who

was this unknown woman; and I answered: "It is my mother, whom YHWH has given back to me by means of Rabbi Kefa."

Recapitulation

Chapter 325

And when I had said this, Kefa began to relate the whole matter to them in order, and said. "When we had come to Aradus, and I had ordered you to go on before us, the same day after you had gone, Clement was led in the course of conversation to tell me of his extraction and his family, and how he had been deprived of his parents, and had had twin brothers older than himself, and that, as his father told him, his mother once saw a vision, by which she was ordered to depart from the city of Rome with her twin sons, else she and they should suddenly perish. And when she had told his father the dream, he, loving his sons with tender affection, and afraid of any evil befalling them, put his wife and sons on board a ship with all necessaries, and sent them to Athens to be educated. Afterwards he sent once and again persons to inquire after them, but nowhere found even a trace of them. At last the father himself went on the search, and until now he is nowhere to be found. When Clement had given me this narrative, there came one to us, asking us to go to the neighbouring island of Aradus, to see Vinewood columns of wonderful size. I consented; and when we came to the place, all the rest went into the interior of the Hekel; but I—for what reason I know not—had no mind to go farther.

Recapitulation Continued

Chapter 326

"But while I was waiting outside for them, I began to notice this woman, and to wonder in what part of her body she was disabled, that she did not seek her living by the labor of her hands, but submitted to the shame of beggary. I therefore asked of her the reason of it. She confessed that she was sprung of a noble race, and was married to a no less noble husband, 'whose brother,' said she, 'being inflamed by illegitimate love towards me, desired to defile his brother's bed. This I abhorred, and yet dared not to tell my husband of so great immorality, lest I should stir up war between the brothers and bring disgrace upon the family, and judged it better to depart from my country with my twin sons, leaving the younger boy to be a comfort to his father. And that this might be done with an honorable appearance, I thought good to feign a dream, and to tell my husband that there stood by me in a vision a certain deity, who told me to set out from the city immediately with my twins, and remain until he should instruct me to return.' She told me that her husband, when he heard this, believed her, and sent her to Athens, with the twin children to be educated there; but that they were driven by a terrible tempest upon that island, where, when the ship had gone to pieces, she was lifted by a wave upon a rock, and

delayed killing herself only for this, ‘until,’ said she, ‘I could embrace at least the dead limbs of my unfortunate sons, and commit them to burial. But when the day dawned, and crowds had assembled, they took pity upon me, and threw a garment over me. But I, miserable, entreated them with many tears, to search if they could find anywhere the bodies of my fallen sons. And I, tearing all my body with my teeth, with wailing and howling cried out constantly, “Wretched woman that I am, where is my Faustus, where my Faustinus?”’

More Recognitions

Chapter 327

And when Kefa said this, Niceta and Aquila suddenly started up, and being astonished, began to be greatly agitated, saying: “O YHWH, You Ruler and Elohim of all, are these things true, or are we in a dream?” Then Kefa said: “Unless we be mad, these things are true.” But they, after a short pause, and wiping their faces, said: “We are Faustinus and Faustus: and even at the first, when you began this narrative, we immediately fell into a suspicion that the matters that you spoke of might truly relate to us; yet again considering that many like things occur in men’s lives, we kept silence, although our hearts were struck by some hope. Therefore, we waited for the end of your story, that, if it were entirely obvious that it related to us, we might then confess it.” And when they had thus spoken, they went in weeping to their mother. And when they found her asleep and wished to embrace her, Kefa prevented them, saying: “Permit me first to prepare your mother’s mind, lest it be by the great and sudden joy she lose her reason and her understanding be disturbed, especially as she is now stupefied with sleep.”

“Nothing Common or Unclean”

Chapter 328

Therefore, when our mother had risen from her sleep, Kefa began to address her, saying: “I wish you to know, O woman, an observance of our Torah. We worship one YHWH who made the world, and we keep His Torah, in which He commands us first of all to worship Him and to reverence His Name, to honour our parents, and to preserve chastity and uprightness. But this also we observe, not to have a common table with Goyim, unless when they believe, and on the reception of the truth are immersed and consecrated by calling on the blessed Name of YHWH Y’shua; and then we eat with them. Otherwise, even if it were a father or a mother, or wife, or sons, or brothers, we cannot have a common table with them. Since, therefore, we do this for the special cause of obedience, let it not seem hard to you that your son cannot eat with you, until you have the same judgment of the faith that he has.”

“Who Can Forbid Water?”

Chapter 329

Then she, when she heard this, said: “And what hinders me to be immersed today? For even before I saw you, I was wholly alienated from those whom they call elohim because they were not able to do anything for me, although I frequently and almost daily sacrificed to them. And as to chastity, what will I say, when neither in former times did pleasures deceive me, nor afterwards did poverty compel me to sin? But I think you know well enough how great was my love of chastity, when I pretended that dream that I might escape the snares of unhallowed love, and that I might go abroad with my twins, and when I left this my son Clement alone to be a comfort to his father. For if two were scarcely enough for me, how much more it would have saddened their father if he had had none at all? For he was wretched through his great affection towards our sons, so that even the authority of the dream could scarcely prevail upon him to give up to me Faustinus and Faustus, the brothers of this Clement, and that himself should be content with Clement alone.”

Too Much Joy

Chapter 330

While she was yet speaking, my brothers could contain themselves no longer, but rushed into their mother’s embrace with many tears and kissed her. But she said: “What is the meaning of this?” Then said Kefa: “Don’t be disturbed, O woman; be firm. These are your sons Faustinus and Faustus, whom you supposed to have perished in the deep. But how they are alive and how they escaped in that horrible night, and how the one of them is called Niceta and the other Aquila, they will be able to explain to you themselves, and we also will hear it along with you.” When Kefa had said this, our mother fainted, being overcome with excess of joy. And after some time, being restored and having come to herself, she said; “I beseech you, darling sons, tell me what has befallen you since that dismal and cruel night.”

“He Brings Them unto Their Desired Haven”

Chapter 331

Then Niceta began to say: “On that night, O mother, when the ship was broken up and we were being tossed upon the sea, supported on a fragment of the wreck, certain men whose way was to rob by sea found us and placed us in their boat, and overcoming the power of the waves by rowing, by various stretches brought us to Caesarea Stratonis. There they starved us, beat us, and terrified us, that we might not disclose the truth. And having changed our names, they sold us to a certain widow, a very honourable woman named Yusta. She, having bought us, treated us as sons, so that she carefully educated us in Greek literature and liberal arts. And

when we grew up, we also attended to philosophic studies, that we might be able to confute the Goyim, by supporting the halakah of YHWH's truth by philosophic disputations.

Another Wreck Prevented

Chapter 332

“But we adhered, for friendship’s sake and boyish companionship, to one Shimon, a magician, who was educated along with us, so that we were almost deceived by him. For there is mentioned in our teachings of a certain Nevi, whose coming was hoped for by all who observe them, through whom immortal and joyful life is promised to be given to those who believe in Him. Now we thought that this Shimon was he. But these things will be explained to you, O mother, at a more convenient season. Meanwhile, when we were almost deceived by Shimon, a certain colleague of our master Kefa, Zacchai by name, warned us that we should not be duped by the magician, but presented us to Kefa on his arrival, that by him we might be taught the things that were sound and perfect. And this we hope will be given to you also, even as YHWH has granted it to us, that we may be able to eat and have a common table with you. Thus, therefore it was, O mother, that you believed that we were drowned in the sea, while we were stolen by pirates.”

Mikvah Must Be Preceded by Fasting

Chapter 333

When Niceta had spoken thus, our mother fell down at Kefa’s feet, entreating and beseeching him that both herself and her hostess might be immersed without delay; “that,” said she, “I may not even for a single day suffer the loss of the company and society of my sons.” In like manner, we her sons also entreated Kefa. But he said: “What! Do you think that I alone am unpitiful, and that I do not wish you to enjoy your mother’s society at meals? But she must fast at least one day first, and so be immersed; and this because I have heard from her a certain declaration, by which her faith has been revealed to me and that has given evidence of her belief. Otherwise she must have been instructed and taught many days before she could have been immersed.”

Desiring the Salvation of Others

Chapter 334

Then said I: “I pray you, my master Kefa, tell us what is that declaration that you say afforded you evidence of her faith?” Then Kefa: “It is her asking that her hostess, whose kindnesses she wishes to requite, may be immersed along with her. Now she

would not ask that this favour be bestowed upon her whom she loves, unless she believed that there is some great blessing in mikvah. Whence, also, I find fault with very many, who, when they are themselves immersed and believe, yet do nothing worthy of faith with those whom they love, such as wives, or children, or friends, whom they do not exhort to that which they themselves have attained, *as they would do* if indeed they believed that ageless life is thereby bestowed. In short, if they see them to be sick or to be subject to any danger bodily, they grieve and mourn, because they are sure that in this destruction threatens them. So, then, if they were sure of this, that the punishment of ageless fire awaits those who do not worship Elohim, when would they cease warning and exhorting? Or, if they refused, how would they not mourn and bewail them, being sure that ageless torments awaited them? Now, therefore, we will send for that woman at once, and see if she loves the faith of our beliefs; and as we find, so will we act. But since your mother has judged so faithfully concerning mikvah, let her fast only one day before mikvah.”

The Sons' Pleading

Chapter 335

But she declared with an oath, in presence of my master Kefa's wife, that from the time she recognized her son, she had been unable to take any food from excess of joy, excepting only that yesterday she drank a cup of water. Kefa's wife also bore witness, saying that it was even so. Then Aquila said: "What, then, hinders her being immersed?" Then Kefa, smiling, said: "But this is not the fast of mikvah, for it was not done in order to attain mikvah." Then Niceta said: "But it may be that Elohim, wishing that our mother, on our recognition, should not be separated even for one day from participation of our table, preordained this fasting. For as in her ignorance she preserved her chastity, that it might profit her in order to the favour of mikvah; so she fasted before she knew the reason of fasting, that it might profit her in order to be immersed, and that immediately, from the beginning of our acquaintance, she might enjoy communion of the table with us."

Kefa Unyielding

Chapter 336

Then said Kefa: "Let not the immoral one prevail against us, taking occasion from a mother's love; but let you, and me with you, fast this day along with her, and tomorrow she will be immersed: for it is not right that the precepts of truth be relaxed and weakened in favour of any person or friendship. Let us not shrink, then, from suffering along with her, for it is a sin to transgress any commandment. But let us teach our bodily senses, which are our outer senses, to be in subjection to our inner senses; and not compel our inner senses, which savour the things that are of

Elohim, to follow the outer senses, which savour the things that are of the flesh. For to this end also YHWH commanded, saying: 'Whosoever will look upon a woman to lust after her has committed adultery with her already in his heart.' And to this He added: 'If thy right eye offends thee, pluck it out, and cast it from thee: for it is profitable for thee that one of thy members perishes, rather than thy whole body is cast into Geh Hinnom fire.' He does not say, *'has offended thee,'* that you should then cast away the cause of sin after you have sinned; but *'if it offend you,'* that is, that before you sin you should cut off the cause of the sin that provokes and irritates you. But let none of you think, brothers, that YHWH recommended the cutting off of the members. His meaning is, that the purpose should be cut off, not the members, and the causes that allure to sin, in order that our thought, borne up on the chariot of sight, may push towards the love of Elohim, supported by the bodily senses; and not give loose reins to the eyes of the flesh as to wanton horses, eager to turn their running outside the way of the commandments, but may subject the bodily sight to the judgment of the mind, and not suffer those eyes of ours, which Elohim intended to be viewers and witnesses of His work, to become panders of evil desire. And therefore, let the bodily senses as well as the internal thought be subject to YHWH's Torah, and let them serve His will, whose work they acknowledge themselves to be."

Reward of Chastity

Chapter 337

Therefore, as the order and reason of the mystery demanded, on the following day she was immersed in the sea, and returning to the lodging, was initiated in all the mysteries of truth in their order. And we her sons, Niceta and Aquila and I, Clement, were present. And after this we dined with her, and glorified Elohim with her, thankfully acknowledging the zeal and teaching of Kefa, who showed us, by the example of our mother, that the good of chastity is not lost with Elohim; "as, on the other hand," said he, "unchastity does not escape punishment, though it may not be punished immediately, but slowly. But so well pleasing," said he, "is chastity to Elohim, that it confers some favour in the present life even upon those who are in error; for future blessedness is laid up for those only who preserve chastity and righteousness by the favour of mikvah. In short, that which has befallen your mother is an example of this, for all this welfare has been restored to her in reward of her chastity, for the guarding and preserving of which continence alone is not sufficient; but when any one perceives that snares and deceptions are being prepared, he must straightway flee as from the violence of fire or the attack of a mad dog, and not trust that he can easily frustrate snares of this kind by philosophizing or by humouring them; but, as I have said, he must flee and withdraw to a distance, as your mother also did through her true and entire love of chastity. And on this account, she has been preserved to you and you to her. And in addition, she has been

endowed with the knowledge of ageless life.” When he had said this, and much more to the same effect, the evening having come, we went to sleep.

Book 8

The Old Workman

Chapter 338

Now the next morning Kefa took my brothers and me with him, and we went down to the harbour to bathe in the sea, and thereafter we retired to a certain secret place for prayer. But a certain poor old man, a workman, as he appeared by his dress, began to observe us eagerly without our seeing him that he might see what we were doing in secret. And when he saw us praying, he waited till we came out, and then saluted us, and said: “If you do not take it amiss and regard me as an inquisitive and importunate person, I should wish to converse with you; for I take pity on you, and would not have you err under the appearance of truth and be afraid of things that have no existence. Or if you think that there is any truth in them, then declare it to me. If, therefore, you take it patiently, I can in a few words instruct you in what is right; but if it be unpleasant to you, I will go on and do my business.” To him Kefa answered: “Speak what you think good, and we will gladly hear, whether it be true or false; for you are to be welcomed, because, like a father anxious on behalf of his children, you wish to put us in possession of what you regard as good.”

Genesis

Chapter 339

Then the old man proceeded to say: “I saw you bathe in the sea, and afterwards retire into a secret place; so, observing what you were doing, without your noticing me I saw you praying. Therefore, pitying your error, I waited till you came out, that I might speak to you, and instruct you not to err in an observance of this sort; because there is neither any elohim, nor any worship, neither is there any providence in the world, but all things are done by fortuitous chance and Genesis,” as he called it, “as I have discovered most clearly for myself, being accomplished beyond others in the discipline of learning. Do not err, therefore: for whether you pray, or whether you do not pray, whatever your Genesis contains, that will befall you.” Then I Clement was affected, I know not how, in my heart, recollecting many things in him that seemed familiar to me; for someone says well, that what is sprung from any one, although it may be long absent, yet a spark of relationship is never extinguished. Therefore, I began to ask of him who and whence he was, and how descended. But he, not wishing to answer these questions, said: “What has that to do with what I have told you? But first, if you please, let us converse of those matters that we have propounded; and afterwards, if circumstances require, we can disclose to one another, as friends to friends, our names, and families, and country, and other things

connected with these.” Yet we all admired the eloquence of the man, and the gravity of his manners, and the calmness of his speech.

A Friendly Conference

Chapter 340

But Kefa, walking along leisurely while conversing, was looking out for a suitable place for a conference. And when he saw a quiet recess near the harbour, he made us sit down; and so he himself first began. Neither did he hold the old man in any contempt, nor did he look down upon him because his dress was poor and mean. He said, therefore: “Since you seem to me to be a learned and compassionate man, inasmuch as you have come to us and wish that to be known to us that you consider to be good, we also wish to expound to you what things we believe to be good and right. And if you do not think them true, you will take in good part our good intentions towards you as we do yours towards us.” While Kefa was thus speaking, a great multitude assembled. Then said the old man: “Maybe the presence of a multitude disconcerts you.” Kefa replied: “Not at all, except only on this account, that I am afraid lest when the truth is revealed in the course of our discussion, you are ashamed in presence of the multitude to yield and assent to the things that you may have understood to be spoken truly.” To this the old man answered: “I am not such a fool in my old age that, understanding what is true, I should deny it for the favor of the rabble.”

The Question Stated

Chapter 341

Then Kefa began to say: “Those who speak the word of truth, and who enlighten the spirits of men, seem to me to be like the rays of the sun, which, when once they have come forth and appeared to the world, can no longer be concealed or hidden, while they are not so much seen by men, as they afford sight to all. Therefore it was well said by One of the heralds of the truth, ‘Ye are the light of the world, and a city set upon a hill cannot be hid; neither do men light a candle and put it under a bushel, but upon a candlestick, that it may enlighten all who are in the house.’” Then said the old man: “He said well, whoever *he* is. But let one of you state what, according to his opinion, ought to be followed, that we may direct our speech to a definite aim. For, in order to find the truth, it is not sufficient to overthrow the things that are spoken on the other side, but also that one should himself bring forward what he who is on the other side may oppose. Therefore, in order that both parties may be on an equal footing, it seems to me to be right that each of us should first enunciate what opinion he holds. And, if you please, I will begin first. I say, then, that the world is not governed according to the providence of elohim, because we see that many things

in it are done unjustly and disorderly; but I say that it is Genesis that does and regulates all things.”

Freedom of Discussion Allowed

Chapter 342

When Kefa was about to reply to this, Niceta, anticipating him, said: “Would my master Kefa allow me to answer to this; and let it not be thought forward that I, a young man, should have an encounter with an old man, but rather let me converse as a son with a father.” Then said the old man: “Not only do I wish, my son, that you should set forth your opinions; but also, if any one of your associates, if any one even of the bystanders, thinks that he knows anything, let him unhesitatingly state it. We will gladly hear it; for it is by the contribution of many that the things that are unknown are more easily found out.” Then Niceta therefore answered: “Do not deem me to have done rashly, my father, because I have interrupted the speech of my master Kefa; but rather I meant to honour him by doing this. For he is a man of Elohim, full of all knowledge, who is not ignorant even of Greek learning, because he is filled with the Ruach of Elohim, to whom nothing is unknown. But because it is suitable to him to speak of heavenly things, I will answer concerning those things that pertain to the babbling of the Greeks. But after we have disputed in the Grecian manner, and we have come to that point where no issue appears, then he himself, as filled with the knowledge of Elohim, will openly and clearly disclose to us the truth on all matters, so that not we only, but also all who are around us as hearers will learn the way of truth. And therefore, now let him sit as umpire; and when either of us will yield, then let him, taking up the matter, give an unquestionable judgment.”

The Other Side of the Question Stated

Chapter 343

When Niceta had thus spoken, those who had assembled conversed among themselves: “Is this that Kefa of whom we heard is the most approved talmid of Him who appeared in Judaea, and wrought many signs and miracles?” And they stood gazing upon him with great fear and veneration, as conferring upon YHWH the honour of His good servant. Which when Kefa observed, he said to them: “Let us hear with all attention, holding an impartial judgment of what will be said by each; and after their encounter we also will add what may seem necessary.” And when Kefa had said this, the crowds rejoiced. Then Niceta began to speak as follows: “You have laid down, my father, that the world is not governed by the providence of Elohim, but that all things are subject to Genesis, whether the things that relate to the dispositions, or those that relate to the doings of everyone. This I could answer immediately; but because it is right to observe order, we also lay down what we hold, as you yourself requested should be done. I say that the world is governed by the

providence of Elohim, at least in those things that need His government. For He it is alone who holds all things in His hand, who also made the world; the just YHWH, who will at some time render to everyone according to his deeds. Now, then, you have our position; go on as you please, either overthrowing mine or establishing your own, that I may meet your statements. Or if you wish me to speak first, I will not hesitate.”

The Way Cleared

Chapter 344

Then the old man answered: “Whether it pleases you, my son, to speak first, or whether you prefer that I should speak, makes no difference, especially with those who discuss in a friendly spirit. However, speak you first, and I will gladly hear; and I wish you may be able even to follow out those things that are to be spoken by me, and to put in opposition to them those things that are contrary to them, and from the comparison of both to show the truth.” Niceta answered: “If you wish it, I can even state your side of the argument, and then answer it.” Then the old man: “Show me first how you can know what I have not yet spoken, and so I will believe that you can follow out my side of the argument.” Then Niceta: “Your sect is obvious, even by the proposition that you have laid down, to those who are skilled in doctrines of this sort; and its consequence is certain. And because I am not ignorant of what the propositions of the philosophers are, I know what follows from those things that you have propounded; especially because I have frequented the schools of Epicurus in preference to the other philosophers. But my brother Aquila has attended more to the Pyrrhonists, and our other brother to the Platonists and Aristotelians; therefore you have to do with learned hearers.” Then said the old man: “You have well and logically informed us how you perceived the things that follow from the statements that have been enunciated. But I professed something more than the tenet of Epicurus; for I introduced the Genesis, and asserted that it is the cause of all the doings of men.”

Instincts

Chapter 345

When the old man had said this, I Clement said to him: “Hear, my father: if my brother Niceta brings you to acknowledgement that the world is not governed without the providence of Elohim, I will be able to answer you in that part that remains concerning the Genesis; for I am well acquainted with this doctrine.” And when I had thus spoken, my brother Aquila said: “What is the use of our calling him *father*, when we are commanded to call no man father upon earth?” Then, looking to the old man, he said, “Do not take it amiss, my father, that I have found fault with my brother for

calling you father, for we have a precept not to call any one by that name.” When Aquila said that, all the assembly of the bystanders, as well as the old man and Kefa, laughed. And when Aquila asked the reason of their all laughing, I said to him: “Because you yourself do the very thing that you find fault with in another; for you called the old man *father*.” But he denied it, saying: “I am not aware that I called him *father*.” Meantime Kefa was moved with certain suspicions, as he told us afterwards; and looking to Niceta, he said, “Go on with what you have proposed.”

Simple and Compound

Chapter 346

Then Niceta began as follows: “Everything that is, is either simple or compound. That which is simple is without number, division, colour, difference, roughness, smoothness, weight, lightness, quality, quantity, and therefore without end. But that which is compound is either compounded of two, or of three, or even of four *elements*, or at all events of several; and things that are compounded can also of necessity be divided.” The old man, hearing this, said: “You speak most excellently and learnedly, my son.” Then Niceta went on: “Therefore that which is simple and which is without any of those things by which that which subsists can be dissolved is without doubt incomprehensible and infinite, knowing neither beginning nor end, and therefore is one and alone, and subsisting without an author. But that which is compound is subject to number, and diversity and division are necessarily compounded by some author, and is a diversity collected into one species. That which is infinite is therefore, in respect of goodness, a Father; in respect of power, a Creator. Neither can the power of creating cease in the Infinite, nor the goodness be quiescent; but He is impelled by goodness to change existing things, and by power to arrange and strengthen them. Therefore, some things, as we have said, are changed, and composed of two or three, some of four, others of more elements. But since our inquiry at present is concerning the method of the world and its substance, which, it is agreed, is compounded of four elements, to which all those ten differences belong, which we have mentioned above, let us begin at these lower steps, and come to the higher. For a way is afforded us to intellectual and invisible things from those that we see and handle; as is contained in arithmetical instructions, where, when inquiry is made concerning divine things, we rise from the lower to the higher numbers; but when the method respecting present and visible things is expounded, the order is directed from the higher to the lower numbers. Is it not so?”

Creation Implies Providence

Chapter 347

Then the old man said: "You are following it out exceedingly well." Then Niceta: "Now, then, we must inquire concerning the method of the world, of which the first inquiry is divided into two parts. For it is asked whether it has been made or not? And if it has not been made, itself must be that Unbegotten from which all things are. But if it has been made, concerning this again the question is divided into two parts, whether it was made by itself, or by another. And if indeed it was made by itself, then without doubt providence is excluded. If providence is not admitted, in vain is the mind incited to virtue. In vain justice is maintained, if there be no one to render to the just man according to his merits. But even the spirit itself will not appear to be immortal, if there be no dispensation of providence to receive it after its escape from the body.

General or Special Providence

Chapter 348

"Now, if it be taught that there is providence, and that the world was made by it, other questions meet us that must be discussed. For it will be asked in what way providence acts, whether generally towards the whole, or especially towards the parts, or generally also towards the parts, or both generally towards the whole, and especially towards the parts? But by general providence we mean this: as if Elohim, at first making the world, has given an order and appointed a course to things, and has ceased to take any further care of what is done. But special providence towards the parts is of this sort, that He exercises providence over some men or places, but not over others. But general overall and at the same time special over the parts is in this wise: if Elohim made all things at first, and exercises providence over each individual even to the end, and renders to everyone according to his deeds.

Prayer Inconsistent with Genesis

Chapter 349

"Therefore, that first proposition, which declares that Elohim made all things in the beginning, and having imposed a course and order upon things, takes no further account of them, affirms that all things are done according to what you call Genesis. To this, therefore, we will first reply; and especially to those who worship the false elohim and defend Genesis. Assuredly, these men, when they sacrifice to the false elohim and pray to them, hope that they will obtain something in opposition to Genesis, and so they annul Genesis. But when they laugh at those who incite to virtue and exhort to continence, and say that nobody can do or suffer anything unless what is decreed to him by fate, they assuredly cut up by the roots all worship

of *any* elohim. For why should you worship those from whom you can obtain nothing—that the method of what is decreed does not allow? Let this suffice in the meantime, in opposition to these men. But I say that the world is made by the *true* Elohim and that it is at some time to be destroyed by Him, that that world may appear that is ageless and that is made for this end, that it may be always, and that it may receive those who, in the judgment of Elohim, are worthy of it. But that there is another and invisible world, which contains this visible world within itself—after we have finished our discussion concerning the visible world, we will come to it also.

A Creator Necessary

Chapter 350

“Now, in the meantime, that this visible world has been made, very many wise men among the philosophers do testify. But that we may not seem to make use of assertions as witnesses, as though we needed them, let us inquire, if you please, concerning its principles. That this visible world is material is sufficiently evident from the fact that it is visible. But everybody receives *one of two* Differentiae; for it is either compact and solid, or divided and separate. And if the body of which the world was made was compact and solid, and that body was parted and divided through diverse species and parts according to its differences, there must necessarily be understood to have been someone to separate the body that was compact and solid, and to draw it into many parts and diverse forms; or if all this mass of the world was compounded and compacted from diverse and dispersed parts of bodies, still there must be understood to have been someone to collect into one the dispersed parts, and to invest these things with their different species.

Mode of Creation

Chapter 351

“And, indeed, I know that several of the philosophers were rather of the opinion that Elohim the Creator made divisions and distinctions from one body, which they call Matter, which yet consisted of four elements, mingled into one by a certain tempering of Elohim. For I think that what some have said is vain: that the body of the world is simple, that is, without any conjunction; since it is evident that what is simple can neither be a body, nor can be mixed, or propagated, or dissolved; all of which, we see, the bodies of the world do. For how could it be dissolved if it were simple, and had not within it that from which it might be resolved and divided? But if bodies seem to be composed of two, or three, or even of four elements, who that has even a small portion of sense does not perceive that there must have been someone who collected several into one, and preserving the measure of tempering,

made a solid body out of diverse parts? This *someone*, therefore, we call YHWH, the Creator of the world, and acknowledge Him as the author of the universe.

Theories of Creation

Chapter 352

“For the Greek philosophers, inquiring into the beginnings of the world, have gone some in one way and some in another. In short, Pythagoras says that numbers are the elements of its beginnings; Callistratus says qualities; Alcmaeon, contrarieties; Anaximander, immensity; Anaxagoras, equalities of parts; Epicurus, atoms; Diodorus, akatonomaston (ακατονόμαστον) that is, things in which there are no parts; Asclepius, Ogkoi, which we may call tumours or swellings; the geometricians, ends; Democritus, ideas; Thales, water; Heraclitus, fire; Diogenes, air; Parmenides, earth; Zeno, Empedocles, and Plato, fire, water, air, and earth. Aristotle also introduces a fifth element, which he called akatonomaston; that is, that which cannot be named; without doubt indicating Elohim who made the world, by joining the four elements into one. Whether, therefore, there be two, or three, or four, or more, or innumerable elements, of which the world consists, in every supposition there is shown to be an elohim, who collected many into one, and again drew them, when collected, into diverse species; and by this it is proved that the machine of the world could not have subsisted without a maker and a disposer.

The World made of what we cannot see by a Creator

Chapter 353

“But from the fact that, in the conjunction of the elements, if one be deficient or in excess, the others are loosened and fall, is shown that they took their beginning from that which is invisible. If for example, moisture be wanting in any body, neither will the dry stand, for dry is fed by moisture, as also cold by heat; in which, as we have said, if one be defective, the whole is dissolved. And in this they give indications of their origin: that they were made out of the invisible. Now if matter itself is proved to have been made, how will its parts and its species, of which the world consists, is thought to be unmade? But about matter and its qualities this is not the time to speak: only let it suffice to have taught this, that YHWH is the Creator of all things, because neither, if the body of which the world consists was solid and united, could it be separated and distinguished without a Creator; nor, if it was collected into one from diverse and separate parts, could it be collected and mixed without a Maker. Therefore, if YHWH is so clearly shown to be the Creator of the world, what room is there for Epicurus to introduce atoms, and to assert that not only sensible bodies, but even intellectual and rational minds are made of insensible corpuscles?

Doctrine of Atoms Untenable

Chapter 354

“But you will say, according to the opinion of Epicurus, that successions of atoms coming in a ceaseless course and mixing with one another, and conglomerating through unlimited and endless periods of time, are made solid bodies. I do not treat this opinion as a pure fiction, and that, too, a badly contrived one; but let us examine it, whatever is its character, and see if what is said can stand. For they say that those corpuscles, which they call atoms, are of different qualities: that some are moist, and therefore heavy, and tending downwards; others dry and earthy, and therefore still heavy; but others fiery, and therefore always pushing upwards; others cold and inert, and always remaining in the middle. Since then some, as being fiery, always tend upward, and others, as being moist and dry, always downwards, and others keep a middle and unequal course, how could they meet together and form one body? For if any one throw down from a height small pieces of straw, for example, and pieces of lead of the same size, will the light straws be able to keep up with the pieces of lead, though they be equal in size? Nay; the heavier reach the bottom far more quickly. So also atoms, though they be equal in size, yet, being unequal in weight, the lighter will never be able to keep pace with the heavier; but if they cannot keep pace, certainly neither can they be mixed or form one body.

The Concurrence of Atoms Could Not Make the World

Chapter 355

“Then, in the next place, if they are ceaselessly borne about, and always coming, and being added to things whose measure is already complete, how can the universe stand, when new weights are always being heaped upon so vast weights? And this also I ask: If this expanse of the sky that we say was constructed by the gradual concurrence of atoms, how did it not collapse while it was in construction, if indeed the yawning top of the structure was not propped and bound by any stays? For as those who build circular domes, unless they bind the fastening of the central top, the whole falls at once, so also the circle of the world, which we see to be brought together in so favourable a form, if it was not made at once, and under the influence of a single putting forth of divine energy by the power of a Creator, but by atoms gradually concurring and constructing it, not as reason demanded, but as a fortuitous issue befell, how did it not fall down and crumble to pieces before it could be brought together and fastened? And further, I ask this: What is the pavement on which the foundations of such an immense mass are laid? And again, what you call the pavement, on what does it rest? And again that other, what supports it? And so I go on asking, until the answer comes to nothing and vacuity!

More Difficulties of the Atomic Theory

Chapter 356

“But if anyone say that atoms of a fiery quality, being joined together, formed a body, and because the quality of fire does not tend downwards, but upwards, that the nature of fire, always pushing upwards, supports the mass of the world placed upon it; to this we answer: How could atoms of a fiery quality, which always make for the highest place, descend to the lower, and be found in the lowest place of all, so as to form a foundation for all; whereas rather the heavier qualities, that is, the earthy or watery, always come before the lighter, as we have said; hence, also, they assert that the sky, as the higher structure, is composed of fiery atoms, which are lighter, and always fly upwards? Therefore the world cannot have foundations of fire, or any other, nor can there be any association or compacting of the heavier atoms with the lighter, that is, of those that are always borne downwards, with those that always fly upwards. Thus it is sufficiently shown that the bodies of the world are consolidated by the union of atoms; and that insensible bodies, even if they could by any means concur and be united, could not give forms and measures to bodies, form limbs, or effect qualities, or express quantities; all which, therefore, by their exactness, attest the hand of a Maker, and show the operation of reason, which reason I call the Word, and YHWH.

Plato’s Testimony

Chapter 357

“But someone will say that these things are done by nature. Now, in this, the controversy is about a name. For while it is evident that it is a work of mind and reason, what you call nature, I call YHWH the Creator. It is evident that neither the species of bodies, arranged with so necessary distinctions, nor the faculties of minds, could or can be made by irrational and senseless work. But if you regard the philosophers as fit witnesses, Plato testifies concerning these things in the *Timoeus*, where, in a discussion on the making of the world, he asks, whether it has existed always, or had a beginning, and decides that it was made. ‘For,’ says he, ‘it is visible and palpable, and corporeal; but it is evident that all things which are of this sort have been made; but what has been made has doubtless an author, by whom it was made. This Maker and Father of all, however, it is difficult to discover; and when discovered, it is impossible to declare Him to the vulgar.’ Such is the declaration of Plato; but though he and the other Greek philosophers had chosen to be silent about the making of the world, would it not be quite clear to all who have any understanding? For what man is there, having even a particle of sense, who, when he sees a house having all things necessary for useful purposes, its roof fashioned into the form of a globe, painted with various splendor and diverse figures, adorned with large and splendid lights; who is there, I say, that, seeing such a structure,

would not immediately pronounce that it was constructed by a most wise and powerful artificer? And so, who can be found so foolish, as, when he gazes upon the fabric of the sky, perceives the splendour of the sun and moon, sees the courses and beauty of the stars, and their paths assigned to them by fixed laws and periods, will not cry out that these things are made, not so much by a wise and rational artificer, as by wisdom and reason itself?

Mechanical Theory

Chapter 358

“But if you would rather have the opinions of other Greek philosophers—and you are acquainted with mechanical science—you are of course familiar with what is their deliverance concerning the skies. For they suppose a sphere, equally rounded in every direction, and looking indifferently to all points, and at equal distances in all directions from the centre of the earth, and so stable by its own symmetry, that its perfect equality does not permit it to fall off to any side; and so the sphere is sustained, although supported by no prop. Now if the fabric of the world really has this form, the divine work is evident in it. But if, as others think, the sphere is placed upon the waters, and is supported by them, or floating in them, even so the work of a great contriver is shown in it.

Motions of the Stars

Chapter 359

“But lest the assertion may seem doubtful respecting things that are not obvious to all, let us come to those things of which nobody is ignorant. Who disposed the courses of the stars with so great reason, ordained their risings and settings, and appointed to each one to accomplish the circuit of the skies in certain and regular times? Who assigned to some to be always approaching to the setting, and others to be returning to the rising? Who put a measure upon the courses of the sun, that he might mark out, by his diverse motions, hours, and days, and months, and changes of seasons, or that he might distinguish, by the sure measurement of his course, now winter, then spring, summer, and afterwards autumn, and always, by the same changes of the year, complete the circle with variety, without confusion? Who, I say, will not pronounce that the director of such order is the very wisdom of YHWH? And these things we have spoken according to the relations given us by the Greeks respecting the science of the heavenly bodies.

Providence in Earthly Things

Chapter 360

“But what will we say of those things also that we see on the earth or in the sea? Are we not plainly taught that not only the work but also the providence of Elohim is in them? For whereas there are on the earth lofty mountains in certain places, their purpose is that the air, being compressed and confined by them through the appointment of Elohim, may be forced and pressed out into winds, by which fruits may germinate and the summer heat may be moderated when the Pleiades glow, fired with the blaze of the sun. But you still say, ‘Why that blaze of the sun, that moderating should be required?’ How, then, should fruits be ripened that are necessary for the uses of men? But observe this also, that at the meridian axis, where the heat is greatest, there is no great collection of clouds, nor an abundant fall of rain, lest disease should be produced among the inhabitants; for watery clouds, if they are acted on by rapid heat, render the air impure and pestilential. And the earth also, receiving the warm rain, does not afford nourishment to the crops, but destruction. In this who can doubt that there is the working of YHWH? In short, Mitsrayim, which is scorched with the heat of Ethiopia, in its neighbourhood, lest its air should be incurably corrupted by the effects of showers, its plains do not receive rain furnished to them from the clouds, but, as it were, an earthly shower from the overflow of the Nile.

Rivers and Seas

Chapter 361

“What will we say of fountains and rivers, which flow with perpetual motion into the sea? And, by YHWH’s power, neither does their abundant supply fail, nor does the sea, though it receives so great quantities of water, experience any increase, but both those elements that contribute to it and those that are thus contributed remain in the same proportion. But you will say to me: The salt water naturally consumes the fresh water that is poured into it. Well, in this is revealed the work of providence, that it made that element salt into which it turned the courses of all the waters that it had provided for the use of men. So that through so great spaces of time the channel of the sea has not been filled, though it once produced a deluge destructive to the earth and to men. Nor will anyone be so foolish as to think that this so great reason and so great providence has been arranged by irrational nature.

Plants and Animals

Chapter 362

“But what will I say of plants, and what of animals? Is it not providence that has ordained that plants, when they decay by old age, should be reproduced by the

suckers or the seeds that they have themselves produced, and animals by propagation? And by a certain wonderful dispensation of providence, milk is prepared in the udders of the dams for the animals before they are born; and as soon as they are born, with no one to guide them they seek out the store of nourishment provided for them. And not only males are produced, but females also, that by means of both the race may be perpetuated. But lest this should seem, as some think, to be done by a certain order of nature, and not by the appointment of the Creator, He has, as a proof and indication of His providence, ordained a few animals to preserve their stock on the earth in an exceptional way. For example, the crow conceives through the mouth, and the weasel brings forth through the ear; and some birds, such as hens, sometimes produce eggs conceived of wind or dust; other animals convert the male into the female, and change their sex every year, as hares and hyenas, which they call monsters; others spring from the earth, and get their bodies from it, as moles; others from ashes, as vipers; others from putrefying flesh, as wasps from horseflesh, bees from ox-flesh; others from cow dung, as beetles; others from herbs, as the scorpion from the basil; and again, herbs from animals, as parsley and asparagus from the horn of the stag or the she goat.

Germination of Seeds

Chapter 363

“And what occasion is there to mention more instances in which YHWH has ordained the production of animals to be effected in various ways, that order being superseded that is thought to be assigned by nature, from which not an irrational course of things, but one arranged by His own reason, might be evinced? And in this also is there not a full work of providence shown, when seeds sown are prepared by means of earth and water for the sustenance of men? For when these seeds are committed to the earth, the soil milks upon the seeds, as from its teats, the moisture that it has received into itself by the will of Elohim. For there is in water a certain power of the Ruach given by Elohim from the beginning, by whose operation the structure of the body that is to be begins to be formed in the seed itself, and to be developed by means of the blade and the ear; for the grain of seed being swelled by the moisture, that power of the Ruach that has been made to reside in water, running as an incorporeal substance through certain narrow passages of veins, excites the seeds to growth, and forms the species of the growing plants. By means, therefore, of the moist element in which that vital Ruach is contained and inborn, it is caused that not only is it revived, but also that an appearance and form in all respects like to the seeds that had been sown is reproduced. Now, who that has even a particle of sense will think that this method depends upon irrational nature, and not upon divine wisdom? Lastly, also these things are done in a resemblance of the birth of men; for the earth seems to take the place of the womb, into which the

seed being cast, is both formed and nourished by the power of water and Ruach, as we have said before.

Power of Water

Chapter 364

“But in this also YHWH is to be admired, that He permits us to see and know the things that are made, but has placed in secrecy and concealment the way and manner in which they are done, that they may not be competent to the knowledge of the unworthy, but may be laid open to the worthy and faithful, when they will have deserved it. But to prove by facts and examples that nothing is imparted to seeds of the substance of the earth, but that all depends upon the element of water, and the power of the Ruach that is in it. Suppose, for example, that a hundred talents’ weight of earth are placed in a very large trough, and that there are sown in it several kinds of seeds, either of herbs or of shrubs, and that water enough is supplied for watering them, and that that care is taken for several years, and that the seeds that are gathered are stored up, for example of corn or barley and other sorts separately from year to year, until the seeds of each sort amount to a hundred talents’ weight, then also let the stalks be pulled up by the roots and weighed; and after all these have been taken from the trough, let the earth be weighed, it will still give back its hundred talents’ weight undiminished. Whence, then, will we say that all that weight, and all the quantity of different seeds and stalks, has come? Does it not appear without doubt that it has come from the water? For the earth retains entirely what is its own, but the water that has been poured in all through is nowhere, on account of the powerful virtue of the divine condition, which by the one species of water both prepares the substances of so many seeds and shrubs, and forms their species, and preserves the kind while multiplying the increase.

The Human Body

Chapter 365

“From all these things I think it is sufficiently and abundantly evident that all things are produced; and the universe consists by a designing sense, and not by the irrational operation of nature. But let us come now, if you please, to our own substance, that is, the substance of man, who is a small world, *a microcosm*, in the great world; and let us consider with what reason it is compounded: and from this especially you will understand the wisdom of the Creator. For although man consists of different substances, one mortal and the other immortal, yet, by the skilful contrivance of the Creator, their diversity does not prevent their union, and that although the substances be diverse and alien the one from the other. For the one is taken from the earth and formed by the Creator, but the other is given from immortal substances; and yet the honor of its immortality is not violated by this union. Nor

does it, as some think, consist of reason, desire, and passion, but rather such affections seem to be in it by which it may be moved in each of these directions. For the body, which consists of bones and flesh, takes its beginning from the seed of a man, which is extracted from the marrow by warmth, and conveyed into the womb as into a soil, to which it adheres, and is gradually moistened from the fountain of the blood, and so is changed into flesh and bones, and is formed into the likeness of him who injected the seed.

Symmetry of the Body

Chapter 366

“And mark in this the work of the Designer, how He has inserted the bones like pillars, on which the flesh might be sustained and carried. Then, again, how an equal measure is preserved on either side, that is, the right and the left, so that foot answers to foot, hand to hand, and even finger to finger, so that each agrees in perfect equality with each; and also eye to eye, and ear to ear, which not only are suitable to and matched with each other, but also are formed fit for necessary uses. The hands, for instance, are so made as to be fit for work; the feet for walking; the eyes, protected with sentinel eyebrows, to serve the purpose of sight; the ears so formed for hearing, that, like a cymbal, they vibrate the sound of the word that falls upon them, and send it inward, and transmit it even in the understanding of the heart; whereas the tongue, striking against the teeth in speaking, performs the part of a fiddle bow. The teeth also are formed, some for cutting and dividing the food, and handing it over to the inner ones; and these, in their turn, bruise and grind it like a mill, that it may be more conveniently digested when it is conveyed into the stomach; for this reason they are also called grinders.

Breath and Blood

Chapter 367

“The nostrils also are made for the purpose of collecting, inspiring, and expiring air, that by the renewal of the breath, the natural heat that is in the heart may, by means of the lungs, be either warmed or cooled, as the occasion may require; while the lungs are made to abide in the breast, that by their softness they may soothe and cherish the vigour of the heart, in which the life seems to abide; the life, I say, not the spirit. And what will I say of the substance of the blood, which, proceeding as a river from a fountain, and first borne along in one channel, and then spreading through innumerable veins, as through canals, irrigates the whole territory of the human body with vital streams, being supplied by the agency of the liver, which is placed in the right side, for effecting the digestion of food and turning it into blood? But in the left side is placed the spleen, which draws to itself, and in some way cleanses the impurities of the blood.

The Intestines

Chapter 368

“What reason also is employed in the intestines, which are arranged in long circular windings that they may gradually carry off the refuse of the food, so as neither to render places suddenly empty and so as not to be hindered by the food that is taken afterwards? But they are made like a membrane, that the parts that are outside of them may gradually receive moisture, which if it were poured out suddenly would empty the internal parts; and not hindered by a thick skin, which would render the outside dry and disturb the whole fabric of man with distressing thirst.

Generation

Chapter 369

“Moreover, there is the wonder of the female form, and the cavity of the womb, which is most suitable for receiving, and cherishing, and vivifying the germ! Who does not believe that it has been made as it is by reason and foresight? Because in that part alone of her body the female differs from the male, in which the fetus being placed, is kept and cherished. And again, the male differs from the female only in that part of his body in which is the power of injecting seed and propagating mankind. And in this there is a great proof of providence, from the necessary difference of members. How marvellous it is that where, under a likeness of form there is found to be diversity of use and variety of office. For males and females equally have teats, but only those of the female are filled with milk; that, as soon as they have brought forth, the infant may find nourishment suited to him. But if we see the members in man arranged with such method and that in all the rest of creation there is seen to be similarity of form, and a difference only in those in which their use requires a difference, and we neither see anything superfluous nor anything wanting in man, nor in woman anything deficient or in excess. Who will not, from all these things, acknowledge the operation of reason, and the wisdom of the Creator?

Correspondences in Creation

Chapter 370

“With this agrees also the reasonable difference of other animals, and each one being suited to its own use and service. This also is testified by the variety of trees and the diversity of herbs, varying both in form and in juices. This also is asserted by the change of seasons, distinguished into four periods, and the circle closing the year with certain hours, days, months, and not deviating from the appointed

reckoning by a single hour. Hence, in short, the age of the world itself is reckoned by a certain and fixed account, and a definite number of years.

Time of Making the World

Chapter 371

“But you will say, ‘When was the world made, and why so late?’ This you might have objected, though it had been made sooner. For you might say, ‘Why not also before this?’ And so, going back through unmeasured ages, you might still ask, ‘And why not sooner?’ But we are not now discussing this, why it was not made sooner; but whether it was made at all. For if it is obvious that it was made, it is necessarily the work of a powerful and supreme Creator; and if this is evident, it must be left to the choice and judgment of that all-knowing Creator when He should please to make it; unless indeed you think that all this wisdom, which has constructed the immense fabric of the world, and has given to the several objects their forms and kinds, assigning to them a habit not only in accordance with beauty, but also most convenient and necessary for their future uses, unless, I say, you think that this alone has escaped it, that it should choose a convenient season for so magnificent a work of creation. He has doubtless a certain reason and evident causes why, and when, and how He made the world; but it were not proper that these should be disclosed to those who are reluctant to inquire into and understand the things that are placed before their eyes, and that testify of His providence. For those things that are kept in secret and are hidden within the senses of Hokmah, as in a royal treasury, are laid open to none but those who have learned of Him, with whom these things are sealed and laid up. It is YHWH Elohim, therefore, who made all things, and Himself was made by none. But those who speak of nature instead of Elohim, and declare that all things were made by nature, do not perceive the mistake of the name that they use. For if they think that nature is irrational, it is most foolish to suppose that a rational creature can proceed from an irrational creator. But if it is Reason—that is, Logos—by which it appears that all things were made, they change the name without purpose, when they make statements concerning the reason of the Creator. If you have anything to say to these things, my father, say on.”

A Contest of Hospitality

Chapter 372

When Niceta had thus spoken, the old man answered: “You indeed, my son, have conducted your argument wisely and vigorously; so much so, that I do not think the subject of providence could be better treated. But as it is now late, I wish to say some things tomorrow in answer to what you have argued; and if on these you can satisfy me, I will confess myself a debtor to your favour.” And when the old man said this, Kefa rose up. Then one of those present, a chief man of the Laodikeans,

requested of Kefa and us that he might give the old man other clothes instead of the mean and torn ones that he wore. Kefa and we embraced this man, praising him for his honorable and excellent intention, and Kefa said: "We are not so foolish and disrespectful as not to bestow the things that are necessary for bodily uses upon him to whom we have committed so precious words; and we hope that he will willingly receive them, as a father from his sons, and also we trust that he will share with us our house and our living." While we said this, and that chief man of the city strove to take the old man away from us with the greatest urgency and with many blandishments, while we the more eagerly strove to keep him with us, all the people cried out that it should rather be done as the old man himself pleased; and when silence was obtained, the old man, with an oath, said: "Today I will stay with no one, nor take anything from any one, lest the choice of the one should prove the sorrow of the other; afterwards these things may be, if so it seem right."

Arrangements for Tomorrow

Chapter 373

And when the old man had said this, Kefa said to the chief man of the city: "Since you have shown your goodwill in our presence, it is not right that you should go away sorrowful; but we will accept from you favour for favour. Show us your house, and make it ready, so that the discussion that is to be tomorrow may be held there, and that any who wish to be present to hear it may be admitted." When the chief man of the city heard this, he rejoiced greatly; and all the people also heard it gladly. And when the crowds had dispersed, he pointed out his house; and the old man also was preparing to depart. But I commanded one of my attendants to follow the old man secretly, and find out where he stayed. And when we returned to our lodging, we told our brothers all our dealings with the old man; and so, as usual, we supped and went to sleep.

"The Form of Sound Words ... from Me"

Chapter 374

But on the following day Kefa arose early and called us, and we went together to the secret place in which we had been on the previous day, for the purpose of prayer. And when, after prayer, we were coming from there to the appointed place, he exhorted us by the way, saying: "Hear me, most beloved fellow servants: It is good that every one of you, according to his ability, contribute to the advantage of those who are approaching to the faith of our Way; and therefore do not shrink from instructing the ignorant, and teaching according to the wisdom that has been bestowed upon you by the providence of Elohim, yet so that you only join the eloquence of your discourse with those things that you have heard from me, and that have been committed to you. But do not speak anything that is your own, and that

has not been committed to you, though it may seem to yourselves to be true; but hold forth those things, as I have said, that I myself have received from the Navi Emet, Y'shua, and have delivered to you, although they may seem to be less full of authority. For thus men often do who turn away from the truth, while they believe that they have found out, by their own thoughts, a form of truth more true and powerful.”

The Chief Man's House

Chapter 375

To these counsels of Kefa we willingly assented, saying to him that we should do nothing but what was pleasing to him. Then said he: “That you may therefore be exercised without danger, each of you conduct the discussion in my presence, one succeeding another, and each one clearly explaining his own questions. Now, then, as Niceta discoursed sufficiently yesterday, let Aquila conduct the discussion today; and after Aquila, Clement; and then I, if the case will require it, will add something.” Meantime, while we were talking in this way, we came to the house; and the master of the house welcomed us, and led us to a certain apartment, arranged after the manner of a theatre, and beautifully built. There we found great crowds waiting for us who had come during the night and amongst them the old man who had argued with us yesterday. Therefore we entered, having Kefa in the midst of us, looking about if we could see the old man anywhere; and when Kefa saw him hiding in the midst of the crowd, he called to him, saying: “Since you possess a spirit more enlightened than most, why do you hide and conceal yourself in modesty? Rather come here, and set forth your sentiments.”

Recapitulation of Yesterday's Argument

Chapter 376

When Kefa had thus spoken, immediately the crowd began to make room for the old man. And when he had come forward, he thus began: “Although I do not remember the words of the discourse that the young man delivered yesterday, yet I remember the general meaning and the order of it; and therefore I think it necessary, for the sake of those who were not present yesterday, to call up what was said, and to repeat everything shortly, that, although something may have escaped me, I may be reminded of it by him who delivered the discourse, who is now present. This, then, was the gist of yesterday's discussion: that all things that we see, inasmuch as they consist in a certain proportion, and art, and form, and species, must be believed to have been made by intelligent power; but if it be mind and reason that has formed them, it follows that the world is governed by the providence of the same reason, although the things that are done in the world may seem to us to be not quite rightly done. But it follows, that if *Elohim* and Mind is the creator of all things, *He* must also be just; but if *He* is just, *He* necessarily judges. If *He* judges, it is of necessity that

men be judged with respect to their doings; and if everyone is judged in respect of his doings, there will at some time be a righteous separation between Zaddikim and sinners. This, I think, was the substance of the whole discourse.

Genesis

Chapter 377

“If, therefore, it can be shown that mind and reason created all things, it follows that those things that come after are also managed by reason and providence. But if unintelligent and blind nature produces all things, the reason of judgment is undoubtedly overthrown; and there is no ground to expect either punishment of sin or reward of well doing where there is no judge. Since, then, the whole matter depends upon this, and hangs by this head, do not take it amiss if I wish this to be discussed and handled somewhat more fully. For in this, the first gate, as it were, is shut towards all things that have been put before us, and therefore I wish first of all to have it opened to me. Now therefore hear what my doctrine is; and if any one of you pleases, let him reply to me: for I will not be ashamed to learn, if I hear that which is true, and to assent to him who speaks rightly. The discourse, then, which you delivered yesterday, which asserted that all things consist by art, and measure, and reason, does not fully persuade me that it is mind and reason that has made the world; for I have many things that I can show to consist by competent measure, and form, and species, and that yet were not made by mind and reason. Then, besides, I see that many things are done in the world without arrangement, consequence, or justice, and that nothing can be done without the course of Genesis. This I will in the sequel prove most clearly from my own case.”

The Rainbow

Chapter 378

When the old man had thus spoken, Aquila answered: “As you yourself proposed that anyone who pleased should have an opportunity of answering to what you might say, my brother Niceta permits me to conduct the argument today.” Then the old man: “Go on, my son, as you please.” And Aquila answered: “You promised that you would show that there are many things in the world that have a form and species arranged by equal reason that yet it is evident were not affected by Elohim as their Creator. Now, then, as you have promised, point out these things.” Then said the old man: “Behold, we see the bow in the heaven assume a circular shape, completed in all proportion, and have an appearance of reality, which in all probability neither mind could have constructed nor reason described; and yet it is not made by any human mind. Behold, I have set forth the whole in a word: now answer me.”

Types and Forms

Chapter 379

Then said Aquila: "If anything is expressed from a type and form, it is at once understood that it is from reason, and that it could not be made without mind; since the type itself, which expresses figures and forms, was not made without mind. For example, if wax be applied to an engraved ring, it takes the stamp and figure from the ring, which undoubtedly is without sense; but then the ring, which expresses the figure, was engraved by the hand of a workman, and it was mind and reason that gave the type to the ring. So then the bow also is expressed in the air; for the sun, impressing its rays on the clouds in the process of disbursement, and affixing the type of its circularity to the cloudy moisture, as it were to soft wax, produces the appearance of a bow; and this, as I have said, is effected by the reflection of the sun's brightness upon the clouds, and reproducing the brightness of its circle from them. Now this does not always take place, but only when the opportunity is presented by the disbursement of moistened clouds. And consequently, when the clouds again are condensed and unite, the form of the bow is dissolved and vanishes. Finally, the bow never is seen without sun and clouds, just as the image is not produced unless there is the type and wax or some other material. Nor is it wonderful if Elohim the Creator in the beginning made types, from which forms and species may now be expressed. But this is similar to that, that in the beginning Elohim created insensible elements that He might use for forming and developing all other things. But even those who form statues first make a mold of clay or wax, and from it the figure of the statue is produced. And then afterwards a shadow is also produced from the statue, which shadow always bears the form and likeness of the statue. What will we say then? That the insensible statue forms a shadow finished with as diligent care as the statue itself? Or will the finishing of the shadow be unhesitatingly ascribed to him who has also fashioned the statue?"

Things Apparently Useless and Vile Made by Elohim

Chapter 380

"If, then, it seems to you that this is so, and what has been said on this subject is enough, let us come to inquire into other matters. Or if you think that something is still wanting, let us go over it again." And the old man said: "I wish you would go over this again, since there are many other things that I see to be made in like manner: for both the fruits of trees are produced in like manner, beautifully formed and wonderfully rounded; and the appearance of the leaves is formed with immense gracefulness, and the green membrane is woven with exquisite art. Then, moreover, will we say that fleas, mice, lizards, and such like, are made by *Elohim*? Hence, from these vile objects a conjecture is derived concerning the superior, that they are by no means formed by the art of mind." "You infer well," said Aquila, "concerning the

texture of leaves, and concerning small animals, that from these, belief is withdrawn from the superior creatures. But these things should not deceive you and cause you to think that Elohim, working as it were only with two hands, could not complete all things that are made; but remember how my brother Niceta answered you yesterday, how he truly disclosed the mystery before the time, as a son speaking with his father, and explained why and how things are made that seem to be useless.”

Orderly and Disorderly

Chapter 381

Then the old man: “I should like to hear from you why those useless things are made by the will of that *supreme mind*! If,” said he, “it is totally obvious to you that there is in them the work of mind and reason, and then you will not hesitate to say also why they were made, and to declare that they have been rightly made.” To this the old man added: “I am not able, my son, to say that those things that seem formed by art are made by mind, by reason of other things that we see to be done unjustly and disorderly in the world.” “If,” says Aquila, “those things that are done disorderly do not allow you say that they are done by YHWH’s providence, why don’t those things that are done orderly compel you to say that they are done by YHWH, and that irrational nature cannot produce a rational work? For it is certain, nor do we at all deny, that in this world some things are done orderly, and some disorderly. Should we believe, therefore, that those things that are done rationally are done by Providence, but those that are done irrationally and inordinately, that seem to befall naturally, are accidents? But I wonder that men do not perceive that where there is sense that things may be done in both an orderly and disorderly fashion, but where there is no sense neither the one nor the other can be done, for reason makes order, and the course of order necessarily produces something out of order, if anything contrary is allowed to disturb order.” Then the old man: “I wish you would show me how this very thing is done!”

Motions of the Sun and Moon

Chapter 382

Says Aquila: “I will do so without delay. Two visible signs are shown in heaven: one of the sun, the other of the moon; and these are followed by five other stars, each describing its own separate orbit. These, therefore, Elohim has placed in the sky, by which the temperature of the air may be regulated according to the seasons, and the order of changes and alternations may be kept. But by means of the very same, if at any time He sends plague and corruption upon the earth for the sins of men, the air is disturbed, pestilence is brought upon animals, blight upon crops, and a destructive year in every way upon men. Thus, it is that by one and the same means order is

both kept and destroyed. For it is clear even to the unbelieving and unskilful that the course of the sun, which is useful and necessary to the world, and which is assigned by Providence, is always kept orderly; but the courses of the moon, in comparison of the course of the sun, seem to the unskilful to be inordinate and unsettled in her waxings and wanings. For the sun moves in fixed and orderly periods, for from him are hours, from him the day when he rises, from him also the night when he sets; from him months and years are reckoned, from him the variations of seasons are produced; while, rising to the higher regions, he tempers the spring; but when he reaches the top of the heaven, he kindles the summer's heats: again, sinking, he produces the temper of autumn; and when he returns to his lowest circle, he bequeaths to us the rigor of winter's cold from the icy binding of heaven.

Sun and Moon Both Minister Good and Evil

Chapter 383

"But we will discourse at greater length on these subjects at another time. Now, meantime, don't we see that though he is that good servant for regulating the changes of the seasons, yet, when chastisement is inflicted upon men according to the will of Elohim, he glows more fiercely and burns up the world with more vehement fires? In like manner also the course of the moon, and that changing that seems to the unskilful to be disorderly, is adapted to the growth of crops, and cattle, and all living creatures; for by her waxings and wanings, by a certain wonderful contrivance of providence, everything that is born is nourished and grows. We could speak about that more at length and unfold the matter in detail, but that seems to be enough to answer the question as proposed. So, by the very same appliances by which they are produced, all things are nourished and increased! On the other hand when, from any just cause, the regulation of the appointed order is changed, corruption and distemper arise, so that chastisement may come upon men by the will of Elohim, as we have said above.

Chastisements on the Righteous and the Immoral

Chapter 384

"But maybe you will say, 'What of the fact that, in that common chastisement, like things befall the good and the evil?' It is true, and we confess it; but the chastisement of the righteous turns to their advantage, that, being afflicted in the present life, they may become more purified to the future, in which perpetual Shabbat is prepared for them, and that at the same time even the evil may somewhat profit from their chastisement by turning to righteousness, or else that the just sentence of the future judgment may be passed upon them; since in the same chastisements the righteous give thanks to YHWH, while the unrighteous blaspheme. Therefore, since the opinion of things is divided into two parts, that

some things are done by order and others against order, it ought, from those things that are done according to order, to be believed that there is a providence; but with respect to those things that are done against order, we should look for their causes from those who have learned them by the teaching of the navi. For those who have become acquainted with discourse of naviim know when and for what reason blight, hail, and pestilence and similar things, have occurred in every generation, and for what sins these have been sent as a punishment; whence causes of sadness, lamentations, and grieves have befallen the human race; whence also trembling sickness has ensued, and that this has been from the beginning the punishment for murder.

Chastisements for Sins

Chapter 385

“For in the beginning of the world there were none of these evils, but they took their rise from the rebellion of men; and thence, with the constant increase of iniquities, the number of evils has also increased. But for this reason, YHWH has decreed a judgment with respect to all men, because the present life was not such that everyone could be dealt with according to his deserving. Those things, therefore, that were well and orderly appointed from the beginning, when no causes of evil existed, are not to be judged of from the evils that have befallen the world by reason of the sins of men. In short, as an indication of the things that were from the beginning, some tribes are found that are strangers to these evils. For the Seres, because they live chastely, are kept free from them all; for they do not come at a woman after she has conceived, or while she is being purified. No one there eats unclean flesh. They know nothing of zebahim, but all are shoftim to themselves according to justice. For this reason, they are not chastened with those plagues of which we have spoken. They live to extreme old age and die without sickness. But we, miserable as we are, dwelling as it were with deadly serpents—I mean with immoral men—necessarily suffer with them the plagues of afflictions in this world, but we cherish hope from the comfort of good things to come.”

Elohim’s Precepts Despised

Chapter 386

“If,” said the old man, “even the righteous are tormented on account of the iniquities of others, *Elohim* ought, as foreseeing this, to have commanded men not to do those things from which it should be necessary that the righteous be afflicted with the unrighteous; or if they did them, *He* ought to have applied some correction or purification to the world.” “Elohim,” said Aquila, “did so command, and gave precepts by the naviim how men ought to live; but even these precepts they despised. Indeed, if any desired to observe them, they afflicted them with various injuries until

they drove them from their purposed observance, turned them to the rabble of infidelity, and made them like themselves.

The Flood

Chapter 387

“So, in short, at the first, when all the earth had been stained with sins, YHWH brought a flood upon the world, which you say was done by Deucalion, and at that time He saved a certain righteous man, with his sons, in an ark, and with him the race of all plants and animals. And yet even those who sprang from them, after a time again did deeds like to those of their predecessors; for those things that had befallen them were forgotten, so that their descendants did not even believe that the flood had taken place. So Elohim also decreed that there should not be another flood in the present world, else there should have been one in every generation, according to the account of their sins by reason of their unbelief; but He rather granted that certain malachim who delight in evil should bear sway over the several tribes—and to them was given power over individual men, yet only on this condition, if any one first had made himself subject to them by sinning—until He should come who delights in good, and by Him the number of the righteous should be completed, and by the increase of the number of obedient men all over the world disobedience should be in some measure repressed, and it should be known to all that all that is good is done by YHWH.

Chapter LI: Evils Brought in by Sin

Chapter 388

“But by the freedom of the will, every man, while he is unbelieving in regard to things to come, runs into evils by doing evil deeds. And these are the things in the world that seem to be done contrary to order, which owe their existence to man’s rebellion against Torah. Therefore, the purpose of YHWH is for man to worship Him, which He granted to men in the beginning. They were walking in the good way of life in order to enjoy incorruptible good things. But when they sinned, they gave birth to evil by sin. And to every good thing evil is joined as by a certain covenant of alliance on the part of sin, since indeed the earth has been polluted with human blood, and altars have been lighted to demons, and they have polluted the very air by the filthy smoke of zebahim; and so at length the elements, being first corrupted, have handed over to men the fault of their corruption, as roots nourish the branches and the fruit.

“No Rose without Its Thorn”

Chapter 389

“Observe therefore in this, as I have said, how justly YHWH comes to the help of those who have been injured; that, inasmuch as evils that had derived their origin from sin were associated with the good things of Elohim, He should assign separate chiefs to these two departments. And to Him who rejoices in good He has appointed the ordering of good things, that He might bring those who believe to the faith of His providence. But to him who rejoices in evil, He has given over those things that are done without order and uselessly, from which of course the faith of His providence comes into doubt, and thus a just division has been made by a just Elohim. Hence therefore it is that whereas the orderly course of the stars produces faith that the world was made by the hand of a designer, on the other hand, the disturbance of the air, the pestilent breeze, the uncontrolled fire of the lightning, cast doubt upon the work of providence. For, as we have said, every good thing has its corresponding contrary evil thing joined with it; as hail is opposite to the fertilizing showers, the corruption of mildew is associated with the gentle dew, the whirlwinds of storms are joined with the soft winds, unfruitful trees with fruitful, noxious herbs with useful, and wild and destructive animals with gentle ones. But all these things are arranged by Elohim, because that the choice of men’s will has departed from the purpose of good, and fallen away to evil.

Everything Has Its Corresponding Contrary

Chapter 390

“So, this division holds in all the things of the world; and as there are obedient men, so there are also rebellious; as there are naviim, so also there are false naviim; and amongst the Goyim there are philosophers and false philosophers. Also, the Arabian tribes, and many others, have imitated the circumcision of the Yahudaïm for the service of their disobedience. So also, the worship of demons is contrary to the divine worship, mikvah to mikvah, laws to the Torah, false shlichim to shlichim, and false morim to morim. And hence it is that among the philosophers some assert providence, others deny it; some maintain that there is one Elohim, others that there are more than one: in short, the matter has come to this, that whereas demons are expelled by the word of Elohim, by which it is declared that there is a providence, the magical art, for the confirmation of infidelity, has found out ways of imitating this by contraries. Thus, has been discovered the method of counteracting the poison of serpents by incantations, and the effecting of cures contrary to the word and power of Elohim. The magic art has also found out ministry’s contrary to the malachim of Elohim, placing the calling up of spirits and the figments of demons in opposition to these. And, not to prolong the discourse by a further enumeration, there is nothing whatever that makes for the belief of providence, which has not something, on the

other hand, prepared for unbelief; and therefore they who do not know that division of things, think that there is no providence, by reason of those things in the world that are discordant from themselves. But do you, my father, as a wise man, choose from that division the part that preserves order and makes for the belief of providence, and do not only follow that part that runs against order and neutralizes the belief of providence.”

An Illustration

Chapter 391

To this the old man answered: “Show me a way, my son, by which I may establish in my mind one or the other of these two orders, the one of which asserts, and the other denies, providence.” Aquila answered, “To one having a right judgment the decision is easy. For this very thing that you say, order and disorder, may be produced by a contriver, but not by insensible nature. For let us suppose, by way of illustration, that a great mass were torn from a high rock, and cast down headlong, and when clashed upon the ground were broken into many pieces, could it in any way be that, amongst that multitude of fragments, there should be found even one that should have any perfect figure and shape?” The old man answered: “It is impossible.” “But,” said Aquila, “if there be present a statuary, he can by his skilful hand and reasonable mind form the stone cut from the mountain into whatever figure he pleases.” The old man said: “That is true.” “Therefore,” says Aquila, “when there is not a rational mind, no figure can be formed out of the mass; but when there is a designing mind, there may be both form and deformity: for example, if a workman cuts from the mountain a block to which he wishes to give a form, he must first cut it out unformed and rough; then, by degrees hammering and hewing it by the rule of his art, he expresses the form that he has conceived in his mind. Thus, therefore, from infirmity or deformity, by the hand of the workman form is attained, and both proceed from the workman. In like manner, therefore, the things that are done in the world are accomplished by the providence of a contriver, although they may seem not quite orderly. And therefore, because these two ways have been made known to you, and you have heard the divisions of them, flee from the way of unbelief, lest it lead you to that prince who delights in evils; but follow the way of faith, that you may come to that King who delights in good men.”

The Two Kingdoms

Chapter 392

To this the old man answered: “But why was that prince made who delights in evil? And from what was he made? Or was he not made?” Aquila said: “The treatment of that subject belongs to another time. But that you may not go away altogether without an answer to this, I will give a few hints on this subject also. Elohim,

foreseeing all things before the creation of the world, knowing that the men who were to be would some of them indeed incline to good, but others to the opposite, assigned those who should choose the good to His own government and His own care, and called them His peculiar inheritance; but He gave over the government of those who should turn to evil to those malachim who, not by their substance, but by opposition, were unwilling to remain with Elohim, being corrupted by the vice of envy and pride. Those, therefore, he made worthy sarim of worthy subjects; yet he so delivered them over to those malachim, that they have not the power of doing what they will against them, unless they transgress the bounds assigned to them from the beginning. And this is the bound assigned, that unless one first do the will of the demons, the demons have no power over him.”

Origin of Evil

Chapter 393

Then the old man said: “You have stated it excellently, my son. It now remains only that you tell me whence is the substance of evil. For if it was made by *Elohim*, the evil fruit shows that the root is at fault; for it appears that it also is of an evil nature. But if this substance was co-ageless with *Elohim*, how can that which was equally unproduced and co-ageless be subject to the other?” “It was not always,” said Aquila; “but neither does it necessarily follow, if it was made by Elohim, that its Creator should be thought to be such as is that which has been made by Him. For indeed Elohim made the substance of all things; but if a reasonable mind, which has been made by Elohim, does not acquiesce in the Torah of its Creator, and go beyond the bounds of the temperance prescribed to it, how does this reflect on the Creator? Or if there is any reason higher than this, we do not know it; for we cannot know anything perfectly, and especially concerning those things for our ignorance of which we are not to be judged. But those things for which we are to be judged are most easy to be understood, and are dispatched almost in a word. For almost the whole rule of our actions is summed up in this, that what we are unwilling to suffer we should not do to others. For as you would not be killed, you must beware of killing another; and as you would not have your own marriage violated, you must not defile another’s bed; you would not be stolen from, neither must you steal; and every matter of men’s actions is comprehended within this rule.”

The Old Man Unconvinced

Chapter 394

Then the old man: “Do not take amiss, my son, what I am going to say. Though your words are powerful, yet they cannot lead me to believe that anything can be done apart from Genesis. For I know that all things have been done to me by the

necessity of Genesis, and therefore I cannot be persuaded that either to do well or to do ill is in our power; and if we have not our actions in our power, I cannot believe that there is a judgment to come by which either punishments may be inflicted on the evil or rewards bestowed on the good. In short, since I see that you are initiated in this sort of learning, I will lay before you a few things from the art itself." "If," says Aquila, "you wish to add anything from that science, my brother Clement will answer you with all care, since he has attended more fully to the science of mathematics. For I can maintain in other ways that our actions are in our own power; but I ought not to presume upon those things that I have not learned."

Sitting in Judgment upon YHWH

Chapter 395

When Aquila had thus spoken, then I Clement said: "Tomorrow, my father, you will speak as you please, and we will gladly hear you; for I suppose it will also be gratifying to you that you have to do with those who are not ignorant of the science that you profess." When, therefore, it had been settled between the old man and me, that on the following day we should hold a discussion on the subject of Genesis—whether all things are done under its influence, or there be anything in us not done by Genesis, but by the judgment of the mind—Kefa rose up, and began to speak to the following effect: "To me it is exceedingly wonderful that things that can easily be found out men make difficult by hidden thoughts and words; and those especially who think themselves wise, and who, wishing to comprehend the will of YHWH, treat Elohim as if He were a man, indeed as if He were something less than a man: for no one can know the purpose or mind of a man unless he himself reveal his thoughts; and neither can anyone learn a profession unless he be for a long time instructed by a master. How much more must it be that no one can know the mind or the work of the invisible and incomprehensible Elohim, unless He Himself sends a navi to declare His purpose and expound the way of His creation, so far as it is lawful for men to learn it! Hence I think it ridiculous when men judge of the power of Elohim in natural ways, and think that this is possible and that impossible to Him, or this greater and that less, while they are ignorant of everything; who, being unrighteous, judge the righteous YHWH; unskilled, judge the contriver; corrupt, judge the incorruptible; created, judge the Creator.

The Navi Emet Y'shua

Chapter 396

"But I would not have you think, that in saying this I take away the power of judging concerning things; but I give counsel that no one walk through devious places, and rush into errors without end. And therefore I advise not only wise men, but indeed all men who have a desire of knowing what is advantageous to them, that they seek

after the Navi Emet Y'shua; for it is He alone who knows all things, and who knows what and how every man is seeking. For He is within the mind of every one of us, but in those who have no desire of the knowledge of Elohim and His righteousness, He is inoperative; but He works in those who seek after that which is profitable to their spirits, and kindles in them the light of knowledge. So seek Him first of all; and if you do not find Him, do not expect that you will learn anything from any other. But He is soon found by those who diligently seek Him through love of the truth, and whose spirits are not taken possession of by immorality. For He is present with those who desire Him in the innocence of their spirits, who bear patiently, and draw sighs from the bottom of their hearts through love of the truth. But He deserts malevolent minds, because as a navi He knows the thoughts of every one. And therefore let no one think that he can find Him by his own wisdom, unless, as we have said, he empty his mind of all immorality, and conceive a pure and faithful desire to know Him. For when any one has so prepared himself, He Himself as a navi, seeing a mind prepared for Him, of His own accord offers Himself to his knowledge.

His Deliverances Not to Be Questioned

Chapter 397

“Therefore, if any one wishes to learn all things, he must do so “little by little”, for, being mortal, he will not be able to comprehend all at once the counsel of Elohim and to scan immensity itself. But if, as we have said, he desires to learn all things, let him seek after the Navi Emet; and when he has found Him, let him not treat with Him by questions and disputations and arguments; but if He has given any response, or pronounced any judgment, it cannot be doubted that this is certain. And therefore, before all things, let the Navi Emet be sought, and His words be laid hold of. In respect to these, this only should be discussed by everyone, that he may satisfy himself if they are truly Davarim haNavi; that is, if they contain undoubted faith of things to come, if they mark out definite times, if they preserve the order of things, if they do not relate as last those things that are first, nor as first those things that were done last, if they contain nothing subtle, nothing composed by magic art to deceive, or if they have not transferred to themselves things that were revealed to others, and have mixed them with falsehoods. And when all these things have been discussed by right judgment, it is established that they are words of the navi, so they ought to be at once believed concerning all things on which they have spoken and answered.

Ignorance of the Philosophers

Chapter 398

“For let us consider carefully the work of YHWH. For whereas the philosophers have introduced certain subtle and difficult words, so that not even the terms that they use

in their discourses can be known and understood by all, YHWH has shown that those who thought themselves word-framers are altogether unskilful as respects the knowledge of the truth. For the knowledge of things that is imparted by the Navi Emet Y'shua is simple, and plain, and brief; which those men walking through devious places and through the stony difficulties of words, are wholly ignorant of. Therefore, to modest and simple minds, when they see things come to pass that have been foretold, it is enough and more than enough that they may receive most certain knowledge from most certain foreknowledge. And for the rest may they be at shalom, having received evident knowledge of the truth. For all other things are treated by opinion, in which there can be nothing firm. For what speech is there that may not be contradicted? And what argument is there that may not be overthrown by another argument? And hence it is, that by disputation of this sort men can never come to any end of knowledge and learning, but find the end of their life sooner than the end of their questions.

End of the Conference

Chapter 399

“And, therefore, since amongst these things are uncertain, we must come to the Navi Emet. Abba YHWH wants Him to be loved by all, and accordingly He has been pleased wholly to extinguish those opinions that have originated with men, and in regard to which there is nothing like certainty, that He might be the more sought after, and that He whom they had obscured should show to men the way of truth. For on this account also Elohim made the world and filled it. Whence also He is everywhere near to them who seek Him, though He is sought in the remotest ends of the earth. But if any one seeks Him not in a pure, set-apart and faithful manner, He is indeed within him, because He is everywhere, and is found within the minds of all men. But, as we have said before, He is dormant to the unbelieving and is held to be absent from those by whom His existence is not believed.” And when Kefa had said this, and more to the same effect, concerning Y'shua, he dismissed the crowds. And when he very earnestly entreated the old man to remain with us, he could prevail nothing; but he also departed, to return next day, as had been agreed upon. And after this, we also, with Kefa, went to our lodging, and enjoyed our accustomed food and rest.

Book 9

An Explanation

Chapter 400

On the following day, Kefa, along with us, hastened early to the place in which the discussion had been held the day before; and when he saw that great crowds had assembled there to hear, and saw the old man with them, he said to him: "Old man, it was agreed yesterday that you should confer today with Clement; and that you should either show that nothing takes place apart from Genesis, or that Clement should prove that there is no such thing as Genesis, but that what we do is in our own power." To this the old man answered: "I both remember what was agreed upon and I keep in memory the words that you spoke after the agreement was made, in which you taught that it is impossible for man to know anything unless he learn from the Navi Emet." Then Kefa said: "You do not know what I meant; but I will now explain to you. I spoke of the will and purpose of Elohim, which He had before the world was, and by which purpose He made the world, appointed times, gave the Torah, promised a world to come to the righteous for the rewarding of their good deeds, and decreed punishments to the unjust according to a judicial sentence. I said that this counsel and this will of Elohim cannot be found out by men, because no man can gather the mind of Elohim from conjectures and opinion, unless a navi sent by Him declare it. I did not therefore speak of any doctrines or studies; they cannot be found out or known without a navi; for I know that both arts and sciences can be known and practiced by men, once they have learned, not from the Navi Emet, but from human instructors.

Preliminaries

Chapter 401

"Since, therefore, you profess to be conversant with the position of the stars and the courses of the heavenly bodies, and that from these you can convince Clement that all things are subject to Genesis, or that you will learn from him that all things are governed by providence, and that we have something in our own power, it is now time for you two to set about this." To this the old man answered: "Now indeed it was not necessary to raise questions of this kind, if it were possible for us to learn from the *Navi Emet*, and to hear in a definite proposition that anything depends on us and on the freedom of our will. For your yesterday's discourse affected me greatly, in which you disputed concerning the power of the navi. Whence also I assent to and confirm your judgment that nothing can be known by man with certainty and without doubt, seeing that he has but a short period of life—a brief and slender breath, by which he seems to be kept in life. However, since I am understood to have promised

The Nazarene Acts of the Apostles - Book 9

to Clement, before I heard anything of the power of the navi, that I should show that all things are subject to Genesis, or that I should learn from him that there is something in ourselves, let him do me this favour, that he first begin, and propound

and explain what may be objected. For I, ever since I heard from you a few words concerning the power of prophecy, have, I confess, been confounded, considering the greatness of foreknowledge. Nor do I think that anything ought to be received that is collected from conjectures and opinion.”

Beginning of the Discussion

Chapter 402

When the old man had said this, I Clement began to speak as follows: “YHWH by His Son created the world as a double house, separated by the interposition of this firmament, which is called heaven; and appointed malachim to dwell in the higher, and a multitude of men to be born in this visible world, from amongst whom He might choose friends for His Son, with whom He might rejoice, and who might be prepared for Him as a beloved bride for a bridegroom. But even till the time of the marriage, which is the revelation of the world to come, He has appointed a certain power, to choose out and watch over the good ones of those who are born in this world, and to preserve them for His Son, who is without sin, set apart in a certain place of the world, in which there are already some who are there being prepared, as I said, as a bride adorned for the coming of the bridegroom. For the prince of this world and of the present age is like an adulterer who corrupts and violates the minds of men, and, seducing them from the love of the true bridegroom, allures them to strange lovers.

Why the Evil Prince Was Made

Chapter 403

“But someone will say, ‘How then was it necessary that that prince should be made, who was to turn away the minds of men from the Sar ‘Emet?’ Because YHWH, who, as I have said, wished to prepare friends for His Son, did not wish to create them so that they could not possibly be anything else, but such as should desire of their own choice and will to be good; because neither is that praiseworthy that is not desirable, nor is that judged to be good that is not sought for with purpose. For there is no credit in being that from which the necessity of your nature does not admit of your changing. Therefore, the providence of Elohim has willed that a multitude of men should be born in this world, that those who should choose a good life might be selected from many. And because He foresaw that the present world could not consist except by variety and inequality, He gave to each mind freedom of motions, according to the diversities of present things, and appointed this prince, through that prince’s own suggestion of those things that run contrary, that the choice of better things might depend upon the exercise of virtue!

Necessity of Inequality

Chapter 404

“But to make our meaning plainer, we will explain it by particulars. Was it proper, for example, that all men in this world should be melekim, or sarim, or masters, or morim, or lawyers, or geometers, or goldsmiths, or bakers, or smiths, or grammarians, or rich men, or farmers, or perfumers, or fishermen, or poor men? It is certain that all could not be these. Yet the life of men requires all these professions and many more, and they cannot do without this variety of occupations. Therefore, inequality is necessary in this world. For there cannot be a melek, unless he has subjects over whom he may rule and reign; nor can there be a master, unless he has one over whom he may bear sway; and in like manner of the rest.

Arrangements of the World for the Exercise of Virtue

Chapter 405

“Therefore the Creator, knowing that no one would come to the contest of his own accord, while labour is shunned, that is, to the practice of those professions that we have mentioned, by means of which either the justice or the mercy of everyone can be shown, made for men a body susceptible to hunger, and thirst, and cold, in order that men, being compelled for the sake of supporting their bodies, might come down to all the professions that we have mentioned, by the necessity of livelihood. For we are taught to cultivate every one of these arts for the sake of food, drink, and clothing. And in this the purpose of each one’s mind is shown, whether he will supply the demands of hunger and cold by means of thefts, and murders, and perjuries, and other crimes of that sort; or whether, keeping justice and mercy and continence, he will fulfil the service of imminent necessity by the practice of a profession and the labour of his hands. For if he supply his bodily wants with justice, and obedience, and mercy, he comes forth as a victor in the contest set before him, and is chosen as a friend of the Son of YHWH. But if he serves carnal lusts, by frauds, iniquities, and crimes, he becomes a friend of the prince of this world, and of all demons; by whom he is also taught this: to ascribe to the courses of the stars the errors of his own evil doings, although he chooses them on purpose and willingly. For arts are learned and practiced, as we have said, under the compulsion of the desire of food and drink; which desire, when the knowledge of the truth comes to any one, becomes weaker, and frugality takes its place. For what expense has those who use water and bread, and only expect it from YHWH?

The Old and the New Birth

Chapter 406

“There is therefore, as we have said, a certain necessary inequality in the dispensation of the world. Since indeed all men cannot know all things and accomplish all works, yet all need the use and service of almost all. And on this account it is necessary that one work, and another pay him for his work; that one be servant, and another be master; that one be subject, another be melek. But this inequality, which is a necessary provision for the life of men, YHWH has turned into an occasion of justice, mercy, and humanity: that while these things are transacted between man and man, everyone may have an opportunity of acting justly with him to whom he has to pay wages for his work, and of acting mercifully to him who cannot pay his debt through sickness or poverty, and of acting humanely towards those who by their creation seem to be subject to him; also of maintaining gentleness towards subjects and of doing all things according to YHWH’s Torah. For He has given a Torah, thereby aiding the minds of men, that they may the more easily perceive how they ought to act with respect to everything, in what way they may escape evil, and in what way tend to future blessings; and how, being regenerate in water, they may by good works extinguish the fire of their old birth. For our first birth descends through the fire of lust, and therefore, by the divine appointment, this second birth is introduced by water, which may extinguish the nature of fire; and that the spirit enlightened by YHWH’s Set-apart Spirit may cast away the fear of the first birth, provided, however, it so live for the time to come, that it do not at all seek after any of the pleasures of this world, but be, as it were, a pilgrim and a stranger and a citizen of another city.

Uses of EvilsChapter 407

“But if you will say that in those things indeed in which the necessity of creation demands the service of arts and works, ‘Any one may have it in his power to maintain justice, and to put what restraint he pleases either upon his desires or his actions,’ what will we say of the sicknesses and infirmities that befall men, and of some being harassed with demons, and fevers, and cold fits, and some being attacked with madness, or losing their reason, and all those things that overwhelm the race of man with innumerable curses? To this we say that if any one considers the reason of the whole mystery, he will pronounce these things to be more just than those that we have already explained. For Elohim has given a nature to men by which they may be taught concerning what is good and to resist evil; that is, they may learn arts and to resist vain pleasures, and to set the Torah of Elohim before them in all things. And for this end He has permitted certain contrary powers to wander up and down in the world and to strive against us, for the reasons that have

The Nazarene Acts of the Apostles - Book 9

been stated before, that by striving with them the palm of victory and the merit of rewards may accrue to the righteous.

“Conceived in Sin”

Chapter 408

“From this, therefore, sometimes the result of any persons acting incontinently and being willing not so much to resist as to yield—to give harbour to these impulses in themselves—by their noxious breath an intemperate, ill-conditioned, and diseased progeny is begotten. For while lust is supposedly gratified but no care is taken in the copulation, undoubtedly a weak generation is affected with the defects and frailties of those demons who instigate these evil deeds. And therefore, parents are responsible for their children’s defects of this sort, because they have not observed the Torah of intercourse. Though there are also more secret causes, by which spirits are made subject to these evils, which it is not to our present purpose to state, yet it behoves everyone to acknowledge the Way of YHWH, that he may learn from it the observance of generation and avoid causes of impurity, that that which is begotten may be pure. For it is not right that on the one hand, in the planting of shrubs and the sowing of crops a suitable season is sought for, and the land is cleaned, and all things are suitably prepared, lest the seed that is sown be injured and perish, that on the other hand, in the case of man only, who is over all these things, there should be no attention or caution in sowing his seed.

Flax Smearred with Pitch

Chapter 409

“But what, it is said, of the fact that some who in their childhood are free from any bodily defect, yet in process of time fall into those evils, so that some are even violently hurried on to death? Concerning these also the account is at hand, and is almost the same: for those powers that we have said to be contrary to the human race are in some way invited into the heart of every one by many and diverse lusts, and find a way of entrance. And they have in them such influence and power as can only encourage and incite, but cannot compel or accomplish. If, therefore, any one consents to them so as to do those things that he immorally desires, his consent and deed will find the reward of destruction and the worst kind of death. But if, thinking of the future judgment, he be checked by fear, and reclaim himself, so that he does not accomplish in action what he has conceived in his evil thought, he will not only escape present destruction, but also future punishments. For every cause of sin seems to be like flax smearred over with pitch, which immediately breaks into flame as soon as it receives the heat of fire; and the kindling of this fire is understood to be the work of demons. If, therefore, anyone be found smearred with sins and lusts as with pitch, the fire easily gets the mastery of him. But if the flax be not steeped in the

pitch of sin, but in the water of purification and regeneration, the fire of the demons will not be able to be kindled in it.

Fear

Chapter 410

“But someone will say, ‘And what will we do now, who have already been smeared with sins as with pitch?’ I answer: ‘Only hasten to be washed, that the fuel of the fire may be cleansed out of you by the invocation of YHWH Y’shua and that for the future you may bridle your lusts by fear of the judgment to come, and by His constant power beat back the hostile powers whenever they tempt you.’ But you say, ‘If any one fall into love, how will he be able to contain himself, though he see before his eyes even that river of fire that they call Pyriphlegethon?’ This is the excuse of those who will not be converted to repentance. But now I would not have you talk of Pyriphlegethon. Place before you human punishments, and see what influence fear has. When any one is brought to punishment for the crime of love and is bound to the stake to be burned, can he at that time conceive any desire of her whom he loved, or place her image before his eyes? ‘By no means,’ you will say. You see, then, that present fear cuts off unrighteous desires. But if those who believe in Elohim, and who confess the judgment to come and the penalty of ageless fire, if they do not refrain from sin, it is certain that they do not believe with full faith: for if faith is certain, fear also becomes certain. But if there be any defect in faith, fear also is weakened, and then the contrary powers find opportunity of entering. And when they have consented to their persuasions, they necessarily become subject also to their power, and by their instigation are driven to the precipices of sin.

Astrologers

Chapter 411

“Therefore, the astrologers, being ignorant of such mysteries, think that these things come by the courses of the heavenly bodies. Hence also, in their answers to those who go to them to consult them as to future things, they are deceived in very many instances. Nor is it to be wondered at, for they are not naviim; but, by long practice, the authors of errors find a sort of refuge in those things by which they were deceived, and introduce certain Climacteric Periods, that they may pretend a knowledge of uncertain things. For they represent these Climacterics as times of danger, in which one sometimes is destroyed, sometimes is not destroyed, not knowing that it is not the course of the stars but the operation of demons that regulates these things. And those demons, being anxious to confirm the error of astrology, deceive men to sin by mathematical calculations, so that when they suffer the punishment of sin, either by the permission of Elohim or by legal sentence, the astrologer may seem to have spoken truth. And yet they are deceived even in this;

for if men be quickly turned to repentance, and remember and fear the future judgment, the punishment of death is remitted to those who are converted to Elohim by the favour of mikvah.

Retribution Here or Hereafter

Chapter 412

“But someone will say, ‘Many have committed even murder and adultery and other crimes, and have suffered no evil.’ This indeed is rare among men, except that it may often be for those who know not the counsel of Elohim. But Elohim, who knows all things, knows how and why he who sins does sin, and what cause leads each one to sin. This, however, is in general to be noticed, that if any are evil, not so much in their mind as in their doings, and are not borne to sin under the incitement of purpose, upon them punishment is inflicted more speedily, and more in the present life; for everywhere and always Elohim renders to everyone according to his deeds as He judges to be expedient. But those who purposely practice immorality, so that they sometimes even rage against those from whom they have received benefits, and who take no thought for repentance—their punishment He defers to the future. For these men do not, like those of whom we spoke before, deserve to end the punishment of their crimes in the present life. But it is allowed them to occupy the present time as they will, because their correction is not such as to need temporal chastisements, but such as to demand the punishment of inheriting ageless fire. And there their spirits will seek repentance, where they will not be able to find it.

Knowledge Deadens Lusts

Chapter 413

“But if, while in this life, they had placed before their eyes the punishments that they will then suffer, they would certainly have bridled their lusts, and would in nowise have fallen into sin. For the understanding in the spirit has much power for cutting off all its desires, especially when it has acquired the knowledge of heavenly things, by means of which, having received the light of truth, it will turn away from all darkness of evil actions. For as the sun obscures and conceals all the stars by the brightness of his shining, so also the mind, by the light of knowledge, renders all the lusts of the being ineffective and inactive, sending out upon them the thought of the judgment to come as its rays, so that they can no longer appear in the being.

Fear of Men and of Elohim

Chapter 414

“But as a proof that the fear of Elohim is quite effective for the repressing of lusts, take the example of human fear. Who is there among men that has never coveted his neighbour’s goods? And yet they are restrained and act honestly, through fear of the punishment that is prescribed by the laws. Through fear, tribes are subject to their melekim, and armies obey with arms in their hands. Slaves, although they are stronger than their masters, yet through fear submit to their masters’ rule. Even wild beasts are tamed by fear; the strongest bulls submit their necks to the yoke, and huge elephants obey their masters, through fear. But why do we use human examples, when even divine are not wanting? Does not the earth itself remain under the fear of precept, which it testifies by its motion and quaking? The sea keeps its prescribed bounds; the malachim maintain shalom; the stars keep their order and the rivers their channels. It is certain also that demons are put to flight by fear. And not to lengthen the discourse by too many particulars, see how the fear of Elohim, restraining everything, keeps all things in proper harmony and in their fixed order. How much more, then, may you be sure that the lusts of demons that arise in your hearts may be extinguished and wholly abolished by the admonition of the fear of YHWH, when even the inciters of lust are themselves put to flight by the influence of fear? You know that these things are so; but if you have anything to answer, proceed.”

Imperfect Conviction

Chapter 415

Then said the old man: “My son Clement has wisely framed his argument, so that he has left us nothing to say to these things; but all his discourse that he has delivered on the nature of men has this bearing, that along with the fact that freedom of will is in man, there is also some cause of evil apart from him, whereby men are indeed incited by various lusts, yet are not compelled to sin; and that for this reason, be said, because fear is much more powerful than they, and it resists and checks the violence of desires, so that, although natural emotions may arise, yet sin may not be committed, those demons being put to flight who incite and inflame these emotions. But these things do not convince me; for I am conscious of certain things from which I know well that by the arrangement of the heavenly bodies men become murderers or adulterers and perpetrate other evils; and in like manner honorable and modest women are compelled to act well.

Astrological Lore

Chapter 416

“In short, when Mars, holding the centre in his house, regards Saturn quarterly, with Mercury towards the centre, the full moon coming upon him, in the daily Genesis, he produces murderers, and those who are to fall by the sword, bloody, drunken, lustful, devilish men, inquirers into secrets, malefactors, scoffers, and such like; especially when there was no one of the good stars looking on. But again Mars himself, having a quarterly position with respect to Venus, in a direction toward the centre, while no good star looks on, produces adulterers and incestuous persons. Venus with the Moon, in the borders and houses of Saturn, if she was with Saturn, and Mars looking on, produces women that are loud and overbearing, ready for agriculture, building, and every manly work, to commit adultery with whom they please, and not to be convicted by their husbands, to use no delicacy, no ointments, nor feminine robes and shoes, but to live after the fashion of men. But the unencouraging Venus makes men to be as women, and not to act in any respect as men, if she is with Mars in Aries; on the contrary, she produces women if she is in Capricorn or Aquarius.”

The Reply

Chapter 417

And when the old man had pursued this subject at great length, and had enumerated every kind of mathematical figure, and also the position of the heavenly bodies, wishing thereby to show that fear is not sufficient to restrain lusts, I answered again: “Truly, my father, you have argued most learnedly and skilfully; and reason herself invites me to say something in answer to your discourse, since indeed I am acquainted with the science of mathematics, and gladly hold a conference with so learned a man. Listen therefore, while I reply to what you have said that you may learn distinctly that Genesis is not at all from the stars, and that it is possible for those who have recourse to YHWH to resist the assault of demons; and, as I said before, that not only by the fear of Elohim can natural lusts be restrained, but even by the fear of men, as we will now instruct you.

Refutation of Astrology

Chapter 418

“There are, in every country or kingdom, laws imposed by men, enduring either by writing or simply through custom, which no one easily transgresses. In short, the first Seres, who dwell at the beginning of the world, have a law not to know murder, nor adultery, nor whoredom, and not to commit theft, and not to worship idols; and in all that country, which is very large, there is neither Hekel, nor image, nor harlot, nor adulteress, nor is any thief brought to trial. But neither is any man ever slain there;

and no man's liberty of will is compelled, according to your doctrine, by the fiery star of Mars, to use the sword for the murder of man; nor does Venus in conjunction with Mars compel to adultery, although of course with them Mars occupies the middle circle of heaven every day. But amongst the Seres the fear of laws is more powerful than the configuration of Genesis.

Brahmans

Chapter 419

"There are likewise amongst the Bactrians in the Indian countries immense multitudes of Brahmans, who also themselves from the tradition of their ancestors and peaceful customs and laws, neither commit murder nor adultery, nor worship idols, nor have the practice of eating animal food, are never drunk, never do anything maliciously, but always fear Elohim. And these things indeed they do, though the rest of the Indians commit both murders and adulteries, and worship idols, and are drunken, and practice other immoralities of this sort. Indeed, in the western parts of India itself there is a certain country, where strangers, when they enter it, are taken and slaughtered and eaten; and neither have good stars prevented these men from such immoralities and from accursed food, nor have evil stars compelled the Brahmans to do any evil. Again, there is a custom among the Persians to marry mothers, and sisters, and daughters. In all that district the Persians contract incestuous marriages.

Districts of Heaven

Chapter 420

"And that those who study mathematics may not have it in their power to use that subterfuge by which they say that there are certain districts of heaven to which it is granted to have some things peculiar to themselves, some of that tribe of Persians have gone to foreign countries, who are called HaMagi, of whom there are some to this day in Media, others in Parthia, some also in Mitsrayim, and a considerable number in Galatia and Phrygia, all of whom maintain the form of this incestuous tradition without variation and hand it down to their posterity to be observed, even although they have changed their district of heaven; nor has Venus with the Moon in the confines and houses of Saturn, with Saturn also and Mars looking on, compelled them to have a Genesis among other men.

Customs of the Gelones

Chapter 421

“Amongst the Geli also there is a custom that women cultivate the fields, build, and do every manly work; and they are also allowed to have intercourse with whom they please and are not found fault with by their husbands or called adulteresses: for they have promiscuous intercourse everywhere, and especially with strangers. They do not use ointments; they do not wear dyed garments or shoes. On the other hand, the men of the Gelones are adorned, combed, clothed in soft and various-coloured garments, decked with gold, and besmeared with ointments, and that not through lack of manliness, for they are most warlike, and most keen hunters. Yet the whole women of the Gelones had not at their birth the unfavourable Venus in Capricorn or Aquarius; nor had all their men Venus placed with Mars in Aries, by which configuration the Chaldean science asserts that men are born effeminate and dissolute.

Manners of the Susidae

Chapter 422

“But, further, in Susa the women use ointments, and indeed of the best sort, being decked with ornaments and precious stones; also, they go abroad supported by the aid of their maidservants, with much greater ambition than the men. They do not, however, cultivate modesty, but have intercourse indifferently with whomsoever they please, with slaves and guests, such liberty being allowed them by their husbands; and not only are they not blamed for this, but they also rule over their husbands. And yet the Genesis of all the Susan women have not Venus, with Jupiter and Mars in the middle of the heaven in the houses of Jupiter. In the remoter parts of the East, if a boy be treated unnaturally, when it is discovered, he is killed by his brothers, or his parents, or any of his relations, and is left unburied. And again, among the Gauls, an old law allows boys to be thus treated publicly; and no disgrace is thought to attach to it. And is it possible, that all those who are so basely treated among the Gauls, have had Lucifer with Mercury in the houses of Saturn and the confines of Mars?

Different Customs of Different Countries

Chapter 423

“In the regions of Britain several men have one wife; in Parthia many women have one husband; and each part of the world adheres to its own manners and institutions. None of the Amazons have husbands, but, like animals, they go out from their own territories once a year about the vernal equinox, and live with the men of the neighbouring tribe, observing a sort of solemnity the while, and when they have conceived by them they return; and if they bring forth a male child, they cast him

away, and rear only females. Now, since the birth of all is at one season, it is absurd to suppose that in the case of males Mars is at the time in equal portions with Saturn, but never in the Genesis of females; and that they have not Mercury placed with Venus in his own houses, so as to produce either painters, or sculptors, or moneychangers; or in the houses of Venus, so that perfumers, or singers, or poets might be produced. Among the Saracens, and Upper Libyans, and Moors, and the dwellers about the mouths of the ocean, and also in the remote districts of Germany, and among the Sarmatians and Scythians, and all the tribes who dwell in the regions of the Pontic shore, and in the island Chrysea, there is never found a moneychanger, nor a sculptor, nor a painter, nor an architect, nor a geometrician, nor a tragedian, nor a poet. Can it be therefore that the influence of Mercury and Venus must be wanting among them?

Not Genesis, But Free Will

Chapter 424

“The Medes alone in all the world throw men still breathing to be devoured by dogs; yet they have not Mars with the Moon placed in Cancer all through their daily Genesis. The Indians burn their dead and the wives of the dead voluntarily offer themselves, and are burned with them. But all the Indian women who are burned alive have not the Sun under the earth in nightly Genesis, with Mars in the regions of Mars. Very many of the Germans end their lives by the halter; but all have not therefore the Moon with Hora begirt by Saturn and Mars. From all this it appears that the fear of the laws bears sway in every country, and the freedom of will that is implanted in man by the spirit complies with the laws; and Genesis can neither compel the Seres to commit murder, nor the Brahmans to eat flesh, nor the Persians to shun incest, nor the Indians to refrain from suttee, nor the Medes from being devoured by dogs, nor the Parthians from having many wives, nor the women of Mesopotamia from preserving their chastity, nor the Greeks from athletic exercises, nor the Gallic boys from being abused; nor can it compel the barbarous tribes to be instructed in the studies of the Greeks; but, as we have said, each tribe observes its own laws according to free will, and annuls the decrees of Genesis by the strictness of laws.

Climates

Chapter 425

“But someone skilled in the science of mathematics will say that Genesis is divided into seven parts, which they call climates, and that over each climate one of the seven heavenly bodies bears rule; and that those diverse laws to which we have referred are not given by men, but by those dominant stars according to their will, and that that which pleases the star is observed by men as a law. To this we will

answer, in the first place, that the world is not divided into seven parts; and in the second place, that if it were so, we find many different laws in one part and one country; and therefore there are neither seven according to the number of the heavenly bodies, nor twelve according to the number of the signs, nor thirty-six according to that of the divisions of ten degrees; but they are innumerable.

Doctrine of "Climates" Untenable

Chapter 426

"Moreover, we ought to remember the things that have been mentioned, that in the one country of India there are both persons who feed on human flesh, and persons who abstain even from the flesh of sheep, and birds, and all living creatures; and that the Magusaei marry their mothers and daughters not only in Persia, but that in every tribe where they dwell they keep up their incestuous customs. Then, besides, we have mentioned also innumerable tribes, which are wholly ignorant of the studies of literature, and also some wise men have changed the laws themselves in several places; and some laws have been voluntarily abandoned, on account of the impossibility of observing them, or on account of their baseness. Assuredly we can easily ascertain how many rulers have changed the laws and customs of tribes that they have conquered, and subjected them to their own laws. This is manifestly done by the Romans, who have brought under the Roman law and the civil decrees almost the whole world, and all tribes who formerly lived under various laws and customs of their own. It follows, therefore, that the stars of the tribes that have been conquered by the Romans have lost their climates and their portions.

Yahudai Customs

Chapter 427

"I will add another thing that may satisfy even the most incredulous. All the Yahudaïm who live under the Torah of Moshe circumcise their sons on the eighth day without fail, and shed the blood of the tender infant. But no one of the Goyim has ever submitted to this on the eighth day; and, on the other hand, no one of the Yahudaïm has ever omitted it. How then will the account of Genesis stand with this, since Yahudaïm live in all parts of the world, mixed with Goyim, and on the eighth day suffer the cutting of a member? And no one of the Goyim, but only they themselves, as I have said, do this, induced to it not by the compulsion of any star, nor by the perfusion of blood, but by the Torah that they observe. And in whatever part of the world they are, this sign is familiar to them. But also, the fact that one Name is among them all, wherever they are, does this also come through Genesis? And also, that no child born among them is ever exposed, and that on every seventh day they all rest, wherever they may be, and do not go upon a journey, and do not

use fire? Why is it, then, that no one of the Yahudaïm is compelled by Genesis to go on a journey, or to build, or to sell or buy anything on that day?

The Good News More Powerful Than “Genesis”

Chapter 428

“But I will give a still stronger proof of the matters in hand. For, behold, scarcely seven years have yet passed since the advent of the righteous and Navi Emet Y’shua, and in the course of these, the spiritually ignorant of all tribes coming to Judaea, and moved both by the signs and miracles that they saw, and by the grandeur of His doctrine, received His faith; and then going back to their own countries, they rejected the Torahless rites of the Goyim, and their incestuous marriages. In short, among the Parthians—as Thoma, who is preaching the good news amongst them, has written to us—not many now are addicted to polygamy; nor among the Medes do many throw their dead to dogs; nor are the Persians pleased with intercourse with their mothers, or incestuous marriages with their daughters; nor do the Susan women practice the adulteries that were allowed them; nor has Genesis been able to force those into crimes whom the teaching of truth restrained.

“Genesis” Inconsistent with YHWH’s Justice

Chapter 429

“Behold, from the very matter in which we are now engaged draw an inference, and from the circumstances in which we are now placed deduce a conclusion, how, through a rumour only reaching the ears of men that a Navi had appeared in Judaea to teach men with signs and miracles to worship one Elohim, all were expecting with prepared and eager minds, even before the coming of my master Kefa, that someone would announce to them what He taught who had appeared. But lest I should seem to carry the enumeration too far, I will tell you what conclusion ought to be drawn from the whole. Since YHWH is righteous, and since He Himself made the nature of men, how could it be that He should place Genesis in opposition to us, which should compel us to sin, and then that He should punish us when we do sin? Whence it is certain that YHWH punishes no sinner either in the present life or in that to come, except because He knows that he could have conquered, but neglected victory. For even in the present world He takes vengeance upon men, as He did upon those who perished in the deluge, who were all destroyed in one day, yea, in one hour, although it is certain that they were not all born in one hour according to the order of Genesis. But it is most absurd to say that it befalls us by nature to suffer evils, if sins had not gone before.

Value of Knowledge

Chapter 430

“And therefore, if we desire salvation, we ought above all to seek after knowledge, being sure that if our mind remain in ignorance, we will endure not only the evils of Genesis, but also whatever other evils from without the demons may please, unless fear of Torah and of the judgment to come resist all our desires, and check the violence of sinning. For even human fear does much good, and also much evil, unknown to Genesis, as we have shown above. Therefore, our mind is subject to errors in a threefold manner: from those things that come to us through evil custom; or from those lusts that the body naturally stirs up in us; or from those that hostile powers incite us to. But the mind has it in its own nature to oppose and fight against these, when the knowledge of truth shines upon it, by which knowledge fear of the judgment to come is imparted, which is a fit governor of the mind, and which can recall it from the precipices of lusts. That these things, therefore, are in our power, has been sufficiently stated.

Stubborn Facts

Chapter 431

“Now, old man, if you have anything to say in answer to these things, say on.” Then said the old man, “You have most fully argued, my son; but I, as I said at first, am prevented by my own consciousness from according assent to all this incomparable statement of yours. For I know both my own Genesis and that of my wife, and I know that those things have been done that our Genesis prescribed to each of us; and I cannot now be withdrawn by words from those things that I have ascertained by facts and deeds. In short, since I perceive that you are excellently skilled in this sort of learning, hear the horoscope of my wife, and you will find the configuration whose issue has occurred. For she had Mars with Venus above the centre, and the Moon setting in the houses of Mars and the confines of Saturn. Now this configuration leads women to be adulteresses, and to love their own slaves, and to end their days in foreign travel and in waters. And this has so come to pass. For she fell in love with her slave, and fearing at once danger and reproach, she fled with him, and going abroad, where she satisfied her love, she perished in the sea.”

An Approaching Recognition

Chapter 432

Then I answered: “How know you that she cohabited with her slave abroad, and died in his society?” Then the old man said: “I know it with perfect certainty; not indeed that she was married to the slave, as indeed I had not even discovered that she loved him. But after she was gone, my brother gave me the whole story, telling me

that first she had loved him, but he, being honourable as a brother, would not pollute his brother's bed with the stain of incest. But she, being both afraid of me and unable to bear the terrible reproaches (and yet she should not be blamed for that to which her Genesis compelled her), pretended a dream, and said to me: 'Someone stood by me in a vision, who ordered me to leave the city without delay with my twins.' When I heard this, being anxious for her safety and that of my sons, I immediately sent away her and the children, retaining with myself one who was younger. For this she said that he had permitted who had given her warning in her sleep."

The Other Side of the Story

Chapter 433

Then I Clement, understanding that he perchance was my father, was drowned in tears, and my brothers also were ready to rush forward and to disclose the matter; but Kefa restrained them, saying: "Be quiet, until I give you permission." Therefore Kefa, answering, said to the old man: "What was the name of your younger son?" And he said: "Clement." Then Kefa: "If I will this day restore to you your most chaste wife and your three sons, will you believe that a modest mind can overcome unreasonable impulses, and that all things that have been spoken by us are true, and that Genesis is nothing?" Then said the old man: "As it is impossible for you to perform what you have promised, so it is impossible that anything can take place apart from Genesis." Then says Kefa: "I wish to have all who are here present as witnesses that I will this day hand over to you your wife, who is living most chastely, with your three sons. And now take a token of these things from this, that I know the whole story much more accurately than you do; and I will relate the whole occurrences in order, both that you may know them, and that those who are present may learn."

Revelations

Chapter 434

When he had said this, he turned to the crowds, and thus began: "This person whom you see, O men, in this poor garb, is a citizen of the city Rome, descended of the stock of Caesar himself. His name is Faustinianus. He obtained as his wife a woman of the highest rank, Matthidia by name. By her he had three sons, two of whom were twins; and the one who was the younger, whose name was Clement, is this man!" When he said this, he pointed to me with his finger. "And his twin sons are these men, Niceta and Aquila, the one of whom was formerly called Faustinus and the other Faustus." But as soon as Kefa pronounced our names, all the old man's limbs were weakened, and he fell down in a swoon. But we his sons rushed to him, and

embraced and kissed him, fearing that we might not be able to recall his spirit. And while these things were going on, the people were confounded with very wonder.

New Revelations

Chapter 435

But Kefa ordered us to rise from embracing our father, lest we should kill him; and he himself, laying hold of his hand, and lifting him up as from a deep sleep, and gradually reviving him, began to set forth to him the whole true record: how his brother had fallen in love with Matthidia, and how she, being very modest, had been unwilling to inform her husband of his brother's illicit love, lest she should stir up hostility between the brothers, and bring disgrace upon the family; and how she had wisely pretended a dream, by which she was ordered to depart from the city with her twin sons, leaving the younger one with his father; and how on their voyage they had suffered shipwreck through the violence of a storm; and how, when they were cast upon an island called Antaradus, Matthidia was thrown by a wave upon a rock, but her twin children were seized by pirates and carried to Caesarea, and there sold to a Torah-observant woman, who treated them as sons, and brought them up, and caused them to be educated as gentlemen; and how the pirates had changed their names, and called the one Niceta and the other Aquila; and how afterwards, through common studies and acquaintanceship, they had adhered to Shimon; and how they had turned away from him when they saw him to be a magician and a deceiver, and had come to Zacchai; and how subsequently they had been associated with himself; and how Clement also, setting out from the city for the sake of learning the truth, had, through his acquaintance with Yosef barNaba, come to Caesarea. and had become known to him, and had adhered to him, and how he had been taught by him the faith of Y'shua; and also how he had found and recognized his mother begging at Antaradus, and how the whole island rejoiced at his recognition of her; and also concerning her sojourn with her most chaste hostess, and the healing that he had wrought upon her, and concerning the liberality of Clement to those who had been kind to his mother; and how afterwards, when Niceta and Aquila asked who the strange woman was, and had heard the whole story from Clement, they cried out that they were her twin sons Faustinus and Faustus; and how they had unfolded the whole history of what had befallen them; and how afterwards, by the persuasion of Kefa himself, they were presented to their mother with caution, lest she should die by the sudden joy.

Another Recognition

Chapter 436

But while Kefa was detailing these things in the hearing of the old man, in a narrative that was most pleasing to the crowd, so that the hearers wept through wonder at the

events, and through compassion for sufferings incident to humanity, my mother, hearing (I know not how) of the recognition of my father, rushed into the middle of us in breathless haste, crying out, and saying: "Where is my husband, my master Faustinianus, who has been so long afflicted, wandering from city to city in search of me?" While she shouted thus like one demented, and gazed around, the old man, running up, began to embrace and hug her with many tears. And while these things were going on, Kefa requested the crowds to disperse, saying that it was unseemly to remain longer; but that opportunity must be afforded them of seeing one another more privately. "But tomorrow," said he, "if any of you wish it, let them assemble to hear the word."

"Malachim Unawares"

Chapter 437

When Kefa had said this, the crowds dispersed; and when we also were intending to go to our lodging, the master of the house said to us: "It is base and immoral that such and so great men should stay in a hostelry, when I have almost my whole house empty, and very many beds spread, and all necessary things provided." But when Kefa refused, the wife of the householder prostrated herself before him with her children, and besought him, saying, "I entreat you, stay with us." But not even so did Kefa consent, until the daughter of those people who asked him, who had been for a long time vexed with an unclean spirit, and bound with chains, who had been shut up in a closet, having had the demon expelled from her, and the door of the closet opened, came with her chains and fell down at Kefa's feet, saying: "It is right, my master, that you keep my deliverance-feast here today, and not sadden me or my parents." But when Kefa asked what was the meaning of her chains and of her words, her parents, gladdened beyond hope by the recovery of their daughter, were, as it were, thunderstruck with astonishment, and could not speak; but the servants who were in attendance said: "This girl has been possessed of a demon from her seventh year, and used to cut, and bite, and even to tear in pieces, all who attempted to approach her, and this she has never ceased to do for twenty years till the present time. Nor could anyone heal her, or even approach her, for she rendered many helpless, and even destroyed some; for she was stronger than any man, being doubtless strengthened by the power of the demon. But now, as you see, the demon has fled from your presence, and the doors that were shut with the greatest strength have been opened, and she herself stands before you in her sound mind, asking of you to make the day of her recovery joyful both to herself and her parents, and to remain with them." When one of the servants had made this statement, and the chains of their own accord were loosened from her hands and feet, Kefa, being sure that it was by his means that soundness was restored to the girl, consented to remain with them. And he ordered those also who had remained in the lodging, with his wife, to come over; and every one of us having got a separate bedchamber, we

remained; and having taken food in the usual manner, and given praises to YHWH, we went to sleep in our individual apartments.

Book 10

Probation

Chapter 438

But in the morning, after sunrise, I Clement, and Niceta and Aquila, along with Kefa, came to the apartment in which my father and mother were sleeping; and finding them still asleep, we sat down before the door, when Kefa addressed us in such terms as these: "Listen to me, most beloved fellow servants: I know that you have a great affection for your father; therefore I am afraid that you will urge him too soon to take upon himself the yoke of obedience, while he is not yet prepared for it; and to this he may indeed consent, through his affection for you. But this is not to be depended on; for what is done for the sake of men is not worthy of approval, and soon falls to pieces. Therefore it seems to me, that you should permit him to live for a year according to his own judgment; and during that time he may travel with us, and while we are instructing others he may hear with simplicity; and as he hears, if he has any right purpose of acknowledging the truth, he will himself request that he may take up the yoke of Torah observance; or if he do not please to take it, he may remain a friend. For those who do not take it up heartily, when they begin not to be able to bear it, not only cast off that which they had taken up, but by way of excuse, as it were. For their weakness, they begin to speak evil of the way of truth and obedience, and to malign those whom they have not been able to follow or to imitate."

A Difficulty

Chapter 439

To this Niceta answered: "My master Kefa, I say nothing against your right and good counsels; but I wish to say one thing, that thereby I may learn something that I do not know. What if my father should die within the year during which you recommend that he should be put off? He will go down to Geh Hinnom helpless, and so be tormented forever." Then said Kefa: "I embrace your kindly purpose towards your father, and I forgive you in respect of things of which you are ignorant. For do you suppose that, if anyone is thought to have lived righteously, he will forthwith be saved? Do you not think that he must be examined by Him who knows the secrets of men, as to how he has lived righteously, whether it be done according to the rule of the Goyim, obeying their institutions and laws; or for the sake of the friendship of men; or merely from custom, or any other cause; or from necessity, and not on account of righteousness itself, and for the sake of Elohim? For those who have

lived righteously, for the sake of Elohim alone and His righteousness, they will come to ageless rest, and will receive the perpetuity of the heavenly malkuth. For salvation is not attained by force, but by liberty; and not through the favour of men, but by the faith of Elohim. Then, besides, you ought to consider that YHWH knows things beforehand, and knows whether this man is one of His. But if He knows that he is not, what will we do with respect to those things that have been determined by Him from the beginning? But wherein I can, I give counsel: when he is awake, and we sit down together, then do you, as if you wished to learn something, ask a question about those matters that it is small for him to learn; and while we speak to one another, he will gain instruction. But yet wait first to see if he himself asks anything; for if he does so, the occasion of discourse will be all the more fit. But if he does not ask anything, let us by turns put questions to one another, wishing to learn something, as I have said. Such is my judgment. State what is yours.”

A Suggestion

Chapter 440

And when we had commended his right counsel, I Clement said: “In all things, the end for the most part looks back upon the beginning, and the issue of things is similar to their commencement. I hope, therefore, with respect to our father also, since YHWH by your means has given a good beginning, that He will bestow also an ending suitable to the beginning, and worthy of Himself. However, I make this suggestion, that if, as you have said, we begin to speak, in presence of my father, as if for the purpose of discussing some subject, or learning something from one another, you, my master Kefa, ought not to occupy the place of one who has anything to learn; for if he see this, he will rather be offended. For he is convinced that you fully know all things, as indeed you do. How then will it be, if he sees you pretending ignorance? This, as I have said, will rather hurt him, being ignorant of your design. But if we brothers, while we converse among ourselves, are in any doubt, let a fitting solution be given by you to our inquiry. For if he sees even you hesitating and doubting, then truly he will think that no one has knowledge of the truth.”

Free Inquiry

Chapter 441

To this Kefa answered: “Let us not concern ourselves about this; and if indeed it is fitting that he enter the gate of life, YHWH will afford a fitting opportunity; and there will be a beginning from Elohim, and not from man. And therefore, as I have said, let him journey with us, and hear our discussions; but because I saw you in haste, therefore I said that opportunity must be sought; and when Elohim will give it, do you comply with my advice in what I will say.” While we were thus talking, a boy came to

tell us that our father was now awake; and when we were intending to go in to him, he himself came to us, and saluting us with a kiss, after we had sat down again, he said: "Is it permitted to one to ask a question, if he wishes it; or is silence enforced, after the manner of the Pythagoreans?" Then said Kefa: "We do not compel those who come to us either to keep silence continually, or to ask questions; but we leave them free to do as they will knowing that he who is anxious about his salvation, if he feels pain in any part of his being, does not suffer it to be silent. But he who neglects his salvation, no advantage is conferred upon him if he is compelled to ask, excepting this only, that he may seem to be earnest and diligent. So, if you need an answer to your question, ask on."

Good and Evil

Chapter 442

Then the old man said: "There is a saying very prevalent among the Greek philosophers to the effect that there is in reality neither good nor evil in the life of man; but that men call things good or evil as they appear to them, prejudiced by the use and custom of life. For not even murder is really an evil, because it sets the spirit free from the bonds of the flesh. Further, they say that even just judges put to death those who commit crimes; but if they knew homicide to be an evil, just men would not do that. Neither do they say that adultery is an evil; for if the husband does not know, or does not care, there is, they say, no evil in it. But neither, say they, is theft an evil; for it takes away what one does, not possession from another who has it. And, indeed, it ought to be taken freely and openly; but in that it is done secretly, that is rather a reproof of his inhumanity from whom it is secretly taken. For all men ought to have the common use of all things that are in this world; but through injustice one says that this is his, and another that that is his, and so division is caused among men. In short, a certain man, the wisest among the Greeks, knowing that these things are so, says that haverim should have all things common. Now, in *all things* unquestionably wives are included. He says also that, as the air and the sunshine cannot be divided, so neither ought other things to be divided, which are given in this world to all to be possessed in common, but should be so possessed. But I wished to say this, because I am desirous to turn to well doing, and I cannot act well unless I first learn what is good; and if I can understand that, I will thereby perceive what is evil, that is, opposite to good.

Kefa's Authority

Chapter 443

"But I should like that one of you, and not Kefa, should answer what I have said; for it is not fitting to take words and instruction at his hand, with questions; but when he gives a deliverance on any subject, that should be held without answering again.

And therefore, let us keep him as an umpire; so that if at any time our discussion does not come to an issue, he may declare what seems good to him, and so give an undoubted end to doubtful matters. And now therefore I could believe, content with his sole opinion, if he expressed any opinion; and this is what I will do at last. Yet I wish first to see if it is possible by discussion to find what is sought. My wish therefore is that Clement should begin first, and should show if there is any good or evil in substance or in actions.”

Clement's Argument

Chapter 444

To this I answered: “Since indeed you wish to learn from me if there is any good or evil in nature or in act, or whether it is not rather that men, prejudiced by custom, think some things to be good, and others to be evil, forasmuch as they have made a division among themselves of common things, which ought, as you say, to be as common as the air and the sunshine; I think that I ought not to bring before you any statements from any other quarter than from those studies in which you are well versed, and that you support, so that what I say you will receive without hesitation. You assign certain boundaries of all the elements and the heavenly bodies, and these, you say, meet in some without hurt, as in marriages; but in others they are hurtfully united, as in adulteries. And you say that some things are general to all, but other things do not belong to all, and are not general. But not to make a long discussion, I will speak briefly of the matter. The earth that is dry is in need of the addition and admixture of water, that it may be able to produce fruits, without which man cannot live: this is therefore a legitimate conjunction. On the contrary if the cold of hoarfrost be mixed with the earth, or heat with the water, a conjunction of this sort produces corruption; and this, in such things, is adultery.”

Admitted Evils

Chapter 445

Then my father answered: “But as the harmfulness of an inharmonious conjunction of elements or stars is immediately betrayed, so ought also adultery to be immediately shown that it is an evil.” Then I: “First tell me this, whether, as you yourself have confessed, evils are produced from incongruous and inharmonious mixture; and then after that we will inquire into the other matter.” Then my father said: “The nature of things is as you say, my son.” Then I answered: “Since, then, you wish to learn of these things, see how many things there are that no one doubts to be evils. Do you think that a fever, a fire, sedition, the fall of a house, murder, prisons, racks, pains, mournings, and such like, are evils?” Then said my father: “It is

true, my son, that these things are evil, and very evil; or, at all events, whoever denies that they are evil, let him suffer them!”

Existence of Evil on Astrological Principles

Chapter 446

Then I answered: “Since, therefore, I have to deal with one who is skilled in astrological science, I will treat the matter with you according to that science, that, taking my method from those things with which you are familiar, you may the more readily acquiesce. Listen now, therefore: you confess that those things that we have mentioned are evils, such as fevers, conflagrations, and such like. Now these, according to you, are said to be produced by malignant stars, such as the humid Saturn and the hot Mars; but things contrary to these are produced by benignant stars, such as the temperate Jupiter and the humid Venus. Is it not so?” My father answered: “It is so, my son; and it cannot be otherwise.” Then said I: “Since you say, therefore, that good things are produced by good stars—by Jupiter and Venus, for example—let us see what is the product where any one of the evil stars is mixed with the good, and let us understand that that is evil. For you lay it down that Venus makes marriages, and if she have Jupiter in her configuration she makes the marriages chaste; but if Jupiter be not regarding, and Mars be present, then you pronounce that the marriages are corrupted by adultery.” Then said my father: “It is even so.” Then I answered: “Therefore adultery is an evil, seeing that it is committed through the admixture of evil stars; and, to state it in a word all things that you say that the good stars suffer from the mixture of evil stars are undoubtedly to be pronounced to be evil. Those stars, therefore, by whose admixture we have said that fevers, configurations, and other such like evils are produced, those, according to you, work also murders, adulteries, thefts, and also produce haughty and stolid men.”

How to Make Progress

Chapter 447

Then my father said: “Truly you have shown briefly and incomparably that there are evils in actions; but still I should wish to learn this: how *Elohim* justly judges those who sin, as you say, if Genesis compels them to sin?” Then I answered: “I am afraid to speak anything to you, my father, because it becomes me to hold you in all honour, else I have an answer to give you, if it were becoming.” Then says my father: “Speak what occurs to you, my son; for it is not you, but the method of inquiry, that does the wrong, as a modest woman to an incontinent man, if she is indignant for her safety and her honour.” Then I answered “If we do not hold by the principles that we have acknowledged and confessed, but if those things that have

been defined are always loosened by forgetfulness, we will seem to be weaving Penelope's web, undoing what we have done. And therefore we ought either not to acquiesce too easily, before we have diligently examined the doctrine propounded; or if we have once acquiesced, and the proposition has been agreed to, then we ought to keep by what has been once determined, that we may go on with our inquiries respecting other matters." And my father said: "You say well, my son; and I know why you say this: it is because in the discussion yesterday on natural causes, you showed that some malignant power, transferring itself into the order of the stars, excites the lusts of men, provoking them in various ways to sin, yet not compelling or producing sins." To this I answered: "It is well that you remember it; and yet, though you to remember it, you have fallen into error." Then said my father: "Pardon me, my son; for I have not yet much practice in these things: for indeed your discourses yesterday, by their truth, shut me up to agree with you; yet in my consciousness there are, as it were, some remains of fevers, which for a little hold me back from faith, as from health. For I am distracted, because I know that many things, yes, almost all things, have befallen me according to Genesis."

Test of Astrology

Chapter 448

Then I answered: "I will therefore tell you, my father, what is the nature of mathematics, and do you act according to what I tell you. Go to a mathematician, and tell him first that such and such evils have befallen you at such a time, and that you wish to learn of him whence, or how, or through what stars they have befallen you. He will no doubt answer you that a malignant Mars or Saturn has ruled your times, or that some one of them has been periodic; or that someone has regarded you diametrically, or in conjunction, or centrally; or some such answer will he give, adding that in all these someone was not in harmony with the malignant one, or was invisible, or was in the figure, or was beyond the division, or was eclipsed, or was not in contact, or was among the dark stars; and many other like things will he answer, according to his own reasons, and will condescend upon particulars. After him go to another mathematician, and tell him the opposite, that such and such good came to you at that time, mentioning to him the same time, and ask him from what parts of your Genesis this good has come to you, and take care, as I said, that the times are the same with those about which you asked concerning evils. And when you have deceived him concerning the times, see what figures he will invent for you, by which to show that good things ought to have befallen you at those very times. For it is impossible for those treating of the Genesis of men not to find in every quarter, as they call it, of the heavenly bodies, some stars favourably placed, and some unfavourably; for the circle is equally complete in every part, according to mathematics, admitting of diverse and various causes, from which they can take occasion of saying whatever they please.

Astrology Baffled by Free Will

Chapter 449

“For, as usually is the case when the slow of understanding see unfavourable dreams and can make nothing certain out of them, when any event occurs, then they adapt what they saw in the dream to what has occurred; so also, is mathematics. For before anything is past, nothing is declared with certainty; but afterwards they gather the causes of the event. And thus often, when they have been at fault, and the thing has fallen out otherwise, they take the blame to themselves, saying that it was such and such a star that opposed, and that they did not see it; not knowing that their error does not proceed from their unskillfulness in their art, but from the inconsistency of the whole system. For they do not know what those things are that we indeed desire to do, but in regard to which we do not indulge our desires. But we who have learned the reason of this mystery know the cause, since, having freedom of will, we sometimes oppose our desires, and sometimes yield to them. And therefore, the issue of human doings is uncertain, because it depends upon freedom of will. For a mathematician can indeed indicate the desire that a malignant power produces; but whether the acting or the issue of this desire will be fulfilled or not, no one can know before the accomplishment of the thing, because it depends upon freedom of will. And this is why ignorant astrologers have invented to themselves the talk about climacterics as their refuge in uncertainties, as we showed fully yesterday.

People Admitted

Chapter 450

“If you have anything that you wish to say to this, say on.” Then my father: “Nothing can be more true, my son, than what you have stated.” And while we were thus speaking among ourselves, someone informed us that a great multitude of people were standing outside, having assembled for the purpose of hearing. Then Kefa ordered them to be admitted, for the place was large and convenient. And when they had come in, Kefa said to us: “If any one of you wishes, let him address the people and discourse concerning idolatry.” To whom I Clement answered: “Your great benignity and gentleness and patience towards all encourages us, so that we dare speak in your presence, and ask what we please; and therefore, as I said, the gentleness of your disposition invites and encourages all to undertake the precepts of saving doctrine. This I never saw before in any one else, but in you only, with whom there is neither envy nor indignation. Or what do you think?”

No Man Has Universal Knowledge

Chapter 451

Then Kefa said: "These things come not only from envy or indignation; but sometimes there is bashfulness in some persons, fearing that they may not be able to answer fully the questions that may be proposed, and so they avoid the discovery of their want of skill. But no one ought to be ashamed of this, because there is no man who ought to profess that he knows all things; for there is only One who knows all things, even He who also made all things. For if our Master declared that He knew not the day and the hour whose signs even He foretold, and referred the whole to the Father, how will we account it disgraceful to confess that we are ignorant of some things, since in this we have the example of our Master? But this only we profess, that we know those things that we have learned from the Navi Emet; and that those things have been delivered to us by the Navi Emet, which He judged to be sufficient for human knowledge."

Clement's Disclosure

Chapter 452

Then I Clement went on to speak thus: "At Tripolis, when you were disputing against the Goyim, my master Kefa, I greatly wondered at you, that although you were instructed by your father according to the fashion of the Hebrews and in observances of your own Torah and were never polluted by the studies of Greek learning, you argued so magnificently and so incomparably; and that you even touched upon some things concerning the histories of the false elohim, which are usually declaimed in the theatres. But as I perceived that their fables and blasphemies are not so well known to you, I will discourse upon these in your hearing, repeating them from the very beginning, if it pleases you." Then says Kefa: "Say on; you do well to assist my preaching." Then said I: "I will speak, therefore, because you order me, not by way of teaching you, but of making public what foolish opinions the Goyim entertain of the false elohim."

Would that All Elohim's People Were Naviim

Chapter 453

But when I was about to speak, Niceta, biting his lip, beckoned to me to be silent. And when Kefa saw him, he said: "Why would you repress his liberal disposition and noble nature, that you would have him be silent for my honour, which is nothing? Or do you not know, that if all tribes, after they have heard from me the preaching of the truth, and have believed, would betake themselves to teaching, they would gain the greater kavod for me, if indeed you think me desirous of glory? For what so glorious as to prepare talmidim for Moshiach, not who will be silent, and will be saved alone,

but who will speak what they have learned, and will do good to others? I wish indeed that both you, Niceta, and you beloved Aquila, would aid me in preaching the word of Elohim, and the rather because those things in which the Goyim err are well known to you; and not you only, but all who hear me, I wish, as I have said, so to hear and to learn, that they may be able also to teach: for the world needs many helpers, by whom men may be recalled from error." When he had spoken thus, he said to me: "Go on then, Clement, with what you have begun."

Goyim Cosmogony

Chapter 454

And I immediately re-joined: "Seeing that when you were disputing at Tripolis, as I said, you discoursed much concerning the elohim of the Goyim profitably and convincingly, I desire to set forth in your presence the ridiculous legends concerning their origin, both that you may not be unacquainted with the falsehood of this vain superstition, and that the hearers who are present may know the disgraceful character of their error. The wise men, then, who are among the Goyim, say that first of all things was chaos, and that this, through a long time solidifying its outer parts, made bounds to itself and a sort of foundation being gathered, as it were, into the manner and form of a huge egg, within which, in the course of a long time, as within the shell of the egg, there was cherished and vivified a certain animal; and that afterwards, that huge globe being broken, there came forth a certain kind of man of double sex, which they call masculofeminine. This they called Phanetas, from appearing, because when it appeared, they say, and then also light shone forth. And from this, they say that there were produced substance, prudence, motion, and coming together, and from these the skies and the earth were made. From the heaven they say that six males were produced, whom they call Titans; and in like manner, from the earth six females, whom they called Titanides. And these are the names of the males who sprang from the heaven: Oceanus, Coeus, Crios, Hyperion, Iapetus, and Chronos, who amongst us is called Saturn. In like manner, the names of the females who sprang from the earth are these: Theia, Rhea, Themis, Mnemosyne, Tethys, and Hebe.

Family of Saturn

Chapter 455

"Of all these, the firstborn of the heaven took to wife the firstborn of earth; the second the second, and in like manner all the rest. The first male, therefore, who had married the first female, was on her account drawn downwards; but the second female rose upwards, by reason of him to whom she was married; and so each doing in their order, remained in those places that fell to their share by the nuptial lot. From their intercourse they assert that innumerable others sprang. But of these six

males, the one who is called Saturn received in marriage Rhea, and having been warned by a certain oracle that he who should be born of her should be more powerful than himself, and should drive him from his kingdom, he determined to devour all the sons that should be born to him. First, then, there is born to him a son called Hades, who amongst us is called Orcus; and him, for the reason we have just stated, he took and devoured. After him he begot a second son, called Neptune; and him he devoured in like manner. Last of all, he begot him whom they call Jupiter; but him his mother Rhea pitying, by stratagem withdrew from his father when he was about to devour him. And first, indeed, that the crying of the child might not be noticed, she made certain Corybantes strike cymbals and drums, that by the deafening sound the crying of the infant might not be heard.

Their Destinies

Chapter 456

“But when he understood from the lessening of her belly that her child was born, he demanded it, that he might devour it; then Rhea presented him with a large stone, and told him that that was what she had brought forth. And he took it, and swallowed it; and the stone, when it was devoured, pushed and drove forth those sons whom he had formerly swallowed. Therefore Orcus, coming forth first, descended, and occupies the lower, that is, the infernal regions. The second, being above him—he whom they call Neptune—is thrust forth upon the waters. The third, who survived by the artifice of his mother Rhea, she put upon a she-goat and sent into heaven.

Doings of Jupiter

Chapter 457

“But enough of the old wife’s fables and genealogy of the Goyim; for it were endless if I should set forth all the generations of those whom they call elohim, and their immoral doings. But by way of example, omitting the rest, I will detail the immoral deeds of him only whom they hold to be the greatest and the chief, and whom they call Jupiter. For they say that he possesses heaven, as being superior to the rest; and he, as soon as he grew up, married his own sister, whom they call Juno, in which truly he at once becomes like a beast. Juno bears Vulcan; but, as they relate, Jupiter was not his father. However, by Jupiter himself she became mother of Medea; and Jupiter having received a response that one who should be born of her should be more powerful than himself, and should expel him from his kingdom, took her and devoured her. Again Jupiter produced Minerva from his brain, and Bacchus from his thigh. After this, when he had fallen in love with Thetis, they say that Prometheus informed him that, if he lay with her, he who should be born of her should be more powerful than his father; and for fear of this, he gave her in marriage

to one Peleus. Subsequently he had intercourse with Persephone, who was his own daughter by Ceres and by her he begot Dionysius, who was torn in pieces by the Titans. But calling to mind, it is supposed that his own father Saturn might beget another son, who might be more powerful than himself, and might expel him from the kingdom, he went to war with his father, along with his brothers the Titans; and having beaten them, he at last threw his father into prison, and cut off his genitals, and threw them into the sea. But the blood that flowed from the wound, being mixed with the waves, and turned into foam by the constant churning, produced her whom they call Aphrodite, and whom with us they call Venus. From his intercourse with her who was thus his own sister, they say that this same Jupiter begot Cypris, who, they say, was the mother of Cupid.

A Black Catalogue

Chapter 458

“Thus, much of his incests; I will now speak of his adulteries. He defiled Europa, the wife of Oceanus, of whom was born Dodonaeus; Helen, the wife of Pandion, of whom Musaeus; Eurynome, the wife of Asopus, of whom Ogygias; Hermione, the wife of Oceanus, of whom the Graces, Thalia, Euphrosyne, Aglaia; Themis, his own sister, of whom the Hours, Eurynomia, Dice, Irene; Themisto, the daughter of Inachus, of whom Arcas; Idaea, the daughter of Minos, of whom Asterion; Phoenissa, the daughter of Alphion, of whom Eudymion; Io, the daughter of Inachus, of whom Epaphus; Hippodamia and Isione, daughters of Danaus, of whom Hippodamia was the wife of Olenus, and Isione of Orchomenus or Chryses; Carme, the daughter of Phoenix, of whom was born Britomartis, who was an attendant of Diana; Callisto, the daughter of Lycaon, of whom Orcas; Lybee, the daughter of Munantius, of whom Belus; Latona, of whom Apollo and Diana; Leandia, the daughter of Enrymedon, of whom Coron; Lysithea, the daughter of Evenus, of whom Helenus; Hippodamia, the daughter of Bellerophon, of whom Sarpedon; Megaclite, the daughter of Macarius, of whom Thebe and Locrus; Niobe, the daughter of Phoronens, of whom Argus and Pelasgus; Olympias, the daughter of Neoptolemus, of whom Alexander; Pyrrha, the daughter of Prometheus, of whom Helmetheus; Protogenia and Pandora, daughters of Deucalion, of whom he begot Aethelius, and Dorus, and Melera, and Pandorus; Thaicrucia, the daughter of Proteus, of whom was born Nymphheus; Salamis, the daughter of Asopus, of whom Saracon; Taygete, Electra, Maia, Plutide, daughters of Atlas, of whom respectively he begot Lacedaemon, Dardanus. Mercury, and Tantalus; Phthia, the daughter of Phoroneus, of whom he begot Achaeus; Chonia, the daughter of Aramnus, of whom he begot Lacon; Chalcea, a nymph, of whom was born Olympus; Charidia, a nymph, of whom Alcanus; Chloris, who was the wife of Ampycus, of whom Mopsus was born; Cotonia, the daughter of Lesbus, of whom Polymedes; Hippodamia, the daughter of Anicetus; Chrysogenia, the daughter of Peneus, of whom was born Thissaeus.

Vile Transformation of Jupiter

Chapter 459

“There are also innumerable adulteries of his of which no offspring was the result, which it would be tedious to enumerate. But amongst those whom we have mentioned, he violated some being transformed, like a magician. In short, he seduced Antiope, the daughter of Nycteus, when turned into a satyr, and of her were born Amphion and Zethus; Alemene, when changed into her husband Amphitryon, and of her was born Hercules; Aegina, the daughter of Asopus, when changed into an eagle, of whom Aeacus was born. So also he defiled Ganymede, the son of Dardanus, being changed into an eagle; Manthea, the daughter of Phocus, when changed into a bear, of whom was born Arctos; Danae, the daughter of Acrisius, being changed into gold, of whom Perseus; Europa, the daughter of Phoenix, changed into a bull, of whom were born Minos, Rhadamanthus, and Sarpedon; Eurymedusa, the daughter of Achelaus, being changed into an ant, of whom Myrmidon; Thalia, the nymph, being changed into a vulture, of whom were born the Palisci, in Sicily; Imandra, the daughter of Geneanus, at Rhodes, being changed into a shower; Cassiopeia, being changed into her husband Phoenix, and of her was born Anchinus; Leda, the daughter of Thestius, being changed into a swan, of whom was born Helen; and again the same, being changed into a star, and of her were born Castor and Pollux; Lamia, being changed into a lapwing; Mnemosyne, being changed into a shepherd, of whom were born the nine Muses; Nemesis, being changed into a goose; the Cadmian Semele, being changed into fire, and of her was born Dionysius. By his own daughter Ceres he begot Persephone, whom also herself he defiled, being changed into a dragon.

Why an Elohim?

Chapter 460

“He also committed adultery with Europa, the wife of his own uncle Oceanus, and with her sister Eurynome, and punished their father; and he committed adultery with Plute, the daughter of his own son Atlas, and condemned Tantalus, whom she bore to him. Of Larisse, the daughter of Orchomenus, he begot Tityon, whom also he consigned to punishment. He carried off Dia, the wife of his own son Ixion, and subjected him to perpetual punishment; and almost all the sons who sprang from his adulteries he put to violent deaths; and indeed the sepulchers of almost all of them are well known. Yea, the sepulcher of this parricide himself, who destroyed his uncles and defiled their wives, who committed whoredom with his sisters, this magician of many transformations, is shown among the Cretans, who, although they know and acknowledge his horrid and incestuous deeds, and tell them to all, yet are

not ashamed to confess him to be an elohim. Whence it seems to me to be wonderful, yea, exceeding wonderful, how he who exceeds all men in immorality and crimes, has received that devoted and good name that is above every name, being called the father of Elohim and men; unless he who rejoices in the evils of men has persuaded evil, miserable spirits to confer honor above all others upon him whom he saw to excel all others in crimes, in order that he might allure all to the imitation of his evil deeds.

Folly of Polytheism

Chapter 461

“But also the sepulchres of his sons, who are regarded amongst these as Elohim, are openly pointed out, one in one place, and another in another: that of Mercury at Hermopolis; that of the Cyprian Venus at Cyprus; that of Mars in Thrace; that of Bacchus at Thebes, where he is said to have been torn in pieces; that of Hercules at Tyre, where he was burnt with fire; that of Aesculapius in Epidaurus. And all these are spoken of, not only as men who have died, but as immoral men who have been punished for their crimes; and yet they are adored as Elohim by foolish men.

Dead Men Deified

Chapter 462

“But if they choose to argue, and affirm that these are rather the places of their birth than of their burial or death, the former and ancient doings will be convicted from those at hand and still recent, since we have shown that they worship those whom they themselves confess to have been men, and to have died, or rather to have been punished; as the Syrians worship Adonis, and the Mitsrayim Osiris; the Trojans, Hector; Achilles is worshipped at Leuconesus, Patroclus at Pontus, Alexander the Macedonian at Rhodes; and many others are worshipped, one in one place and another in another, whom they do not doubt to have been dead men. Whence it follows that their predecessors also, falling into a like error, conferred divine honour upon dead men, who may have had some power or some skill, and especially if they had stupefied stolid men by magical fantasies.

Metamorphoses

Chapter 463

“Hence there has now been added, that the poets also adorn the falsehoods of error by elegance of words, and by sweetness of speech persuade that mortals have been made immortal; yea more, they say that men are changed into stars, and trees, and animals, and flowers, and birds, and fountains, and rivers. And but that it might

seem to be a waste of words, I could even enumerate almost all the stars, and trees, and fountains, and rivers, which they assert to have been made of men; yet, by way of example, I will mention at least one of each class. They say that Andromeda, the daughter of Cepheus, was turned into a star; Daphne, the daughter of the river Lado, into a tree; Hyacinthus, beloved of Apollo, into a flower; Callisto into the constellation that they call Arctos; Progne and Philomela, with Tereus, into birds; that Thysbe in Cilicia was dissolved into a fountain; and Pyramus, at the same place, into a river. And they assert that almost all the stars, trees, fountains, and rivers, flowers, animals, and birds, were at one time human beings.”

Inconsistency of Polytheists

Chapter 464

But Kefa, when he heard this, said: “According to them, then, before men were changed into stars, and the other things that you mention, the heaven was without stars and the earth without trees and animals; and there were neither fountains, nor rivers, nor birds. And without these, how did those men themselves live, who afterwards were changed into them, since it is evident that, without these things, men could not live upon the earth?” Then I answered: “But they are not even able to observe the worship of their own elohim consistently; for every one of those whom they worship has something dedicated to himself, from which his worshippers ought to abstain: as they say the olive is dedicated to Minerva, the she-goat to Jupiter, seeds to Ceres, wine to Bacchus, water to Osiris, the ram to Hammon, the stag to Diana, the fish and the dove to the demon of the Syrians, fire to Vulcan; and to each one, as I have said, is there something specifically set apart, from which the worshippers are bound to abstain, for the honor of those to whom they are set apart. But were one abstaining from one thing, and another from another, by doing honor to one of the elohim, they incur the anger of all the rest; and therefore, if they would conciliate them all, they must abstain from all things for the honor of all, so that, being self-condemned by a just sentence before the day of judgment, they should perish by a most wretched death through starvation.

Buttresses of the Goyim

Chapter 465

“But let us return to our purpose. What reason is there, yea, rather, what madness possesses the minds of men, that they worship and adore as a god, a man whom they not only know to be disobedient, immoral, profane—I mean Jupiter—incestuous, a parricide, an adulterer, but even proclaim him publicly as such in their songs in the theatres? Or if by means of these deeds he has deserved to be a god, and then also, when they hear of any murderers, adulterers, parricides, incestuous

persons, they ought to worship them also as elohim. But I cannot understand why they venerate in him what they execrate in others.” Then Kefa answered: “Since you say that you cannot understand it, learn of me why they venerate immorality in him. In the first place, it is that, when they themselves do like deeds, they may know that they will be acceptable to him, inasmuch as they have but imitated him in his immorality. In the second place, because the ancients have left these things skilfully composed in their writings, and elegantly engrafted in their verses. And now, by the aid of youthful education, since the knowledge of these things adheres to their tender and simple minds, it cannot without difficulty be torn from them and cast away.”

Allegories

Chapter 466

When Kefa had said this, Niceta answered: “Do not suppose, my master Kefa, but that the learned men of the Goyim have certain plausible arguments, by which they support those things that seem to be blameworthy and disgraceful. And this I state, not as wishing to confirm their error (for far be it from me that such a thing should ever come into my thought); but yet I know that there are amongst the more intelligent of them certain defenses, by which they are accustomed to support and color over those things that seem to be absurd. And if it please you that I should state some of them—for I am to some extent acquainted with them—I will do as you order me.” And when Kefa had given him leave, Niceta proceeded as follows.

Cosmogony of Orpheus

Chapter 467

“All the literature among the Greeks that is written on the subject of the origin of antiquity is based upon many authorities, but especially two, Orpheus and Hesiod. Now their writings are divided into two parts, in respect of their meaning—that is the literal and the allegorical; and the vulgar crowd has flocked to the literal—but all the eloquence of the philosophers and learned men is expended in admiration of the allegorical. It is Orpheus, then, who says that at first there was chaos, ageless, unbounded, unproduced, and that from it all things were made. He says that this chaos was neither darkness nor light, neither moist nor dry, neither hot nor cold, but that it was all things mixed together, and was always one unformed mass; yet that at length, as it were after the manner of a huge egg, it brought forth and produced from itself a certain double form, which had been wrought through immense periods of time, and which they call masculo-feminine, a form concrete from the contrary admixture of such diversity; and that this is the principle of all things, which came of pure matter, and which, coming forth, effected a separation of the four elements, and made heaven of the two elements that are first, *fire and air*, and earth of the others,

earth and water; and of these he says that all things now are born and produced by a mutual participation of them. So much for Orpheus.

Hesiod's Cosmogony

Chapter 468

“But to this Hesiod adds, that after chaos the heaven and the earth were made immediately, from which he says that those eleven were produced (and sometimes also he speaks of them as twelve) of whom he makes six males and five females. And these are the names that he gives to the males: Oceanus, Coeus, Crius, Hyperion, Iapetus, and Chronos, who is also called Saturn. Also, the names of the females are: Theia, Rhea, Themis, Mnemosyne, and Tethys. And these names they thus interpret allegorically. They say that the number is eleven or twelve: that the first is nature itself, which also they would have to be called Rhea, from Flowing; and they say that the other ten are her accidents, which also they call qualities; yet they add a twelfth, namely Chronos, who with us is called Saturn, and him they take to be time. Therefore, they assert that Saturn and Rhea are time and matter; and these, when they are mixed with moisture and dryness, heat and cold, produce all things.

Allegorical Interpretation

Chapter 469

“She therefore (Rhea, or nature), it is said, produced, as it were, a certain bubble that had been collecting for a long time; and it being gradually collected from the spirit that was in the waters, swelled, and being for some time driven over the surface of matter, from which it had come forth as from a womb, and being hardened by the rigor of cold, and always increasing by additions of ice, at length was broken off and sunk into the deep, and drawn by its own weight, went down to the infernal regions; and because it became invisible it was called Hades, and is also named Orcus or Pluto. And since it was sunk from the top to the bottom, it gave place to the moist element to flow together; and the grosser part, which is the earth, was laid bare by the retirement of the waters. They say, therefore, that this freedom of the waters, which was formerly restrained by the presence of the bubble, was called Neptune after the bubble attained the lowest place. After this, when the cold element had been sucked down to the lower regions by the concretion of the icy bubble, and the dry and the moist element had been separated, there being now no hindrance, the warm element rushed by its force and lightness to the upper regions of the air, being borne up by wind and storm. This storm, therefore, which in Greek is called *kataigio*, they called Aegis—that is, a she-goat; and the fire that ascended to the upper regions they called Jupiter; so they say that he ascended to Olympus riding on a she-goat.

Allegory of Jupiter, Etc.

Chapter 470

“Now this Jupiter the Greeks would have to be called from his living, or giving life, but our people from his giving succour. They say, therefore, that this is the living substance, which, placed in the upper regions, and drawing all things to itself by the influence of heat, as by the convolution of the brain, and arranging them by the moderation of a certain tempering, is said from his head to have produced wisdom, whom they call Minerva, who was called Athena by the Greeks on account of her immortality; who, because the father of all created all things by his wisdom, is also said to have been produced from his head, and from the principal place of all, and is represented as having formed and adorned the whole world by the regulated admixture of the elements. Therefore, the forms that were impressed upon matter, that the world might be made, because they are constrained by the force of heat, are said to be held together by the energy of Jupiter. And since there are enough of these, and they do not need anything new to be added to them, but each thing is repaired by the produce of its own seed, the hands of Saturn are said to be bound by Jupiter; because, as I have said, time now produces from matter nothing new: but the warmth of seeds restores all things according to their kinds; and no birth of Rhea—that is, no increase of flowing matter—ascends further. And therefore, they call that first division of the elements the mutilation of Saturn, because he cannot any more produce a world.

Other Allegories

Chapter 471

“And of Venus they give forth an allegory to this effect. When, say they, the sea was put under the air, and when the brightness of the skies shone more pleasantly, being reflected from the waters, the loveliness of things, which appeared fairer from the waters, was called Venus; and she, *it*, being united with the air as with her, *its*, own brother, so as to produce beauty, which might be the object of desire, is said to have given birth to Cupid. In this way, therefore, as we have said, they teach that Chronos, who is Saturn, is allegorically time; Rhea is matter; Hades—that is, Orcus—is the depth of the infernal regions; Neptune is water; Jupiter is air—that is, the element of heat; Venus is the loveliness of things; Cupid is desire, which is in all things, and by which posterity is propagated, or even the reason of things, which gives delight when wisely looked into. Hera—that is, Juno—is said to be that middle air that descends from heaven to earth. To Diana, whom they call Proserpine, they hand over the air below. They say that Apollo is the Sun himself, which goes round the heaven; that Mercury is speech, by which a reason is rendered for everything;

that Mars is unrestrained fire, which consumes all things. But not to delay you by enumerating everything, those who have the more abstruse intelligence concerning such things think that they give fair and just reasons, by applying this sort of allegory to every one of their objects of worship.”

Uselessness of These Allegories

Chapter 472

When Niceta had thus spoken, Aquila answered: “Whoever he was that was the author and inventor of these things, he seems to me to have been very rebellious, since he covered over those things that seem to be pleasant and seemly, and made the ritual of his superstition to consist in base and shameful observances, since those things that are written according to the letter are manifestly unseemly and base; and the whole observance of their religion consists in these, that by such crimes and impieties they may teach men to imitate their elohim whom they worship. For in these allegories what profit can there be to them? For although they are framed so as to be decent, yet no use is derived from them for worship, nor for amendment of morals.

The Allegories: an Afterthought

Chapter 473

“Whence it is the more evident that prudent men, when they saw that the common superstition was so disgraceful, so base, and yet they had not learned any way of correcting it, or any knowledge, endeavoured with what arguments and interpretations they could to veil unseemly things under seemly speech, and not, as they say, to conceal seemly reasons under unseemly fables. For if this was the case, surely their statues and their pictures would never be made depicting their vices and crimes. The swan, which committed adultery with Leda, would not be represented, nor the bull that committed adultery with Europa; nor would they turn into a thousand monstrous shapes him whom they think better than all. And assuredly, if the great and wise men who are amongst them knew that all this is fiction and not truth, would not they charge with rebellion and blasphemy those who should exhibit a picture or carve an image of this sort, to the injury of the Elohim? In short, let them present a melek of their own time in the form of an ox, or a goose, or an ant, or a vulture, and let them write the name of their melek upon it, and set up such a statue or figure in a public place, and they will soon be made to feel the wrong of their deed, and the greatness of its punishment.

Like False Elohim, Like Worshippers

Chapter 474

“But since those things rather are true that the public baseness testifies, and concealments have been sought and fabricated by prudent men to excuse them by seemly speeches, therefore are they not only not prohibited, but even in the very mysteries figures are produced of Saturn devouring his sons, and of the boy hidden by the cymbals and drums of the Corybantes; and with respect to the mutilation of Saturn, what better proof of its truth could there be, than that even his worshippers are mutilated, by a like miserable fate, in honour of their Elohim? Since then these things are manifestly seen, who will be found of so little sense, yea, of such stolidity, that he does not perceive that those things are true concerning the unfortunate Elohim, which their more unfortunate worshippers attest by the wounding and mutilation of their bodies?”

Writings of the Poets

Chapter 475

“But if, as they say, these things, so creditably and obediently done, are dispensed by so discreditable and disobedient a ritual, assuredly he is evil, whoever either gave forth these things at first, or persists in fulfilling them, now that they have sadly been given forth. And what will we say of the scrolls of the poets? Ought not they, if they have debased the honourable and obedient deeds of the Elohim with base fables, to be forthwith cast away and thrown into the fire, that they may not persuade the still tender age of boys that Jupiter himself, the chief of the elohim, was a parricide towards his parents, incestuous towards his sisters and his daughters, and even impure towards boys; that Venus and Mars were adulterers, and all those things that have been spoken of above? What do you think of this matter, my master Kefa?”

All for the Best

Chapter 476

Then he answered: “Be sure, beloved Aquila, that all things are done by the good providence of Elohim that the cause that was to be contrary to the truth should not only be infirm and weak, but also base. For if the assertion of error had been stronger and more truth-like, anyone who had been deceived by it would not easily return to the path of truth. If even now, when so many immoral and disgraceful things are related concerning the elohim of the Goyim, scarce any one forsakes the base error, how much more if there had been in it anything seemly and truth-like? For the mind is with difficulty transferred from those things with which it has been imbued in early youth; and on this account, as I said, it has been affected by YHWH, that the substance of error should be both weak and base. But all other things also YHWH

dispenses fitly and advantageously, although the method of the divine dispensation, as good, and the best possible, is not clear to us who are ignorant of the causes of things.”

Further Information Sought

Chapter 477

When Kefa had thus said, I Clement asked Niceta that he would explain to us, for the sake of instruction, some things concerning the allegories of the Goyim, which he had carefully studied; “for,” said I, “it is useful that when we dispute with the Goyim, we should not be unacquainted with these things.” Then said Niceta: “If my master Kefa permits me, I can do as you ask me.” Then said Kefa: “Today I have given you leave to speak in opposition to the Goyim, as you know.” And Niceta said: “Tell me then, Clement, what you would have me speak about.” And I said to him: “Inform us how the Goyim represent matters concerning the supper of the elohim, which they had at the marriage of Peleus and Thetis. What do they make of the shepherd Paris, and what of less Juno, Minerva, and Venus, between whom he acted as judge? What of Mercury, and what of the apple, and the other things that follow in order?”

Explanation of Mythology

Chapter 478

Then Niceta: “The affair of the supper of the elohim stands in this wise. They say that the banquet is the world, that the order of the elohim sitting at table is the position of the heavenly bodies. Those whom Hesiod calls the first children of heaven and earth, of whom six were males and six females, they refer to the number of the twelve signs, which go round all the world. They say that the dishes of the banquet are the reasons and causes of things, sweet and desirable, which in the shape of inferences from the positions of the signs and the courses of the stars, explain how the world is ruled and governed. Yet they say these things exist after the free manner of a banquet, inasmuch as the mind of everyone has the option whether he will taste aught of this sort of knowledge, or whether he will refrain; and as in a banquet no one is compelled, but everyone is at liberty to eat, so also the manner of philosophizing depends upon the choice of the will. They say that discord is the lust of the flesh, which rises up against the purpose of the mind, and hinders the desire of philosophizing; and therefore, they say that the time was that in which the marriage was celebrated. Thus, they make Peleus and the nymph Thetis to be the dry and the moist element, by the admixture of which the substance of bodies is composed. They hold that Mercury is speech, by which instruction is conveyed to the mind; that Juno is chastity, Minerva courage, Venus lust, Paris the understanding. If therefore, say they, there is in a man a barbarous and uncultivated understanding, and ignorant of right judgment, he will despise chastity and courage, and will give

the prize, which is the apple, to lust; and thereby, ruin and destruction will come not only upon himself, but also upon his countrymen and the whole race. These things, therefore, it is in their power to compose from whatever matter they please; yet they can be adapted to every man; because if anyone has a pastoral and rustic and uncultivated understanding, and does not wish to be instructed, when the heat of his body will make suggestions concerning the pleasure of lust, straightway he despises the virtues of studies and the blessings of knowledge, and turns his mind to bodily pleasures. And hence it is that implacable wars arise, cities are destroyed, and countries fall, even as Paris, by the abduction of Helen, armed the Greeks and the barbarians to their mutual destruction.”

Interpretation of Scripture

Chapter 479

Then Kefa, commending his statement, said: “Ingenious men, as I perceive, take many counterfeits—looking much like truth—from the things that they read; and therefore great care is to be taken, that when the law of Elohim is read, it be not read according to the understanding of our own mind. For there are many sayings in the set-apart Scriptures that can be drawn to that sense that everyone has preconceived for himself; and this ought not to be done. For you ought not to seek a foreign and extraneous sense, which you have brought from without, which you may confirm from the authority of the Scriptures, but to take the sense of truth from the Scriptures themselves; and therefore it behoves you to learn the meaning of the Scriptures from him who keeps it according to the truth handed down to him from his fathers, so that he can authoritatively declare what he has rightly received. But when one has received an entire and firm rule of truth from the Scriptures, it will not be improper if he contribute to the establishment of true doctrine anything from common education and from liberal studies, which, it may be, he has attached himself to in his boyhood; yet so that, when he has learned the truth, he renounce falsehood and pretence.”

A Word of Exhortation

Chapter 480

And when he had said this, he looked to our father, and said: “You therefore, old man, if indeed you care for your spirit’s safety, that when you desire to be separated from the body, it may, in consequence of what may be a short conversion, find ageless rest, ask about whatever you please, and seek counsel, that you may be able to cast off any doubt that remains in you. For even to young men the time of life is uncertain; but to old men it is not even uncertain, for there is no doubt that there is but little time remaining to them. And therefore both young and old ought to be very earnest about their conversion and repentance, and to be taken up with the

adornment of their spirits for the future with the worthiest ornaments, such as the halakah of truth, the favour of chastity, the splendour of righteousness, the fairness of obedience, and all other things with that it becomes a reasonable mind to be adorned. Then, besides, they should break off from unseemly and unbelieving companions, and keep company with the faithful, and frequent those assemblies in which subjects are handled relating to chastity, righteousness and obedience; to pray to YHWH always heartily, and to ask of Him those things that ought to be asked of Elohim; to give thanks to Him; to repent truly of their past doings; in some measure also, if possible, by deeds of mercy towards the poor, to help their repentance. For by these means pardon will be more easily bestowed, and mercy will be sooner shown to the merciful.

Earnestness

Chapter 481

“But if he who comes to repentance is of more advanced age, he ought the more to give thanks to Elohim, because, having received the knowledge of the truth, after all the violence of carnal lust has been broken, there awaits him no fight of contest, by which to repress the pleasures of the body rising against the mind. It remains, therefore, that he be exercised in the learning of the truth, and in works of mercy, that he may bring forth fruits worthy of repentance; and that he do not suppose that the proof of conversion is shown by length of time, but by strength of devotion and of purpose. For minds are wide open to Elohim; and He does not take account of times, but of hearts. For He approves if any one, on hearing the preaching of the truth, does not delay, nor spend time in negligence, but immediately, and if I may say so, in the same moment, abhorring the past, begins to desire things to come, and burns with love of the heavenly kingdom.

All Ought to Repent

Chapter 482

“So, let no one of you longer neither dissemble nor look backwards, but willingly approach to the Good News of the Malkuth of YHWH. Let not the poor man say, ‘When I will become rich, then I will be converted.’ Elohim does not ask money of you, but a merciful heart and a compliant mind. Nor let the rich man delay his conversion by reason of worldly care, while he thinks how he may dispose the abundance of his fruits; nor say within himself, ‘What will I do? Where will I bestow my fruits?’ Nor say to his being, ‘You have much goods laid up for many years; feast and rejoice.’ For it will be said to him, ‘You fool, this night your spirit will be taken from time, and whose will those things be that you have provided?’ Therefore, let every age, every sex, and every condition, haste to repentance, that they may obtain

ageless life. Let the young be thankful that they put their necks under the yoke of discipline in the very violence of their desires. The old also are themselves praiseworthy, because they change for the fear of Elohim, the custom of a long time in that they have been sadly occupied.

The Sure Word of Prophecy

Chapter 483

“Let no one therefore put off. Let no one delay. For what occasion is there for delaying to do well? Or are you afraid, lest, when you have done well, you do not find the reward as you supposed? And what loss will you sustain if you do well without reward? Would not conscience alone be sufficient in this? But if you find as you anticipate, will you not receive great things for small, and ageless for temporal? But I say this for the sake of the unbelieving. For the things that we preach are as we preach them; because they cannot be otherwise, since they have been promised by the word of the navi.

“A Faithful Saying, and Worthy of All Acceptation”

Chapter 484

“But if any one desires to learn exactly the truth of our preaching, let him come to hear! Let him ascertain what the Navi Emet Y’shua is; and then at length all doubtfulness will cease to him, unless with obstinate mind he resist those things that he finds to be true. For there are some whose only object it is to gain the victory in any way whatever, and who seek praise for this rather than their salvation. These ought not to have a single word addressed to them, lest both the noble word suffer injury, and condemn to ageless death him who is guilty of the wrong done to it. For what is there in respect of which any one ought to oppose our preaching, or in respect of which the word of our preaching is found to be contrary to the belief of what is true and honourable? It says that YHWH the Father, the Creator of all, is to be honoured, as also His Son, who alone knows Him and His will, and who alone is to be believed concerning all things that He has enjoined. For He alone is the Torah and the Torah-giver, and the righteous Judge, whose law decrees that YHWH, who is Elohim of all, is to be honoured by a sober, chaste, just, and merciful life, and that all hope is to be placed in Him alone.

Errors of the Philosophers

Chapter 485

“But someone will say that precepts of this sort are given by the philosophers also. Nothing of the kind: for they do indeed give commandments concerning justice and

sobriety, but they are ignorant that *elohim* is the recompenser of good and evil deeds; and therefore, their laws and precepts only shun a public accuser, but cannot purify the conscience. For why should one fear to sin in secret, who does not know that there is a witness and a judge of secret things? Besides, the philosophers in their precepts add that even the *elohim*, who are demons, are to be honored; and this alone, even if in other respects they seemed worthy of approval, is sufficient to convict them of the most dreadful disobedience, and condemn them by their own sentence, since they declare indeed that there is one *elohim*, yet command that many be worshipped, by way of humoring human error. But also the philosophers say that *Elohim* is not angry, not knowing what they say. For anger is evil when it disturbs the mind so that it loses right counsel. But that anger that punishes the immoral does not bring disturbance to the mind; but it is one and the same affection, so to speak, which assigned rewards to the good and punishment to the evil; for if He should bestow blessings upon the good and the evil, and confer equal rewards upon the obedient and the disobedient, He would appear to be unjust rather than good.

YHWH's Longsuffering

Chapter 486

"But you say, 'Neither ought *Elohim* to do evil.' You say truly; nor does He. But those who have been created by Him, while they do not believe that they are to be judged, indulging their pleasures, have fallen away from obedience and righteousness. But you will say, 'If it is right to punish the immoral, they ought to be punished immediately when they do immorally.' You indeed do well to make haste; but He who is ageless, and from whom nothing is secret, inasmuch as He is without end, in the same proportion is His patience extended, and He regards not the swiftness of vengeance, but the causes of salvation. For He is not so much pleased with the death as with the conversion of a sinner. Therefore, in short, He has bestowed upon men set-apart immersion, to which, if any one makes haste to come, and for the future remains without stain, all his sins are thenceforth blotted out, which were committed in the time of his ignorance.

Philosophers Not Benefactors of Men

Chapter 487

"For what have the philosophers contributed to the life of man by saying that *Elohim* is not angry with men? They only teach them to have no fear of any punishment or judgment, and thereby take away all restraint from sinners. Or what have they benefited the human race, who have said that there is no *Elohim*, but that all things happen by chance and accident? What but those men, hearing this, and thinking that there is no judge, no guardian of things, are driven headlong, without fear of any

one, to every deed that either rage, or avarice, or lust may dictate. For they truly have much benefited the life of man who have said that nothing can be done apart from Genesis; that is, that everyone, ascribing the cause of his sin to Genesis, might in the midst of his crimes declare himself innocent, while he does not wash out his guilt by repentance, but doubles it by laying the blame upon fate. And what will I say of those philosophers who have maintained that the elohim are to be worshipped, and such elohim as were described to you a little while ago? What else was this but to decree that vices, crimes, and base deeds should be worshipped? I am ashamed of you, and I pity you, if you have not yet discovered that these things were unworthy of belief, and rebellious, and disgusting, or if, having discovered and ascertained them to be evil, you have nevertheless worshipped them as if they were good, yes, even the best.

Y'shua Moshiach the Navi Emet

Chapter 488

“Then, besides, of what sort is that which some of the philosophers have presumed to speak even concerning Elohim, though they are mortal, and can only speak by opinion concerning invisible things, or concerning the origin of the world, since they were not present when it was made, or concerning the end of it, or concerning the treatment and judgment of spirits in the infernal regions, forgetting that it belongs indeed to a Reasonable Man to know things present and visible, but that it is the part of prophetic foreknowledge alone to know things past, and things future, and things invisible? These things, therefore, are not to be gathered from conjectures and opinions, in which men are greatly deceived, but from faith in prophetic truth, as this doctrine of ours is. For we speak nothing of ourselves, nor announce things gathered by human judgment; for this were to deceive our hearers. But we preach the things that have been committed and revealed to us by the Navi Emet, Y'shua. And concerning His prophetic foreknowledge and power, if any one, as I have said, wishes to receive clear proofs, let him come instantly and be alert to hear, and we will give evident proofs by which he will seem not only to hear the power of prophetic foreknowledge with his ears, but even to see it with his eyes and handle it with his hand; and when he has entertained a sure faith concerning Him, he will without any labor take upon him the yoke of righteousness and obedience; and so great sweetness will he perceive in it, that not only will he not find fault with any labor being in it, but will even desire something further to be added and imposed upon him.”

Appion and Anubion

Chapter 489

And when he had said this, and more to the same purpose, and had cured some who were present who were infirm and possessed of demons, he dismissed the crowds, while they gave thanks and praised YHWH Elohim, charging them to come to the same place on the following days also for the sake of hearing. And when we were together at home, and were preparing to eat, one entering told us that Appion Pleistonices, with Anubion, were lately come from Antioch, and were lodging with Shimon. Then my father, when he heard this, rejoiced, and said to Kefa: "If you permit me, I should like to go and salute Appion and Anubion, for they are great haverim of mine; and it may be that I will be able to persuade Anubion to dispute with Clement on the subject of Genesis." Then Kefa said: "I consent; and I commend you, because you respect your haverim. But consider how all things occur to you according to your wish by Elohim's providence; for, behold, not only have *the objects* of proper affection been restored to you by the appointment of Elohim, but also the presence of your haverim is arranged for you." Then said my father: "Truly I consider that it is so as you say." And when he had said this, he went away to Anubion.

A Transformation

Chapter 490

But we, sitting with Kefa the whole night, asking questions, and learning of him on many subjects, remained awake through very delight in his teaching and the sweetness of his words; and when it was daybreak, Kefa, looking at me and my brothers, said: "I wonder what has befallen your father." And while he was speaking my father came in, and found Kefa speaking to us about him. And when he had saluted he began to apologize, and to explain the reason why he had remained abroad. But we, looking at him, were horrified; for we saw on him the face of Shimon, yet we heard the voice of our father. And when we shrank from him, and cursed him, my father was astonished at our treating him so harshly and barbarously. Yet Kefa was the only one who saw his natural countenance; and he said to us: "Why do you curse your father?" And we, along with our mother, answered him: "He appears to us to be Shimon, though he has our father's voice." Then Kefa: "You indeed know only his voice, which has not been changed by the sorceries; but to me also his face, which to others appears changed by Shimon's art, is known to be that of your father Faustianus." And looking at my father, he said: "The cause of the dismay of your wife and your sons is this—the appearance of your countenance does not seem to be as it was, but the face of the detestable Shimon appears in you."

Excitement in Antioch

Chapter 491

And while he was thus speaking, one of those returned who had gone before to Antioch, and said to Kefa: "I wish you to know, my master Kefa, that Shimon at Antioch, doing many signs and prodigies in public, has inculcated upon the people nothing but what tends to excite hatred against you, calling you a magician, a sorcerer, a murderer; and to such an extent has he stirred up hatred against you, that they greatly desire, if they can find you anywhere, even to devour your flesh. And therefore, we who were sent before, seeing the city greatly moved against you, met together in secret, and considered what ought to be done.

A Stratagem

Chapter 492

"And when we saw no way of getting out of the difficulty, there came Cornelius the centurion, being sent by Caesar to the president of Caesarea on public business. Him we sent for alone, and told him the reason why we were sorrowful, and entreated him that, if he could do anything, he should help us. Then he most readily promised that he would straightway put him to flight, if only we would aid his plans. And when we promised that we would be active in doing everything, he said, 'Caesar has ordered sorcerers to be sought out and destroyed in the city of Rome and through the provinces, and a great number of them have been already destroyed. I will therefore give out, through my haverim, that I am come to apprehend that magician, and that I am sent by Caesar for this purpose, that he may be punished with the rest of his fraternity. Let your people, therefore, who are with him in disguise, intimate to him, as if they had heard it from some quarter that I am sent to apprehend him; and when he hears this, he is sure to take to flight. Or if you think of anything better, tell me. Why need I say more?' It was so done by those of ours who were with him, disguised for the purpose of acting as spies on him. And when Shimon learned that this was come upon him, he received the information as a great kindness conferred upon him by them, and took to flight. He therefore departed from Antioch, and, as we have heard, came hither with Athenodorus.

Shimon's Design in the Transformation

Chapter 493

"All we, therefore, who went before you, considered that in the meantime you should not go up to Antioch, till we see if the hatred of you that he has sown among the people be in any degree lessened by his departure." When he who had come from Antioch had imparted this information, Kefa, looking to our father, said, "Faustinianus, your countenance has been transformed by Shimon HaMag, as is

evident; for he, thinking that he was being sought for by Caesar for punishment, has fled in terror, and has placed his own countenance upon you, so that you might be apprehended instead of him, and put to death, that so he might cause sorrow to your sons." But my father, when he heard this, crying out, said with tears: "You have judged rightly, O Kefa: for Anubion also, who is very friendly with me, began to inform me in a certain mysterious way of his plots; but to my detriment I did not believe him, because I had done him no harm."

Great Grief

Chapter 494

And when all of us, along with my father, were agitated with sorrow and weeping, meantime Anubion came to us, intimating to us that Shimon had fled during the night, making for Judaea. But seeing our father lamenting and bewailing himself, and saying, "Wretch that I am, not to believe when I heard that he is a magician! What has befallen wretched me, that on one day, being recognized by my wife and my sons, I have not been able to rejoice with them, but have been rolled back to the former miseries that I endured in my wandering!" But my mother, tearing her disheveled hair, bewailed much more bitterly, we also, confounded at the change of our father's countenance, were, as it were, thunderstruck and beside ourselves, and could not understand what was the matter. But Anubion, seeing us all thus afflicted, stood like one dumb. Then Kefa, looking at us his sons, said: "Believe me that this is your very father; so also I charge you that you respect him as your father. For Elohim will afford some opportunity on which he will be able to put off the countenance of Shimon, and to recover the manifest figure of your father—that is, his own."

How It All Came About

Chapter 495

Then, turning to my father, he said: "I gave you leave to salute Appion and Anubion, who, you said, were your haverim from boyhood, but not that you should speak with Shimon." Then my father said: "I confess I have sinned." Then said Anubion: "I also with him beg and entreat of you to pardon the old man—good and noble man as he is. It is sad that he was seduced and imposed upon by the magician in question; for I will tell you how the thing was done. When he came to salute us, it seemed by coincidence that at that very time we were standing around him, hearing him tell that he intended to flee away that night, for that he had heard that some persons had come even to this city of Laodike to apprehend him by command of the emperor, but that he wished to turn all their rage against this Faustinianus, who has lately come hither. And he said to us: 'Only you make him sup with us, and I will compound a certain ointment, with which, when he has supped, he will anoint his face, and from that time he will seem to all to have my countenance. But you first anoint your faces

with the juice of a certain herb, that you may not be deceived as to the change of his countenance, so that to all except you he will seem to be Shimon.’

A Scene of Mourning

Chapter 496

“And when he said this, I said to him, ‘And what advantage will you gain from this deed?’ Then Shimon said: ‘In the first place, that those who are seeking me may lay hold on him, and so give over the search for me. But if he be punished by Caesar, that his sons may have much sorrow, who forsook me, and fled to Kefa, and are now his assistants.’ Now I confess to you, Kefa, what is true. I did not dare then tell Faustinianus; but neither did Shimon give us opportunity of speaking with him in private and disclosing to him fully Shimon’s design. Meantime, about the middle of the night, Shimon has fled away, making for Judaea. And Athenodorus and Appion have gone to convoy him; but I pretended bodily indisposition, that I might remain at home, and make him return quickly to you, if he may in any way be concealed with you, lest, being seized by those who are inquest of Shimon, he be brought before Caesar, and perish without cause. And now, in my anxiety about him, I have come to see him, and to return before those who have gone to convoy Shimon come back.” And turning to us, Anubion said: “I, Anubion, indeed see the true countenance of your father, because I was previously anointed by Shimon himself, as I have told you, that the real face of Faustinianus might appear to my eyes; whence I am astonished and wonder at the art of Shimon HaMag, because you standing here do not recognize your father.” And while my father and mother, and all of us, wept for the things that had befallen, Anubion, moved with compassion, also wept.

A Counterplot

Chapter 497

Then Kefa, moved with compassion, promised that he would restore the face of our father, saying to him: “Listen, Faustinianus: As soon as the error of your transformed countenance will have conferred some advantage on us, and will have under served the designs that we have in view, then I will restore to you the true form of your countenance; on condition, however, that you first dispatch what I will command you.” And when my father promised that he would with all his might fulfil everything that he might charge him with, provided only that he might recover his own countenance, Kefa thus began: “You have heard with your own ears, that one of those who had been sent before has returned from Antioch, and told us how Shimon, while he was there, stirred up the multitudes against me, and inflamed the whole city into hatred of me, declaring that I am a magician, and a murderer, and a deceiver, so that they are eager, if they see me, even to eat my flesh. Do therefore what I tell you: leave Clement with me, and go before us to Antioch, with your wife,

and your sons Faustus and Faustinus. And I will also send others with you, whom I think fit, who will observe whatsoever I command them.

A Mine Dug

Chapter 498

“When therefore you come with them to Antioch, as you will be thought to be Shimon, stand in a public place, and proclaim your repentance, and say: ‘I Shimon declare to you, and confess that all that I said concerning Kefa was false: for he is neither a seducer, nor a magician, nor a murderer, nor any of the things that I spoke against him; but I said all these things under the instigation of madness. I therefore entreat you, even I myself, who a short time ago gave you causes of hatred against him, that you think no such thing concerning him. But lay aside your hatred cease from your indignation; because he is truly sent by Elohim for the salvation of the world—a talmid and apostle of the Navi Emet. So I advise, exhort, and charge you that you hear him, and believe him when he preaches to you the truth, lest if you despise him, your very city suddenly perish. But I will tell you why I now make this confession to you. This night an angel of Elohim rebuked me for my immorality, and scourged me terribly, because I was an enemy to the herald of the truth. Therefore, I entreat you, that even if I myself should ever again come to you, and attempt to say anything against Kefa, you will not receive nor believe me. For I confess to you, I was a magician, a seducer, a deceiver; but I repent, for it is possible by repentance to blot out former evil deeds.’”

A Case of Conscience

Chapter 499

When Kefa made this intimation to my father, he answered: “I know what you wish; do not trouble yourself further: for I understand and know what I am to undertake when I come to the place.” And Kefa gave him further instruction, saying: “When therefore you come to the place, and see the people turned by your discourse, and laying aside their hatred, and returning to their longing for me, send and tell me, and I will come immediately; and when I come, I will without delay set you free from this strange countenance, and restore to you your own, which is known to all your haverim.” And having said this, he ordered my brothers to go with him, and at the same time our mother Matthidia, and some of our haverim. But my mother refused to go along with him, and said: “It seems as if I should be an adulteress if I were to associate with the countenance of Shimon; but if I be compelled to go along with him, it is at all events impossible that I can lie in the same bed with him; but I do not know if I can consent even to go with him.” And when she stoutly refused, Anubion began to exhort her, saying: “Believe me and Kefa. But does not even his voice persuade you that he is your husband Faustinianus, whom truly I love not less than

you do? And, in short, I also myself will come with you.” And when Anubion had said this, my mother promised that she would go with him.

A Pious Fraud

Chapter 500

Then said I: “Elohim arranges our affairs to our liking; for we have with us Anubion an astrologer, with whom, if we come to Antioch, we will dispute with all earnestness on the subject of Genesis.” And when our father had set out, after the middle of the night, with those whom Kefa had ordered to accompany him, and with Anubion; in the morning, before Kefa went to the discussion, those men returned who had convoyed Shimon, namely Appion and Athenodorus, and came to us inquiring after my father. But Kefa, when he was informed of their coming, ordered them to enter. And when they were seated, they asked, “Where is Faustinianus?” Kefa answered: “We do not know; for since the evening that he went to you, no one of his haverim has seen him. But yesterday morning Shimon came inquiring for him; and because we gave him no answer, I know not what he meant, but he said that he was Faustinianus. But when nobody believed him, he went and lamented, and threatened that he would destroy himself; and afterwards he went away towards the text ends here, not saying where.

A Competition in Lying

Chapter 501

When Appion heard this, and those who were with him, they raised a great howling, saying: “Why have you done this? Why did you not receive him?” And when Athenodorus was going to tell me that it was my father Faustinianus himself, Appion prevented him, and said: “We have learned from someone that he has gone with Shimon, and that at the entreaty of Faustinianus himself, being unwilling to see his sons, because they are Yahudaïm. When therefore we heard this, we came to inquire after him here; but since he is not here, it appears that he must have spoken truly who told us that he has gone with Shimon. This, therefore, we tell you.” But I Clement, when I understood the designs of Kefa, that he wished to make them suppose that the old man would be required at their hands, so that they might be afraid and flee away, I began to aid his design, and said to Appion: “Listen, dear Appion: what we believe to be good, we wish to deliver to our father also; but if he will not receive it, but rather, as you say, flees away through abhorrence of us—it may be harsh to say so—we care nothing about him.” And when I had said this, they departed, cursing my cruelty, and followed the track of Shimon, as we learned on the following day.

Success of the Plot

Chapter 502

Meantime, while Kefa was daily, according to his custom, teaching the people, and working many miracles and cures, after ten days came one of our people from Antioch, sent by my father, informing us how my father stood in public, accusing Shimon, whose face indeed he seemed to wear, and extolling Kefa with unmeasured praises, and commending him to all the people, and making them long for him, so that all were changed by his speech, and longed to see him; and that many had come to love Kefa so much, that they raged against my father in his character of Shimon, and thought of laying hands on him, because he had done such wrong to Kefa! "So," said he, "make haste, lest he be murdered; for he sent me with speed to you, being in great fear, to ask you to come without delay, that you may find him alive, and also that you may appear at the favorable moment, when the city is growing in affection towards you." He also told us how, as soon as my father entered the city of Antioch, the whole people were gathered to him, supposing him to be Shimon; and he began to make public confession to them all, according to what the restoration of the people demanded: for all, as many as came, both noble and common, both rich and poor, hoping that some miracles would be wrought by him in his usual way, he addressed thus:

Truth Told by Lying Lips

Chapter 503

"It is long that the divine patience bears with me, Shimon, the most miserable of men; for whatever you have wondered at in me was done, not by means of truth, but by the lies and tricks of demons, that I might subvert your faith and condemn my own spirit. I confess that all things that I said about Kefa were lies; for he never was either a magician or a murderer, but has been sent by Elohim for the salvation of you all; and if from this hour you think that he is to be despised, be assured that your very city may suddenly be destroyed. *But, you will ask,* 'What is the reason that I make this confession to you of my own accord?' I was vehemently rebuked by an angel of Elohim this night, and most severely scourged, because I was his enemy. I therefore entreat you, that if from this hour even I myself will ever open my mouth against him, you will drive me from your sight; for that foul demon, who is an enemy to the salvation of men, speaks against him through my mouth, that you may not attain to life by his means. For what miracle could the magic art show you through me? I made brazen dogs bark, and statues move, men change their appearances, and suddenly vanish from men's sight; and for these things you ought to have cursed the magic art, which bound your spirits with devilish fetters, that I might show you a vain

miracle, that you might not believe Kefa, who cures the sick in the name of Him by whom he is sent, and expels demons, and gives sight to the blind, and restores health to the palsied, and raises the dead.”

Faustinianus is Himself Again

Chapter 504

Whilst he made these and similar statements, the people began to curse him, and to weep and lament because they had sinned against Kefa, believing him to be a magician or immoral man. But the same day, at evening, Faustinianus had his own face restored to him, and the appearance of Shimon HaMag left him. Now Shimon, hearing that his face on Faustinianus had contributed to the kavod of Kefa, came in haste to anticipate Kefa, and intending to cause by his art that his likeness should be taken from Faustinianus, when Moshiach had already accomplished this according to the word of His apostle. But Niceta and Aquila, seeing their father's face restored after the necessary proclamation, gave thanks to Elohim, and would not suffer him to address the people any more.

Kefa's Entry into Antioch

Chapter 505

But Shimon began, though secretly, to go amongst his haverim and acquaintances, and to malign Kefa more than before. Then all spat in his face, and drove him from the city, saying: “You will be chargeable with your own death, if you think of coming hither again, speaking against Kefa.” These things being known *at Laodike*, Kefa ordered the people to meet on the following day; and having ordained one of those who followed him as Mevaqqre over them, and others as zaqenim, and having immersed multitudes, and restored to health all who were troubled with sicknesses or demons, he stayed there three days longer; and all things being properly arranged, he bade them farewell, and set out from Laodike, being much longed for by the people of Antioch. And the whole city began to hear, through Niceta and Aquila, that Kefa was coming. Then all the people of the city of Antioch, hearing of Kefa's arrival, went to meet him, and almost all the old men and the nobles came with ashes sprinkled on their heads, in this way testifying their repentance, because they had listened to the magician Shimon, in opposition to his preaching.

Kefa's Thanksgiving

Chapter 506

Stating these and such like things, they bring to him those distressed with sicknesses, and tormented with demons, paralytics also, and those suffering diverse

perils; and there were an infinite number of sick people collected. And when Kefa saw that they not only repented of the evil thoughts they had entertained of him through means of Shimon, but also that they showed so entire faith in Elohim, that they believed that all who suffered from every sort of ailment could be healed by him, he spread out his hands towards heaven, pouring out prayers with tears, and gave thanks to YHWH, saying: "I bless You, O Father YHWH, worthy of all praise, who have deigned to fulfill every word and promise of Your Son, that every creature may know that You alone are Elohim in heaven and in earth."

Miracles

Chapter 507

With such sayings, he went up on a height, and ordered all the multitude of sick people to be ranged before him, and addressed them all in these words: "As you see me to be a man like to yourselves, do not suppose that you can recover your health from me, but through Him who, coming down from heaven, has shown to those who believe in Him a perfect medicine for body and spirit. Hence let all this people are witnesses to your declaration, that with your whole heart you believe in Master Y'shua HaMoshiach, that they may know that themselves also may be saved by Him." And when all the multitude of the sick with one voice cried out that He is the true Elohim whom Kefa preaches, suddenly an overpowering light of the favour of Elohim appeared in the midst of the people; and the paralytics being cured, began to run to Kefa's feet, the blind to shout on the recovery of their sight, the lame to give thanks on regaining the power of walking, the sick to rejoice in restored health; some even who were barely alive, being already without consciousness or the power of speech, were raised up; and all the lunatics, and those possessed of demons, were set free.

Success

Chapter 508

So great favour of His power did the Shechinah—YHWH's presence— show on that day, that all, from the least to the greatest, with one voice confessed YHWH; and not to delay you with many words, within seven days, more than ten thousand men, believing in Elohim, were immersed and consecrated by sanctification: so that Theophilus, who was more exalted than all the men of power in that city, with all eagerness of desire consecrated the great palace of his house under the name of a qahal, and a chair was placed in it for the apostle Kefa by all the people; and the whole multitude assembling daily to hear the word, believed in the healthful doctrine that was avouched by the efficacy of cures.

Joyful Ending

Chapter 509

Then I Clement, with my brothers and our mother, spoke to our father, asking him whether any remnants of unbelief remained in him. And he said: "Come and you will see, in the presence of Kefa, what an increase of faith has grown in me." Then Faustinianus approached, and fell down at Kefa's feet, saying: "The seeds of your word, which the field of my mind has received, are now sprung up, and have so advanced to fruitful maturity, that nothing is wanting but that you separate me from the chaff by that spiritual reaping-hook of yours, and place me in the garner of YHWH, making me partaker of the divine table." Then Kefa, with all alacrity grasping his hand, presented him to me, Clement, and my brothers, saying: "As Elohim has restored your sons to you, their father, so also your sons restore their father to Elohim." And he proclaimed a fast to all the people, and on the next Shabbat he immersed him; and in the midst of the people, taking occasion from his conversion, he related all his fortunes, so that the whole city received him as an angel, and paid him no less honour than they did to the apostle.

Kefa's Letter to Ya'akov

*Kefa to Ya'akov, the master and Mebakker of the devoted
Congregation, under the Father of all, through Y'shua
HaMoshiach, wishes shalom always.*

Doctrine of Reserve

Chapter 510

Knowing, my brother, your eager desire after that which is for the advantage of us all, I beg and beseech you not to communicate to any one of the Goyim the scrolls of my preachings which I sent to you, nor to any one of our own tribe before trial; but if anyone has been proved and found worthy, then to commit them to him, after the manner in which Moshe delivered *his scrolls* to the Seventy who succeeded to his chair. Wherefore also the fruit of that caution appears even till now. For his countrymen keep the same rule of monarchy and polity everywhere, being unable in any way to think otherwise, or to be led out of the way of the much-indicating Scriptures. For, according to the rule delivered to them, they Endeavour to correct the discordances of the Scriptures, if any one not being blest to know the traditions

is confounded at the various utterances of the naviim. Wherefore they charge no one to teach, unless he has first learned how the Scriptures must be used. And thus, they have amongst them one Elohim, one Torah, one hope.

Misrepresentation of Kefa's Doctrine

Chapter 511

In order, therefore, that the like may also be to those among us as to these Seventy, give the scrolls of my preachings to our brethren, with the like mystery of initiation, that they may indoctrinate those who wish to take part in teaching; for if it be not so done, our word of truth will be rent into many opinions. And this I know, not as being a navi, but as already seeing the beginning of this very evil. For some from among the Goyim have rejected my Torah-observant preaching, attaching themselves to certain Torahless and trifling preaching of the man who is my enemy. And these things some have attempted while I am still alive, to transform my words by certain various interpretations, in order to bring about the dissolution of the Torah; as though I also myself were of such a mind, but did not freely proclaim it, which YHWH forbid! For such a thing were to act in opposition to the Torah of YHWH which was spoken by Moshe, and was borne witness to by our Master in respect of its ageless continuance; for thus he spoke: "The skies and the earth shall pass away, but one *yud* or one punctuation mark shall in no wise pass from the Torah." And this He has said that all things might come to pass. But these men, professing, I know not how, to know my mind, undertake to explain my words, which they have heard of me, more intelligently than I who spoke them, telling their talmidim that this is my meaning, which indeed I never thought of. But if, while I am still alive, they dare thus to misrepresent me, how much more will those who shall come after me dare to do so!

Initiation

Chapter 512

Therefore, that no such thing may be done, for this end I have prayed and besought you not to communicate the scrolls of my preaching that I have sent you to any one, whether of our own tribe or of another tribe, before trial; but if any one, having been tested, has been found worthy, then to hand them over to him, according to the initiation of Moshe, by which he delivered *his scrolls* to the Seventy who succeeded to his chair; in order that thus they may keep the faith, and everywhere deliver the rule of truth, explaining all things after our tradition; lest being themselves dragged down by ignorance, being drawn into error by conjectures after their mind, they bring others into the like pit of destruction. Now the things that seemed good to me, I have fairly pointed out to you; and what seems good to you, do you, my master, becomingly perform. Farewell.

An Adjuration Concerning the Receivers of the Book

Chapter 513

513:1 Therefore Ya'akov, having read the letter, sent for the zaqenim; and having read it to them, said: "Our Kefa has strictly and becomingly charged us concerning the establishing of the truth, that we should not communicate the scrolls of his preachings, which have been sent to us, to any one at random, but to one who is good and obedient, and who wishes to teach, and who is circumcised, and faithful. And these are not all to be committed to him at once; that, if he be found injudicious in the first, the others may not be entrusted to him. For this reason let him be proved not less than six years. And then according to the initiation of Moshe, he *that is to deliver the scrolls* should bring him to a river or a fountain, which is living water, where the regeneration of the righteous takes place, and should make him, not swear-for that is not according to Torah-but to stand by the water and adjure, as we ourselves, when we were re-generated, were made to do for the sake of not stoning. 513:2 "And let him say: 'I take to witness heaven, earth, water, in which all things are comprehended, and in addition to all these, that, air also that pervades all things, and without which I cannot breathe, that I will always be obedient to him who gives me the scrolls of the preachings; and those same scrolls that he may give me, I will not communicate to any one in any way, either by writing them, or giving them in writing, or giving them to a writer, either myself or by another, or through any other initiation, or trick, or method, or by keeping them carelessly, or placing them before *any one*, or granting him permission *to see them*, or in any way or manner whatsoever communicating them to another; unless I will ascertain one to be worthy, as I myself have been judged, or even more so, and that after a probation of not less than six years; but to one who is obedient and good, chosen to teach, as I have received them, so I will commit them, doing these things also according to the will of my Mevaqqre.

513:3 "But otherwise, though he were my son or my brother, or my friend, or otherwise in any way pertaining to me by kindred, if he be unworthy, that I will not vouchsafe the favor to him, as is not fitting; and I will neither be terrified by plot nor mollified by gifts. But if even it should ever seem to me that the scrolls of the preachings given to me are not true, I will not so communicate them, but will give them back. And when I go abroad, I will carry them with me, whatever of them I have in my possession. But if I be not minded to carry them about with me, I will not suffer them to be in my house, but will deposit them with my Mevaqqre, having the same faith, and setting out from the same persons *as myself*. But if it befalls me to be sick, and in expectation of death, and if I be childless, I will act in the same manner. But if I die having a son who is not worthy, or not yet capable, I will act in the same manner. For I will deposit them with my Mevaqqre, in order that if my son, when he grows up, be worthy of the trust, he may give them to him as his father's bequest, according to the terms of this engagement.

513:4 "And that I will thus do, I again call to witness heaven, earth, water, in which all things are enveloped, and in addition to all these, the allpervading air, without which I cannot breathe, that I will always be obedient to him who gives me these

scrolls of the preachings, and will observe in all things as I have engaged, or even something more. To me, therefore, keeping this covenant, there will be a part with the devoted ones; but to me doing anything contrary to what I have covenanted, may the universe be hostile to me, and the all-pervading ether, and the Elohim who is over all, to whom none is superior, than whom none is greater. But if even I should come to the acknowledgment of another elohim, I now swear by him also, be he or be he not, that I will not do otherwise. And in addition to all these things, if I will lie, I will be accursed living and dying, and will be punished with everlasting punishment. 513:5 "And after this, let him partake of bread and salt with him who commits them to him."

The Adjuration Accepted

Chapter 514

Ya'akov having thus spoken, the zaqenim were in an agony of terror. Therefore Ya'akov, perceiving that they were greatly afraid, said: "Hear me, brothers and fellow-servants. If we should give the scrolls to all indiscriminately, and they should be corrupted by any daring men, or be perverted by interpretations, as you have heard that some have already done, it will remain even for those who really seek the truth, always to wander in error. For this reason, it is better that they should be with us, and that we should communicate them with all the aforementioned care to those who wish to live obediently, and to save others. But if any one, after taking this adjuration, will act otherwise, he will with good reason incur ageless punishment. For why should not he who is the cause of the destruction of others not be destroyed himself?" The zaqenim, therefore, being pleased with the sentiments of Ya'akov exclaimed, "Blessed be He who, as foreseeing all things, has graciously appointed you as our Mevaqqre; "and when they had said this, we all rose up, and prayed to the Father and YHWH of all, to whom be kavod forever. Amein.

Clement's Letter to Ya'akov

CLEMENT to Ya'akov, the Master, and the Mevaqqre of Mevaqqrim, who rules Yahrushalayim, the set-apart qahal of the Ivrim, and the congregations everywhere excellently rounded by the providence of YHWH, with the zagenim and attendants, and the rest of the brothers, shalom be always.

Kefa's Martyrdom

Chapter 515

Be it known to you, my master, that Simeon, who, for the sake of the true faith, and the most sure foundation of his doctrine, was set apart to be the foundation of the qahal, and for this end was by Y'shua Himself, with His truthful mouth, named Kefa, the first-fruits of our Master, the first of the shlichim; to whom first the Father revealed the Son; whom the Moshiach, with good reason, blessed; the called, and elect, and associate at table and in the journeyings of Moshiach; the excellent and approved talmid, who, as being fittest of all, was commanded to enlighten the darker part of the world, namely the West, and was enabled to accomplish it,—and to what extent do I lengthen my discourse, not wishing to indicate what is sad, which yet of necessity, though reluctantly, I must tell you—he himself, by reason of his immense love towards men, having come as far as Rome, clearly and publicly testifying, in opposition to the immoral one who withstood him, that there is to be a good King over all the world, while saving men by his Elohim-inspired doctrine, himself, by violence, exchanged this present existence for life.

The Anointing Of Clement

Chapter 516

But about that time, when he was about to die, the brothers being assembled together, he suddenly seized my hand, and rose up, and said in presence of the qahal: "Hear me, brothers and fellow-servants. Since, as I have been taught by the Master and Teacher Y'shua Moshiach, whose apostle I am, the day of my death is approaching, I lay hands upon this Clement as your Mevaqqre; and to him I entrust my chair of discourse, even to him who has journeyed with me from the beginning to the end, and thus has heard all my discourses—who, in a word, having had a share

in all my trials, has been found steadfast in the faith; whom I have found, above all others, obedient, philanthropic, pure, learned, chaste, good, upright, largehearted, and striving generously to bear the ingratitude of some of the talmidim. For this reason, I communicate to him the power of binding and loosing, so that with respect to everything that he will decree in the earth, it will be decreed in the skies. For he will bind what ought to be bound, and loose what ought to be loosed, as knowing the role of the qahal. Therefore, hear him, as knowing that he who grieves the Mevaqqre of the truth sins against Moshiach and offends YHWH the Father of all. For this reason, he will not live; and therefore, it becomes him who presides to hold the place of a physician, and not to cherish the rage of an irrational beast."

"I Am Not Fit To Be Mevaqqre"

Chapter 517

While he thus spoke, I knelt to him, and entreated him, declining the honour and the authority of the chair. But he answered: "Concerning this matter do not ask me; for it has seemed to me to be good that thus it be, and all the more if you decline it. For this chair has not need of a presumptuous man, ambitious of occupying it, but of one obedient in conduct and deeply skilled in the word of Elohim. But show me a better than yourself, who has travelled more with me, and has heard more of my discourses, and has learned better the regulations of the qahal, and I will not force you to do well against your will. But it will not be in your power to show me your superior; for you are the choice first-fruits of the multitudes saved through me. However, consider this further, that if you do not undertake the administration of the qahal, through fear of the danger of sin, you may be sure that you sin more, when you have it in your power to help the righteous, who are, as it were, at sea and in danger, and will not do so, providing only for your own interest, and not for the common advantage of all. But that it behoves you altogether to undertake the danger, while I do not cease to ask it of you for the help of all, you well understand. The sooner, therefore, you consent, so much the sooner will you relieve me from anxiety.

The Recompense of the Reward

Chapter 518

"But I myself also, O Clement, know the grieves and anxieties, and dangers and reproaches, that are appointed you from the uninstructed multitudes; and these you will be able to bear nobly, looking to the great reward of patience bestowed on you by Elohim. But also consider this fairly with me: When has Moshiach need of your aid? Now, when the immoral one has sworn war against His bride; or in the time to come, when He will reign victorious, having no need of further help? Is it not evident

to anyone who has even the least understanding that it is now? Therefore, with all goodwill hasten in the time of the present necessity to do battle on the side of this good King, whose character it is to give great rewards after victory. Therefore, take the oversight gladly; and all the more in good time, because you have learned from me the administration of the qahal, for the safety of the brothers who have taken refuge with us.

A Charge

Chapter 519

"However, I wish, *in the presence of all*, to remind you, for the sake of all, of the things belonging to the administration. It becomes you, living without reproach, with the greatest earnestness to shake off all the cares of life, being neither a surety nor an advocate nor involved in any other worldly business. For Moshiach does not wish to appoint you either a judge or an arbitrator in business or negotiator of the worldly affairs of the present life, lest, being confined to the present cares of men, you should not have opportunity by the word of truth to separate the good among men from the bad. But let the talmidim perform these offices to one another, and not withdraw you from the discourses that are able to save. For as it is immoral for you to undertake worldly cares and to omit the doing of what you have been commanded to do, so it is sin for every talmid if they do not stand by one another even in worldly necessities. And if all do not understand to take order that you be without care in respect of the things in which you ought to be, let them learn it from the attendants; that you may have the care of the qahal always, in order both to your administering it well, and to your holding forth the words of truth.

The Duty of a Mevaqqre

Chapter 520

"Now, if you were occupied with worldly cares, you should deceive both yourself and your hearers. For not being able, on account of occupation, to point out the things that are advantageous, both you should be punished, as not having taught what was profitable, and they, not having learned, should perish by reason of ignorance. Why do you then preside over them without anxiety, so as to send forth seasonably the words that are able to save them; and so let them listen to you, knowing that whatever the ambassador of the truth will bind upon earth is bound also in heaven, and what he will loose is loosed. But you will bind what should be bound, and loose what should be loosed? And these, and such like, are the things that relate to you as Mevaqqre.

Duties of Zaqenim

Chapter 521

"And with respect to the zaqenim, take these instructions. Above all things, let them join the young at the proper time in marriage, anticipating the entanglements of youthful lusts. But neither let them neglect the marriage of those who are already old; for lust is vigorous even in some old men. Lest, therefore, fornication find a place among you, and bring upon you a grave pestilence, take precaution, and search, lest at any time the fire of adultery be secretly kindled among you. For adultery is a very terrible thing, even such that it holds the second place in respect of punishment, the first being assigned to those who are in error, even although they be chaste. Why then do you, as zaqenim of the qahal, exercise the spouse of Moshiach to chastity (by the spouse I mean the body of the qahal); for if she is understood to be chaste by her royal Bridegroom, she will obtain the greatest honour; and you, as wedding guests, will receive great commendation? But if she be caught having sinned, she herself indeed will be cast out; and you will suffer punishment, if at any time her sin has been through your negligence.

"Do Good Unto All"

Chapter 522

"Above all things then be careful about chastity; for fornication has been marked out as a bitter thing in the estimation of YHWH. But there are many forms of fornication, as also Clement himself will explain to you. The first is adultery, that a man should not enjoy his own wife alone, or that a woman should not enjoy her own husband alone. If anyone is chaste, he is able also to love fellow humans, on account of which he will obtain ageless mercy. For as adultery is a great evil, so showing love to other people is the greatest good. So love all your brothers with sober and compassionate eyes, performing to orphans the part of parents, to widows that of husbands, affording them sustenance with all kindliness, arranging marriages for those who are in their prime, and for those who are without a profession, the means of necessary support through employment; giving work to the capable, and alms to the incapable.

"Let Brotherly Love Continue"

Chapter 523

"But I know that you will do these things if you fix love into your minds; and for its entrance there is one only fit means, namely, the common partaking of food. See to it then that you are frequently one another's guests as you are able, and that you may continue in it. For it is the cause of well doing, and well-doing of salvation. Therefore, all of you present your provisions in common to all your brothers in Elohim, knowing that, giving temporal things, you will receive ageless things. Much

more feed the hungry, and give drink to the thirsty, and clothing to the naked; visit the sick; showing yourselves to those who are in prison, help them as you are able, and receive strangers into your houses with all cheerfulness. However, not to speak in detail, love of fellow humans will teach you to do everything that is good, as animosity to people suggests ill-doing to those who will not be saved.

“Whatsoever Things are Honest”

Chapter 524

"Let the brothers who have causes to be settled not be judged by the worldly authorities; but let them by all means be reconciled by the zaqenim of the qahal, yielding ready obedience to them. Moreover, also, flee avarice, inasmuch as it is able, under pretext of temporal gain, to deprive you of ageless blessings. Carefully keep your balances, your measures, your weights, and the things belonging to your business, just. Be faithful with respect to your trusts. Moreover, you will persevere in doing these things, and things similar to these, until the end, if you have in your hearts an ineradicable remembrance of the judgment that is from Elohim. For who would sin, being persuaded that at the end of life there is a judgment appointed by the righteous Elohim, who only now is long-suffering and good, that the good may in future enjoy forever unspeakable blessings; but the sinners being found as evil, will obtain an eternity of unspeakable punishment. And, indeed, it would be reasonable to doubt that these things are so, were it not that the Navi of the truth has said and sworn that it will be.

Doubts to be Satisfied

Chapter 525

"So then, being talmidim of the Navi Emet, laying aside doublemindedness, from which comes ill-doing, eagerly undertake well-doing. But if any of you doubt concerning the things that I have said are to be, let him confess it without shame, if he cares for his own inner being, and he will be satisfied by the Mevaqqre. But if he has believed rightly, let his conduct be with confidence, as fleeing from the great fire of condemnation, and entering into the ageless good malkuth of Elohim.

Duties of Azariim

Chapter 526

"Moreover let the attendants of the qahal, going about with intelligence, be as eyes to the Mevaqqre, carefully inquiring into the doings of each member of the qahal,

ascertaining who is about to sin, in order that, being arrested with admonition by the Mevaqqre, he may, to his benefit, not accomplish the sin. Let them check the disorderly, that they may not desist from assembling to hear the discourses, so that they may be able to counteract by the word of truth those anxieties that fall upon the heart from every side by means of worldly casualties and evil communications; for if they long remain without instruction, they become fuel for the fire. And let them learn who are suffering under bodily disease, and let them bring them to the notice of the multitude who do not know of them, that they may visit them, and supply their wants according to the judgment of the Mevaqqre. Yea, though they do this without his knowledge, they do nothing amiss. These things, then, and things like to these, let the attendants attend to.

Duties of Morim

Chapter 527

"Let the morim instruct, being first instructed; for it is a work relating to the spirits of men. For the teacher of the word must understand the various judgments of the learners. The morim must therefore be learned, and irreproachable, of much experience, and approved, as you will know that Clement is, who is to be your instructor after me. For it were too much for me now to go into details. However, if you be of one mind, you will be able to reach the haven of rest, where is the peaceful city of the great King.

The Vessel of the Congregation

Chapter 528

"For the whole business of the qahal is like unto a great ship, bearing through a violent storm - men who are of many places, and who desire to inhabit the city of the good malkuth. Let, therefore, Elohim be your shipmaster; and let the pilot be likened to Moshiach, the mate to the Mevaqqre, and the sailors to the attendants, the midshipmen to the morim, the multitude of the brothers to the passengers, the world to the sea; the foul winds to temptations, persecutions, and dangers; and all manner of afflictions to the waves; the land winds and their squalls to the discourses of deceivers and false naviim; the promontories and rugged rocks to the judges in high places threatening terrible things; the meetings of two seas, and the wild places, to unreasonable men and those who doubt of the promises of truth. Let hypocrites be regarded as like to pirates. Moreover, account the strong whirlpool, and the Tartarean Charybdis, and murderous wrecks, and deadly foundering's, to be nothing but sins. In order, therefore, that, sailing with a fair wind, you may safely reach the haven of the hoped for city, pray so as to be heard. But prayers become audible by good deeds.

Incidents of the Voyage

Chapter 529

"Let therefore the passengers remain quiet, sitting in their own places, lest by disorder they occasion rolling or careening. Let the midshipmen give heed to the fare. Let the attendants neglect nothing with which they are entrusted; let the zaqenim, like sailors, studiously arrange what is needful for each one. Let the Mevaqqre, as the mate, wakefully ponder the words of the pilot alone. Let Moshiach, even Y'shua, be loved as the pilot, and alone believed in the matters of which He speaks; and let all pray to Elohim for a prosperous voyage. Let those sailing expect every tribulation, as traveling over a great and troubled sea, the world: sometimes, indeed, disheartened, persecuted, dispersed, hungry, thirsty, naked, hemmed in; and, again, sometimes united, congregated, at rest; but also sea-sick, giddy, vomiting, that is, confessing sins, like disease-producing bile—I mean the sins proceeding from bitterness, and the evils accumulated from disorderly lusts, by the confession of which, as by vomiting, you are relieved of your disease, attaining healthful safety by means of carefulness.

The Mevaqqre's Labours and Reward

Chapter 530

"But know all of you that the Mevaqqre labours more than you all; because each of you suffers his own affliction, but he his own and that of everyone. So, O Clement, preside as a helper to everyone according to your ability, being careful of the cares of all. Whence I know that in your undertaking the administration, I do not confer but receive a favour. But take courage and bear it generously, as knowing that YHWH will recompense you when you enter the haven of rest, the greatest of blessings, a reward that cannot be taken from you, in proportion as you have undertaken more labour for the safety of all. So that, if many of the brothers should hate you on account of your lofty righteousness, their hatred will not at all hurt you, but the love of the righteous Elohim will greatly benefit you. Therefore, endeavour to shake off the praise that arises from injustice and to attain the profitable praise that is from Moshiach on account of righteous administration."

The People's Duties

Chapter 531

Having said this and more than this, he looked again upon the multitude, and said: "And you also, my beloved brothers and fellow-servants, be subject to the Mevaqqre of the truth in all things, knowing this, that he who grieves him has not received

Moshiach, with whose chair he has been entrusted; and he who has not received Moshiach will be regarded as having despised the Father; so he will be cast out of the good malkuth. On this account, endeavor to come to all the assemblies, lest as deserters you incur the charge of sin through the disheartening of your captain. So, all of you think before all else of the things that relate to him, knowing this, that the immoral one, being the more hostile on account of every one of you, wars against him alone. Do you therefore strive to live in affection towards him, and in kindness towards one another, and to obey him, in order that both he may be comforted and you may be saved?

“As a Heathen Man and a Publican”

Chapter 532

"But some things also you ought of yourselves to consider, on account of his not being able to speak openly by reason of the plots. Such as: if he be hostile to any one, do not wait for his speaking; and do not take part with that man, but prudently follow the Mevaqqre's will, being enemies to those to whom he is an enemy, and not conversing with those with whom he does not converse, in order that everyone, desiring to have you all as his haverim, may be reconciled to him and be saved, listening to his discourse. But if any one remains a friend of those to whom he is an enemy, and speaks to those with whom he does not converse, he also himself is one of those who would waste the qahal. For, being with you in body, but not with you in judgment, he is against you; and is much worse than the open enemies from without, since with seeming friendship he disperses those who are within."

Installation of Clement

Chapter 533

Having thus spoken, he laid his hands upon me in the presence of all, and compelled me to sit in his own chair. And when I was seated, he immediately said to me: "I entreat you, in the presence of all the brothers here, that whenever I depart from this life, as depart I must, you send to Ya'akov the brother of the Master a brief account of your reasonings from your boyhood, and how from the beginning until now you have journeyed with me, hearing the discourses preached by me in every city, and seeing my deeds. And then at the end you will not fail to inform him of the manner of my death, as I said before. For that event will not grieve him very much, when he knows that I obediently went through what it behoved me to suffer. And he will get the greatest comfort when he learns that not an unlearned man or one ignorant of life-giving words or not knowing the rule of the qahal, will be entrusted with the chair of the teacher after me. For the discourse of a deceiver destroys the spirits of the multitudes who hear."

Clement's Obedience

Chapter 534

Therefore I, my master Ya'akov, having promised as I was ordered, have not failed to write in scrolls by chapters the greater part of his discourses in every city, which have been already written to you and sent by himself as for a token; and thus I dispatched them to you, inscribing them "Clement's Epitome of the Popular Preaching of (Simeon) Kefa."

The Lost Chapters Recovered from the Clementine Homilies

Spies in the Enemy's Camp

Chapter 535

535:1 "Some of our people attend feignedly upon Simon as companions, as if they were persuaded by his most atheistic error, in order that they may learn his purpose and disclose it to us, so that we may be able to confront this terrible man on favourable terms. And now I have learned from them what arguments he is going to employ in the discussion.

535:2 "And knowing this, I give thanks to Elohim on the one hand and I congratulate you on the other, on the postponement of the discussion; for, since I instructed you before the discussion, you know the arguments that he will use and can listen without danger of falling."

Corruption of the Torah

Chapter 536

536:1 "For the Scriptures have had joined to them many falsehoods against Elohim on this account. The prophet Moses, by the order of Elohim, delivered the Torah with the explanations to seventy chosen men, in order that they also might instruct such of the people as they chose. After some time, the written Torah had added to it certain falsehoods contrary to the Torah of Elohim, who made the heaven and the earth, and all things in them; the evil one having dared to work this for his evil purpose.

536:2 "This took place in reason and judgment, that those might be convicted who should dare to listen to the things written against Elohim, and those who, through love towards Him, should not only disbelieve the things spoken against Him, but should not even endure to hear them at all, even if they should happen to be true, judging it much safer to incur danger with respect to religious faith, than to live with an evil conscience on account of blasphemous words."

Tactics

Chapter 537

537:1 "Simon, therefore, as I learn, intends to come into public, and to speak of those chapters against Elohim that are added to the Scriptures, for the sake of temptation, that he may seduce as many wretched ones as he can from the love of Elohim.

537:2 “For we do not wish to say in public that these chapters are added to the Scripture, since we should thereby perplex the unlearned multitudes, and so accomplish the purpose of this evil Simon. For they do not yet have the power to discern and would flee from us as if we were evil, or, as if not only the blasphemous chapters were false, they would even withdraw from the word.

537:3 “Wherefore we are under a necessity of assenting to the false chapters, and putting questions in return to him concerning them, to draw him into a strait, and to give in private an explanation of the chapters that are spoken against Elohim to the well-disposed after a trial of their faith; and of this there is but one way, and that a brief one. It is this:”

Preliminary Instruction

Chapter 538

538:1 “Everything that is spoken or written against Elohim is false. But that we say this truly, not only for the sake of reputation, but for the sake of truth, I will convince you when my discourse has proceeded a little further. You, my most beloved Clement, ought not to be sorry at Simon’s having interposed a day between this and the discussion *at hand*. (*Simon Magus postponed the debate for an extra day.*)

538:2 “For today, before the discussion, you will be instructed concerning the chapters added to the Scriptures; and then in the discussion concerning the only one and good Elohim, the Maker also of the world, you ought not to be distracted. But in the discussion you will even wonder how unrighteous men, overlooking the multitudes of things that are spoken in the Scriptures for Elohim, and looking at those that are spoken against Him, gladly bring these forward; and thus the hearers, by reason of ignorance, believing the things against Elohim, become outcasts from His kingdom.

538:3 “Wherefore you, by advantage of the postponement, learning the mystery of the Scriptures, and gaining the *means of* not sinning against Elohim, will incomparably rejoice.”

Asking for Information, Not Contradiction

Chapter 539

539:1 Then I Clement, hearing this, said: “Truly I rejoice, and I give thanks to Elohim, who in all things does well. However, he knows that I will be able to think nothing other than that all things are for Elohim. Do not suppose that I ask questions, as doubting the words concerning Elohim, or those that are to be spoken, but rather that I may learn, and so be able myself to instruct another who is unaccustomed to

learning. So, tell me the falsehoods added to the Scriptures and how it is that they are really false.”

539:2 Then Kefa answered: “Even although you had not asked me, I would have gone on in order, and afforded you the exposition of these matters, as I promised. Learn, then, how the Scriptures misrepresent Him in many respects, so that you may know when you happen upon them.”

Right Notions of Elohim Essential to Holiness

Chapter 540

540:1 “What I am going to tell you will be sufficient by way of example. But I do not think, my dear Clement, that anyone who possesses ever so little love to Elohim and unaccustomed *to learning*, will be able to take in, or even to hear, the things that are spoken against Him.

540:2 “For how is it that He can have an overarching soul and *yet* be set-apart, supposing that there are many elohim and not one only? But even if there be but one who will cherish zeal to be set-apart, one finds in Him many defects, since he will hope that the beginning of all things, by reason of the defects of his own nature, will not visit the crimes of others?”

A Priori Argument on the Divine Attributes

Chapter 541

541:1 “Wherefore, far be it from us to believe that the Master of all, who made the heaven and the earth, and all things that are in them, shares His government with others, or that He lies.

541:2 “For if He lies, then who speaks truth? Or if He makes experiments as in ignorance; then who foreknows? If He deliberates and changes His purpose, who then is perfect in understanding and permanent in design?

541:3 “If He envies, who is above rivalry? If He hardens hearts, who makes wise? If He makes blind and deaf, who has given sight and hearing? If He commits pilfering, who administers justice?

541:4 “If He mocks, who is sincere? If He is weak, who is omnipotent? If He is unjust, who is just? If He makes evil things, who will make good things? If He does evil, who will do good?”

The Same Continued

Chapter 542

542:1 “But if He desires the fruitful hill, whose then are all things? If He is false, who then is true? If He lives in a tent, who is without bounds?”

542:2 “If He is fond of fat, sacrifices, offerings, and drink-offerings, who then is without need, and who is holy, and pure, and perfect? If He is pleased with lamps and wicks, who then placed the luminaries in the sky? If He dwells in shadow, and darkness, and storm, and smoke, who is the light that lightens the universe?”

542:3 “If He comes with trumpets, shouting’s, darts, and arrows, who is the sought-after tranquillity of all? If He loves war, who then wishes peace? If He makes evil things, who makes good things?”

542:4 “If He is without affection, who is a lover of men? If He is not faithful to His promises, who will be trusted? If He loves the evil, adulterers, and murderers, who will be a just judge? If He changes His mind, who is steadfast? If He chooses evil men, who then takes the part of the good?”

How Elohim Is to Be Thought of

Chapter 543

“Wherefore, Clement, my son, beware of thinking otherwise of Elohim than that He is the only Elohim, Master, and Father, good and righteous, the Creator, long-suffering, merciful, the sustainer, the benefactor, ordaining love of men, counselling purity, immortal and making immortal, incomparable, dwelling in the souls of the good, who cannot be contained and yet is contained *within the heart*, who has fixed the great world as a centre in space, who has spread out the skies and solidified the land, who has stored up the water, who has disposed the stars in the sky, who has made the fountains flow in the earth, has produced faults, has raised up mountains, has set bounds to the sea, has ordered winds and blasts, who by the spirit of counsel has kept safely the body comprehended in a boundless sea?”

Judgment to Come

Chapter 544

“This is our Judge, to whom it behoves us to look and to regulate our own souls, thinking all things in His favour, speaking well of Him, persuaded that by His long-suffering He brings to light the obstinacy of all, and is alone good. And He, at the end of all, will sit as a just judge upon every one of those who have attempted what they ought not.”

A Pertinent Question

Chapter 545

When I Clement heard this, I said, “Truly, this is Shabbat-guarding piety.” And again, I said: “I would like to learn why the Scripture has any writings of this sort? For I remember that you said that it was for the conviction of those who should dare to

believe anything that was spoken against Elohim. But since you permit us, we venture to ask, at your command: If anyone, most beloved Kefa, should choose to say to us, 'The Scriptures are true, though to you the things spoken against Elohim seem to be false,' how should we answer him?"

A Particular Case

Chapter 546

Then Kefa answered: "You speak well in your inquiry; for it will be for your safety. So listen: Since there are many things that are spoken in the Scriptures against Elohim, as time presses on account of the evening, ask with respect to any matter that you please, and I will explain it, showing that it is false, not only because it is spoken against Elohim, but because it is really false." Then I answered: "I wish to learn how, when the Scriptures say that Elohim is ignorant, you can show that He knows?"

Reductio ad Absurdum

Chapter 547

Then Kefa answered: "You have presented us with a matter that can easily be answered. Listen: Elohim is ignorant of nothing; he even foreknows. But first answer me what I ask of you. He who wrote the Scripture told how the world was made yet said Elohim does not foreknow, was he a man or not? "Then I said: "He was a man." Then Kefa answered: "How, then, was it possible for Him, being a man, to know with certainty how the world was made, and that Elohim does not foreknow?"

A Satisfactory Answer

Chapter 548

548:1 Then I, already perceiving the explanation, smiled, and said that he was a prophet. And Kefa said: "If, then, he was a prophet, being a man, he was ignorant of nothing, by reason of his having received foreknowledge from Elohim; how then, should He, who gave to man the gift of foreknowledge, being Elohim, Himself be ignorant?" And I said: "You have spoken rightly."

548:2 Then Kefa said: "Come with me one step further. We acknowledge that Elohim foreknows all things, so we know that the Scriptures that say He is ignorant are false, and those that say He knows are true." Then said I: "It has to be true."

Weigh in the Balance

Chapter 549

Then Kefa said: "If some of the Scriptures are true and some false, our Master had good reason to say, 'Be good money-changers,' inasmuch as in the Scriptures there are some true sayings and some spurious. For those who err by reason of the false Scriptures He fitly showed the cause of their error, saying, 'You do so err, not knowing the true things of the Scriptures. For this reason, you are also ignorant of the power of Elohim.'" Then said I: "*You have* spoken very excellently."

Sins of the Kiddoshim Denied

Chapter 550

Then Kefa answered: With good reason, I neither believe anything against Elohim, nor against the just men recorded in the Torah, taking for granted that such are impious imaginations. For I am persuaded that Adam was neither a transgressor (he who was fashioned by the hands of Elohim), nor was Noah drunken, who was found righteous above all the world;¹⁸ nor did Avraham live with three wives at once, who, on account of his sobriety, was thought worthy of numerous posterity; nor did Yaakov associate with four, of whom two were sisters, who was the father of the twelve tribes, and who was suggestive of our Master's presence; nor was Moses a murderer, nor did he learn to judge from an idolatrous priest: he who set forth the Torah of Elohim to all the world, and for his right judgment has been accounted a faithful steward."

Close of the Conference

Chapter 551

"Of these and like things I will afford you an explanation in due time. But for the rest, since, as you see, the evening has come upon us, let what has been said be enough for today. But whenever you wish, and about whatever you wish, ask boldly of us, and we will gladly explain it at once." Having spoken, *Kefa* rose up. Then, having partaken of food, we turned to sleep, for the night had come upon us.

The Morning of the Discussion

Chapter 552

Two days having elapsed, and while the third was dawning, I Clement, and the rest of our companions woke up about the second cock-crowing, wanted to talk with

Simon, and found his lamp still burning and Kefa kneeling in prayer. So, having finished his supplication, and turning around, and seeing us ready to hear, he said:

Simon's Design

Chapter 553

"I wish you to know that the men who, according to our arrangement, associate with Simon that they may learn his intentions and submit them to us so that we may be able to cope with his variety of impiety, have sent to me and informed me that Simon today is, as he arranged, prepared to come before all and show from the Scriptures that He who made heaven and the earth and all things in them is not the Supreme Elohim. He claims that there is another, unknown and supreme, as being in an unspeakable manner Elohim of elohim, who sent two elohim, one of whom made the world, and the other who gave the Torah. He contrives these things in order to destroy the right faith of those who would worship the one and only Elohim who made heaven and earth."

His Object

Chapter 554

554:1 "When I heard this, how could it not have disheartened me? So, I wanted you also, my brothers who associate with me, to know that I am beyond measure grieved in my soul, because the evil one is awake for the temptation of men, but men are wholly indifferent about their own salvation.

554:2 "For to those from among the Gentiles who were learning that the earthly images are no-elohim, he has contrived to bring in opinions of many other elohim, in order that those who would leave polytheistic madness may be turned back around to speak even worse *than they now do* against the sole government of Elohim, so that they may not value the truths connected with His rulership and may never be able to obtain mercy.

554:3 "And for the sake of this attempt Simon comes to do battle with us, armed with the false chapters of the Scriptures. And what is more dreadful, he is not afraid to dogmatize thus against the true Elohim from the prophets whom he does not *in fact* believe."

Snares Laid for the Gentiles

Chapter 555

555:1 "And with us, indeed, who have had handed down from our forefathers the worship of the Elohim who made all things, and also the mystery of the books which are able to deceive, he will not prevail; but with those from among the Gentiles who

have the polytheistic fancy bred in them and who know not the falsehoods of the Scriptures, he will have the upper hand.

555:2 “And not only he; but if any other will recount to those from among the Gentiles any vain, dreamlike, richly set-out story against Elohim, he will be believed, because from their childhood their minds are accustomed to take in things spoken against Elohim.

555:3 “And there will be only a few out of many of them who through naïveté will not be willing so much as to hear an evil word against the Elohim who made all things. And these alone from among the Gentiles will be truly saved. So let not anyone of you complain about Simon, or of anyone else; for nothing occurs unjustly, since even the falsehoods of Scripture are with good reason presented for a test.”

Use of Errors

Chapter 556

556:1 Then I Clement, hearing this, said: “How say you, master, that even the falsehoods of the Scriptures are set forth with good reason for the proof of men? “And he answered: “The falsehoods of the Scriptures have been permitted to be written for a certain righteous reason at the demand of evil. And when I say as a blessing, I mean this: In the account of Elohim, the evil one, not loving Elohim less than the good one, is exceeded by the good in this one thing only, that he, not pardoning those who are evil on account of ignorance, through love towards that which is profound, desires the destruction of the evil; but the good one desires to present them with a remedy.

556:2 “For the good one desires all to be healed by repentance, but saves those only who know Elohim. But He does not heal those who don’t know Elohim, because it is not Torah to give the good things that belong to the children of the Kingdom to those who, because they lack judgment, are like irrational animals.”

Purgatory and Hell

Chapter 557

557:1 “Such is the nature of the one and only Elohim, who made the world, and who created us, and who has given us all things, that as long as anyone is within the limit of piety, and does not blaspheme His Qadosh Ruach, through His love towards him He brings the soul to Himself by reason of His love towards it. And although it is sinful, it is His nature to save it, after it has been suitably punished for the deeds it hath done.

557:2 “But if anyone will deny Him, or in any other way be guilty of impiety against Him, and then will repent, he will be punished indeed for the sins he has committed against Him, but he will be saved, because he turned and lived. And perhaps excessive piety and supplication will even be delivered from punishment, ignorance being admitted as a reason for the pardon of sin after repentance.

557:3 “But those who do not repent will be destroyed by the punishment of fire, even though in all other things they are most qadosh. But, as I said, at an appointed time a fifth part, being punished with eternal fire, will be consumed. For they cannot endure forever who have been impious against the one Elohim.”

What is Impiety?

Chapter 558

558:1 “But impiety against Him is, in the matter of religion, to die saying there is another Elohim, whether superior or inferior, or in any way saying that there is one besides Him who really is. For He who truly exists is He who formed the body of man like His own; for whose sake the heaven and all the stars, though in their essence superior, submit to serve him who is in essence inferior, on account of the form of the Ruler.

558:2 “So much has Elohim blessed man above all, in order that, loving the Benefactor in proportion to the multitude of His benefits, by means of this love he may be saved for the world to come.”

Wiles of the Devil

Chapter 559

“So, the love of men towards Elohim is sufficient for salvation. And this the evil one knows; and while we are hastening to sow the love towards Him which makes immortal in the souls of those who from among the Gentiles are ready to believe in the one and only Elohim, this evil one, having sufficient armour against the ignorant for their destruction, hastens to sow the supposition of many elohim, or at least of one greater, in order that men, conceiving and being persuaded of what is not wisdom, may die, as in the crime of adultery, and be cast out from His kingdom.”

Uncertainty of the Scriptures

Chapter 560

560:1 “Worthy therefore of rejection is everyone who is willing so much as to hear anything against the monarchy of Elohim; but if anyone dares to hear anything against Elohim, as trusting in the Scriptures, let him first of all consider with me that if

anyone, as he pleases, form a dogma agreeable to himself, and then carefully search the Scriptures, he will be able to produce many testimonies from them in favour of the dogma that he has formed.

560:2 “How, then, can confidence be placed in them against Elohim, when what every man wishes is found in them?”

Simon’s Intention

Chapter 561

561:1 “So Simon, who is going to discuss in public with us tomorrow, is bold against the monarchy of Elohim, wishing to produce many statements from these Scriptures, to the effect that there are many elohim, and a certain one who is not He who made this world, but who is superior to Him; and, at the same time, he is going to offer many scriptural proofs.

561:2 “But we also can easily show many passages from them that He who made the world alone is Elohim, and that there is no other besides Him. But if anyone will wish to speak otherwise, he also will be able to produce proofs from them at his pleasure. For the Scriptures say all manner of things, so that no one of those who inquire ungratefully may find the truth, but simply what he wishes to find, the truth being reserved for the grateful. Now gratitude is to preserve our love to Him who is the cause of our being.”

Distinction between Prediction and Prophecy

Chapter 562

562:1 “Before we can know all truth, we have to recognize that nowhere can truth be found unless from a prophet of truth. But He is a true Prophet who always knows all things and even the thoughts of all men, who is without sin, as being convinced respecting the judgment of Elohim.

562:2 “For that reason we ought not simply to consider respecting His foreknowledge, but whether His foreknowledge can stand apart from other cause. For physicians predict certain things, having the pulse of the patient as matter submitted to them; and some predict by means of having fowls, some by having sacrifices, and others by having many various matters submitted to them; yet these are not prophets.”

The Same

Chapter 563

563:1 “But if anyone says that the foreknowledge *shown* by these predictions is like the foreknowledge which is really implanted, he is quite deceived, for he only

declares such things as being present, and only if he speaks truth. However, even these things help me, for they establish that there is such a thing as foreknowledge. 563:2 “But the foreknowledge of the one true Prophet does not only know things present, but stretches out prophecy without limit as far as the world to come, and needs nothing for its interpretation, not prophesying darkly and ambiguously, so that the things spoken would need another prophet to interpret them. Through the inborn and ever-flowing Ruach, our Master and Prophet explains them clearly and simply, because He has always known.”

Prophetic Knowledge Constant

Chapter 564

564:1 “So, He confidently made statements respecting things that are to be—I mean sufferings, places, and limits: for He is a faultless Prophet. He looks upon all things with the unlimited eye of His being, and so He knows hidden things.

564:2 “But if we should hold, as many do, that even the true Prophet, sometimes, when He has the Ruach, has foreknowledge, but when He does not have it he is just ignorant; if we should suppose this, we should deceive ourselves and mislead others. For such a thing belongs to those who are madly inspired by the spirit of disorder *prophesying* to those who are drunken beside the altars and gorged with fat.”

Prophetic Ruach Constant

Chapter 565

“For if it were permitted to anyone who will profess prophecy supposedly to prove the cases in which they allege that he was found false and not speaking by the Qadosh Ruach of foreknowledge, it will be difficult to convict him of being a false prophet. Let’s say that among the many things that he speaks, a few come to pass, and then he is believed to have the Ruach, although he speaks the first things last, and the last first; speaks of past events as future, and future as already past; and also without sequence; or things borrowed from others and altered, and some that are lessened, unformed, foolish, ambiguous, unseemly, obscure, and proclaiming total lack of discipline.”

Moshiach’s Prophecies

Chapter 566

566:1 “Our Master did not prophesy this way; but, as I have already said, being a prophet by an inborn and ever-flowing Ruach, and knowing all things at all times, He

confidently set forth, plainly as I said before, sufferings, places, appointed times, manners, and limits.

566:2 “Accordingly, *when he was* prophesying concerning the temple, He said: ‘See these buildings? Amen I say to you that there will not be one stone left here upon another that will not be taken away; and this generation will not pass until the destruction begin. For they will come and sit here, and will besiege it and slay your children here.’

566:3 “And in like manner He spoke in plain words the things that were quickly to happen, which we can now see with our eyes, in order that their fulfilment might be known among those who heard Him. For the Prophet of truth gives the word of proof to build up the faith of His hearers.”

Doctrine of Coincidence

Chapter 567

567:1 “However, there are many proclaimers of error, all under one chief, who is the chief of evilness, just as the Prophet of truth, being one, and being also the chief of piety, will in His own times have as His prophets all who are found pure.

567:2 “But the chief cause of men being deceived is that they do not understand beforehand the Doctrine of Coincidence, which I will in detail expound to you in private every day; it is too broad *a topic* to give the details all at once. So, you must be truth-loving judges for me of those things spoken *while someone prophesies*.”

Whether Adam Had the Ruach

Chapter 568

568:1 “I will begin by saying that Elohim made all things. If anyone will not admit that a man fashioned by His hands could have possessed His great and Qadosh Ruach of foreknowledge, how great is his mistake when he says one has it who has been born of spurious stock!

568:2 “I do not think that he will obtain pardon, though he is misled by spurious Scripture to think dreadful things against the Father of all. For he who insults the image and the things belonging to the eternal King has the sin reckoned as committed against Him in whose likeness the image was made.

568:3 “But then, says he, the Ruach of Elohim left him when he sinned. In that case *the Ruach* sinned along with him; and how can he escape peril who says this? But perhaps he received the Ruach after he sinned. Then it is given to the unrighteous; and where is justice? But it was afforded to the just and the unjust. This was most unrighteous of all. Thus, every falsehood, though it is aided by ten thousand excuses, must be refuted, even though it takes time.”

Adam Not Ignorant

Chapter 569

569:1 “Be not deceived! Our father was ignorant of nothing. (*This being expressed even in the Torah that is currently in the public*). Though *Torah* charges him with the crime of ignorance for the sake of the unworthy, it also sends to him those desirous of knowledge, saying, ‘Ask your father and he will tell you. Ask your zaqenim and they will answer you.’

569:2 “This father and these zaqenim should be asked. But you have not inquired whose is the kingdom and whose is the seat of prophecy, though He Himself points to Himself by saying, ‘The scribes and the Pharisees sit in Moshe’s seat; listen to whatever they say to you.’

569:3 “Hear *them*, He said, as entrusted with knowledge, the key of the kingdom, which alone can open the gate of life, through which alone is the entrance to timeless life. But truly, He says, they possess the key, but they do not permit those who want to enter.”

Reign of Moshiach

Chapter 570

570:1 “On this account, I say, He rises *in person* from His seat as father of his children, proclaiming the things that from the beginning were delivered in secret to the worthy, extending mercy even to Gentiles, and feeling compassion for all souls, neglected His own kindred. For He who is worthy to be King of the world to come *fights against* him who, by predestination, has usurped the kingdom that now is.

570:2 “What grieved Him exceedingly is that by those very persons for whom, as for sons, he fought, He was assailed on account of their ignorance. Yet He loved even those who hated Him, wept over the unbelieving, blessed those who slandered Him, and prayed for those who were at enmity against Him.

570:3 “Not only did He do this as a father, but also taught His talmidim to do the like, conducting themselves as to brothers. That’s what our Father and our Prophet both did. This is reasonable, that He should be King over His children; that by the affection of a father towards his children, and the engrafted respect of children towards their father, longstanding peace might be produced. For when a good man reigns, there is true joy among those who are ruled over, on account of him who rules.”

The True Prophet Has Appeared in Different Ages

Chapter 571

571:1 “But give heed to my first discourse of the truth. If anyone does not allow the man fashioned by the hands of Elohim to have had the Qadosh Ruach of Moshiach, how is he not guilty of the greatest malice in allowing another born of an impure stock to have it?”

571:2 “But he believes righteously if he denies that another could have it, but should say that he alone has it who has changed his forms and his names from the beginning of the world, and so reappeared again and again in the world, until coming upon his own times, and being anointed with mercy for the works of Elohim, he will enjoy Sabbath *from this day forward*. His esteem it is to bear rule and authority over all things, in air, earth, and waters. But in addition to these, himself having made man, he had breath, the indescribable garment of the soul, that he might be able to be undying.”

The Eating of the Forbidden Fruit Denied

Chapter 572

“He, since He was the only true prophet, fittingly gave names to each animal, according to the merits of its nature, since He made it. Whatever name He gave to any of them, it was a fitting name from its maker Himself. How, then, had he still needed to partake of a tree, that he might know what is good and what is evil, if he was commanded not to eat of it? But senseless men believe this; those who think that a reasonless beast was more powerful than the Elohim who made these things.”

Male and Female

Chapter 573

“But a companion was created along with him, a female nature, much differing from him, as quality from substance, as the moon from the sun, as fire from light. She, as a female ruling the present world as her like was entrusted to be the first prophetess, announcing prophecy with all among those born of woman. But the other, as the son of man, being a male, prophesies better things to the world to come as a male.”

Two Kinds of Prophecy, Male and Female

Chapter 574

“Let us then understand that there are two kinds of prophecy: the one male; and let it be defined that the first, being the male, has been ranked after the other in the order of advent; but the second, being female, has been appointed to come first in the advent of the pairs. This second, being among those born of woman, as the female

superintendent of this present world wants to be thought of as masculine. So, stealing the seeds of the male and sowing them with her own seeds of the flesh, she brings forth the fruits—that is, words—as wholly her own. And she promises that she will give the present earthly riches as a dowry, and would change the slow for the swift, the small for the greater.”

The Prophetess a Misleader

Chapter 575

“She, not only presuming to say and to hear that there are many elohim, but also believing herself to be one, and in hope of being that which she had not a nature to be, and throwing away what she had, and as a female being in her courses at the offering of sacrifices, is stained with blood; and then she pollutes those who touch her. But when she conceives and brings forth temporary kings, she stirs up wars, shedding much blood; and those who desire to learn truth from her by telling them all things contrary and presenting many and various services, she keeps them always seeking and finding nothing, even until death. For from the beginning a cause of death lies upon blind men; for she, prophesying deceit, ambiguities, and obliquities, deceives those who believe her.”

Cain’s Name and Nature

Chapter 576

“Hence the ambiguous name which she gave to her first-born son, calling him Cayin, which has a capability of interpretation in two ways; for it is interpreted both Possession and Envy, as signifying that in the future he was to envy either a woman, or possessions, or the love of the parents towards her. If it be none of these, then it will befall him to be called the Possession; for she possessed him first, which also was advantageous to him. He was a murderer and a liar, and with his sins was not willing to be at peace with respect to supervision. Moreover, those who came forth by succession from him were the first adulterers, *makers* of small and large harps, and forgers of instruments of war. Additionally, the prophecy of his descendants was full of adulterers and harpers who, by means of secrecy and pleasure, excited others to wars.”

Abel’s Name and Nature

Chapter 577

577:1 “But he who among the sons of men had prophecy innate to his soul as belonging to it, expressly, as being a male, indicating the hopes of the world to come, called his own son Abel, which without any ambiguity is translated Grief. He

assigns to his sons to grieve over their deceived brothers. He does not deceive them when he promises them comfort in the world to come. When he says that we must pray to one and only Elohim, he neither himself speaks of gods, nor does he believe anyone else who speaks of them.

577:2 “He keeps the good which he has, and increases more and more. He hates sacrifices, bloodshed, and libations; he loves the chaste, the pure, the qadosh. He quenches the fire of altars, represses wars, teaches pious preachers wisdom, purges sins, sanctions marriage, approves temperance, leads all to chastity, makes men liberal, prescribes justice, seals those of them who are perfect, publishes the word of peace, warns of the eternal fire of punishment, constantly announces the kingdom of Elohim, indicates heavenly riches, promises unfading glory, and shows the remission of sins by works.”

The Prophet and the Prophetess

Chapter 578

“And what need is there to say more? The male is wholly truth, the female wholly falsehood. Whoever is born of the male and the female, in some things speaks truth, in some falsehood. For the female, surrounding the white seed of the male with her own blood, as with red fire, sustains her own weakness with the extraneous supports of bones, and, pleased with the temporary flower of flesh, and spoiling the strength of the judgment by short pleasures, leads the greater part into fornication, and thus deprives them of the coming excellent Bridegroom. For every person is a bride, whenever he is enlightened in his understanding by the true Prophet sowing in him the whole word of truth.”

Spiritual Adultery

Chapter 579

“So, it is fitting to hear the one and only Prophet of the truth, knowing that the word that is sown by another bearing the charge of fornication, is, as it were, cast out by the Bridegroom from His kingdom. But to those who know the mystery, death is also produced by spiritual adultery. For whenever the soul is sown by others, then it is forsaken by the Ruach, as guilty of fornication or adultery; and so the living body, the life-giving Ruach being withdrawn, is dissolved into dust, and the rightful punishment of sin is suffered at the time of the judgment by the soul, after the dissolution of the body; even as, among men, she who is caught in adultery is first cast out from the house, and then afterwards is condemned to punishment.”

The Signal Given

Chapter 580

580:1 While Kefa was about to explain fully to us this mysterious word, Zacchai came, saying: “Now indeed, O Kefa, is the time for you to go out and engage in the discussion; for a great crowd awaits you, packed together in the court; and in the midst of them stands Simon, like a war-chieftain attended by his spearmen.”

580:2 Kefa, hearing this, ordered me to withdraw for prayer, as not yet having received baptism for salvation, and then said to those who were already perfected: “Let us rise and pray that Elohim, by His unfailing mercies, may help me striving for the salvation of the men whom He has made.”

580:3 Having said this, and having prayed, he went out into the uncovered portion of the court – a great space; there were many who had come together to see him. Because he was a celebrity, they were all the more anxious to hear him.

Apostolic Salutation

Chapter 581

So, standing and seeing all the people gazing upon him in profound silence, and Simon the magician standing in the midst, Kefa began to speak thus:

“Peace to all you who are in readiness to give your right hands to the truth of Elohim, which, being His great and incomparable gift in the present world, He who sent us, since He is an infallible Prophet of that which is most profitable, put us in charge, by way of salutation before our words of instruction, to announce to you, so that if there is a son of peace among you, peace may take hold of him through our teaching. But if any of you will not receive our word (that we have borne through our toils and brought to you that you may be saved), then we for a testimony shake off the dust from the road that is on our feet and will go to other houses and cities.”

Faith in Elohim

Chapter 582

582:1 “I tell you the truth: It will be more tolerable in the Day of Judgment to live in the land of Sodom and Gomorrah, than in the place of unbelief. In the first place, because you have not preserved reason in yourselves, and in the second place, because, hearing things about us, you have not come to us, and in the third place, because you have disbelieved us when we have come to you. We are concerned for you and pray of our own accord that our peace may come upon you.

582:2 “If you will have it, you must readily promise not to do injustice, and generously to bear wrong, which is contrary to human nature, unless one first received the knowledge of that which is supremely profitable, namely, to know the

righteous nature of Him who is over all, for He defends and avenges those who are wronged and does good forever to the devout.”

Invitation

Chapter 583

“Do you, therefore, as thankful servants of Elohim and reasonable persons, take upon you the manner of life that pleases Him, that so, by loving Him and by Him loving you, you may enjoy the age of reward. For He alone is able to give you this, who gave life to things that did not exist, who created the skies, settled the earth, set bounds to the sea, stored up the things that are in Sheol, and filled all places with air.”

Works of Creation

Chapter 584

584:1 “He alone turned the four contrary elements into the one, first, simple substance. Thus, combining them, He made of them myriads of compounds, so that, being turned into opposite natures and mingled, they might affect the pleasure of life from the combination of contrary things.

585:2 “In like manner, He alone created races of angels and spirits by the decree of His will to inhabit the heavens. He likewise decked the visible firmament with stars, to which also He assigned their paths and arranged their orbits, and compacted the earth for the production of fruits. He set bounds to the sea, marking out a dwelling-place on the dry land. He stores up the things in Sheol, designating it as the place of beings; and He filled all places with air, that all living creatures might be able to breathe safely in order that they might live.”

Extent of Creation

Chapter 585

585:1 “O the great hand of the wise Elohim that does all in all! For a countless multitude of birds have been made by Him, and those various, differing in all respects from one another; I mean in respect of their colours, beaks, talons, looks, senses, voices, and all else.

585:2 “And how many different species of plants, distinguished by boundless variety of colours, qualities, and scents! And how many animals on the land and in the water, of which it was impossible to tell the figures, forms, habitats, colour, food, senses, natures, and multitude! Then also the multitude and height of mountains, the varieties of stones, awful caverns, fountains, rivers, marshes, seas, harbours, islands, forests, and all the inhabited world, and uninhabited places!”

“These are a Part of His Ways”

Chapter 586

“Yet how many things besides are unknown because men cannot know them! Of those that are within our comprehension, who knows the limit? I mean, how the sky rolls, how the stars are borne in their courses, and what forms they have, what composition, and where they travel in the ether. From where do the blasts of winds come up with their different levels of energy? From where do the fountains ceaselessly spring? The ever-flowing rivers run down into the sea. Their source is not emptied, and neither do they fill where they empty into!

“How far reaches the unfathomable depth of the boundless Tartarus! Upon what is the sky that surrounds us carried? How the clouds spring from air, and are absorbed into air! What is the nature of thunder and lightning, snow, hail, mist, ice, storms, showers, and hanging clouds? How does He make plants and animals? All these things are certainly and continually perfected in their countless varieties!”

Dominion over the Creatures

Chapter 587

“So, if anyone will accurately scan the whole with reason, he will find that Elohim has made them for the sake of people. For showers fall for the sake of fruits, that man may partake of them, and that animals may be fed, that they may be useful to men. And the sun shines, that he may turn the air into four seasons, and that each time may afford its peculiar service to man. And the fountains spring up, so people may drink of them.

“And, moreover, who is master over the creatures, so far as is possible? Is it not man, who has received wisdom to till the earth, to sail the sea: to make fishes, birds, and beasts his prey; to investigate the course of the stars, to mine the earth, to sail the sea; to build cities, to define kingdoms, to ordain laws, to execute justice, to know the invisible Elohim, to know the names of angels, to drive away demons, to endeavour to cure diseases by medicines, to find charms against poison-darting serpents, and to understand aversions?”

“Whom to Know Is Life Eternal”

Chapter 588

588:1 “But if you are thankful, O man, if you understand that Elohim is your benefactor in all things, and that you may even be made immortal, the things that are made for you continue to be given through your gratitude to Elohim. And now you are able to become incorruptible, if you acknowledge Him whom you did not

know, if you love Him whom you used to forsake, and if you pray to Him alone who is able to punish or to save both your body and your being.

588:2 “So, consider primarily that no one shares His rule and no one has a name in common with Him—that is, *no man* is called Elohim. For He alone is both called and is Elohim, “the Mighty One.” Nor is it Torah to think that there is any other, or to call any other by that name. And if anyone should dare do so, eternal castigation of his very being is his.”

Simon’s Challenge – Many Gods

Chapter 589

589:1 When Kefa had thus spoken, Simon, at the outside of the crowd, cried aloud: “Why would you lie, and deceive the unlearned multitude standing around you, persuading them that it is unlawful to think that there are elohim, and to call them so, when the books that are current among the Jews say that there are many elohim?”

589:2 “And now I wish, in the presence of all, to discuss with you from these books on the necessity of thinking that there are elohim; first showing respecting him whom you call Elohim, that he is not the supreme and omnipotent *Being*, inasmuch as he is without foreknowledge, imperfect, needy, not good, and underlying many and innumerable grievous passions. So, when this has been shown from the Scriptures, as I say, it follows that there is another, not written of, foreknowing, perfect, without want, good, far removed from all grievous passions. But He whom you call the Creator is subject to the opposite *evils*.”

Defects Ascribed to Elohim

Chapter 590

590:1 “So also Adam, being made at first after his likeness, is created blind, and is said not to have knowledge of good or evil, and is found a transgressor, and is driven out of paradise, and is punished with death. In like manner also, He who made him, because He sees not in all places, says with reference to the overthrow of Sodom, ‘Come, and let us go down, and see whether they do according to their cry which comes to me; or if not, that I may know.’ Thus he shows himself ignorant.

590:2 “And in his saying respecting Adam, ‘Let us drive him out, lest he put forth his hand and touch the tree of life, and eat, and live forever;’ in saying LEST he is ignorant; and in driving him out lest he should eat and live forever, he is also envious. “And whereas it is written that ‘Elohim changed His mind that he had made man,’ this implies both repentance and ignorance. For this reflection is a view by which one, through ignorance, wishes to inquire into the result of the things that he wills, or it is the act of one repenting on account of the event not being according to his expectation.

590:3 “And whereas it is written, ‘And the Master smelled a scent of sweetness,’ it is the part of one in need; and his being pleased with the fat of flesh is the part of one who is not good. But his trial, as it is written, ‘And Elohim tried Avraham, is the part of one who is evil, and who is ignorant of the issue of the experiment.’”

Kefa’s Answer

Chapter 591

591:1 In like manner Simon, by taking many passages from the Scriptures, seemed to show that Elohim is subject to every infirmity. And to this Kefa said: “Does he who is evil, and wholly evil, love to accuse himself in the things in which he sins? Answer me this.”

591:2 Then said Simon: “He does not.”

591:3 Then said Kefa: “How, then, can Elohim be evil and immoral, seeing that those evil things which have been commonly written regarding Him, have been added by His own will!”

591:4 Then said Simon: “It may be that the charge against Him is written by another power, and not according to His choice.”

591:5 Then said Kefa: “Let us then, in the first place, inquire into this. If, indeed, He has of His own will accused Himself, as you formerly acknowledged, then He is not evil; but if it is done by another power, it must be inquired and investigated with all energy who has subjected to all evils Him who alone is good.”

“Status Quaestionis.”

Chapter 592

592:1 Then said Simon: “You are obviously avoiding dealing with the charges that the Scriptures make against your Elohim.”

592:2 Then Kefa: “You yourself appear to me to be doing this; for he who avoids the order of inquiry does not wish a true investigation to be made. Hence I, who proceed in an orderly manner, and want the writer first to be considered, am obviously desirous to walk in a straight path.”

592:3 Then Simon: “First confess that if the things written against the Creator are true, He is not above all, since, according to the Scriptures, He is subject to all evil; then afterwards we will inquire as to the writer.”

592:4 Then said Kefa: “That I may not seem to speak against your want of order through unwillingness to enter upon the investigation, I answer you. I say that if the things written against Elohim are true, they do not show that Elohim is evil.”

592:5 Then said Simon: “How can you maintain that?”

Was Adam Blind?

Chapter 593

593:1 Then said Kefa: "Because things are written opposite to those sayings that speak evil of him; so, neither the one nor the other can be confirmed."

593:2 Then Simon: "How, then, is the truth to be ascertained, of those Scriptures that say He is evil, or of those that say He is good?"

593:3 Then Kefa: "Whatever sayings of the Scriptures are in harmony with the creation that was made by Him are true, but whatever are contrary to it are false."

593:4 Then Simon said: "How can you show that the Scriptures contradict themselves?"

593:5 And Kefa said: "You say that Adam was created blind, which was not so; for He would not have pointed out the tree of the knowledge of good and evil to a blind man, and commanded him not to taste of it."

593:6 Then said Simon: "He meant that his mind was blind."

593:7 Then Kefa: "How could he be blind in respect of his mind, who, before tasting of the tree was in harmony with Him who made him, giving appropriate names to all the animals?"

593:8 Then Simon: "If Adam had foreknowledge, how did he not foreknow that the serpent would deceive his wife?"

593:9 Then Kefa: "If Adam had not foreknowledge, how did he give names to the sons of men as they were born with reference to their future doings, calling the first Cain (which is interpreted 'envy'), who through envy killed his brother Abel (which is interpreted 'grief'); for his parents grieved over him, the first slain?"

Elohim's Foreknowledge

Chapter 594

594:1 "But if Adam, being the work of Elohim, had foreknowledge, much more Elohim who created him had it. And that is false which is written that Elohim reflected, as if using reasoning on account of ignorance; and that YHWH tested Avraham, that He might know if he would endure it; and that which is written, 'Let us go down, and see if they are doing according to the cry of them that come to me; and if not, that I may know.'

594:2 "Yet not to extend my discourse too far, whatever sayings ascribe ignorance to Him, or anything else that is evil, being upset by other sayings that affirm the contrary, are proven to be false. But because He does indeed foreknow, He says to Avraham, 'You will surely know that your seed will be exiles in a land that is not their own; and they will enslave them and treat them badly, and they will humble them four hundred years. But I will judge the nation to which they will be in bondage, and after that they will come out to this place with much property. But you will go to your

fathers in peace, after living to a ripe old age; and in the fourth generation they will return here, for the sins of the Amorites are not yet filled up.”

Elohim's Decrees

Chapter 595

“But what? Does not Moses foretell the sins of the people and predict their dispersion among the nations? But if He gave foreknowledge to Moses, how can it be that He had it not Himself? But He has it. And if He has it, as we have also shown, it is an extravagant saying that He reflected, and that He changed His mind, and that He went down to see, and whatever else of this sort. What things He knew about before they came to pass came about without variance.”

Sacrifices

Chapter 596

“But that He is not pleased with sacrifices, is shown by this: those who lusted after flesh were slain as soon as they tasted it, and were buried, so that it was called the grave of lusts. He then who at the first was displeased with the slaughtering of animals, not wishing them to be slain, did not ordain sacrifices as desiring them; nor from the beginning did He require them. For neither are sacrifices accomplished without the slaughter of animals, nor can the first-fruits be presented. But how is it possible for Him to abide in darkness, and smoke, and storm (for this also is written), who created a pure sky, and created the sun to give light to all, and assigned the invariable order of their revolutions to innumerable stars? Thus, O Simon, the handwriting of Elohim—I mean the skies—shows the counsels of Him who made it to be pure and stable.

Contempt Against of Elohim

Chapter 597

“Thus, the sayings accusatory of the Elohim who made the sky are both rendered void by the opposite sayings which are alongside of them, and are refuted by the creation. It was not a prophetic hand that wrote them. So also, they appear opposite to the hand of Elohim, who made all things.”

Then said Simon: “How can you show this? “

Foreknowledge of Moses

Chapter 598

598:1 Then said Kefa: "The Torah of Elohim was given by Moses, without writing, to seventy wise men, to be handed down, so that the government might be carried on by succession. But after that Moses was taken up; it was written by someone, but not by Moses. "For in the Torah itself it is written, 'And Moses died; and they buried him near the house of Phogor, and to this day no one knows where he is buried.' But how could Moses write that Moses died?"

598:2 "And whereas in the time after Moses, about 500 years or thereabouts, it is found lying in the temple which was built, and after about 500 years more it is carried away, and being burnt in the time of Nebuchadnezzar it is destroyed; and thus being written after Moses, and often lost, even this shows the foreknowledge of Moses, because he, foreseeing its disappearance, did not write it; but those who wrote it, being convicted of ignorance through their not foreseeing its disappearance, were not prophets."

Test of Truth

Chapter 599

599:1 Then said Simon: "Since, as you say, we must understand the things concerning Elohim by comparing them with the creation, how is it possible to recognize the other things in the Torah which are from the tradition of Moses, and are true, and are mixed up with these falsehoods?"

599:2 Then Kefa said: "A certain verse has been recorded without controversy in the written Torah, according to the providence of Elohim, so as to show clearly which of the things written are true and which are false."

599:3 Then said Simon: "Which is that? Show it us."

The True Prophet

Chapter 600

600:1 Then Kefa said: "I will tell you right away. It is written in the first book of the Torah, towards the end: 'A ruler will not fail from Yahudah, nor a leader from his thighs, until He come whose it is; and He is the expectation of the nations.'

600:2 "If, therefore, anyone can apprehend Him who came after the failure of ruler and leader from Yahudah, and who was to be expected by the nations, he will be able by this verse to recognize Him as truly having come; and believing His teaching, he will know what of the Scriptures are true and what are false."

600:3 Then said Simon: "I understand that you speak of your Y'shua as He of whom the prophecy of the Scripture spoke. So, let it be granted that it is so. Tell us, then, how he taught you to discriminate the Scriptures."

His Teaching Concerning the Scriptures

Chapter 601

Then Kefa: "*He taught that it is the mixture of truth with falsehood, I remember that on one occasion He, finding fault with the Sadducees, said, 'So you are in error, not knowing the true things of the Scriptures; and on this account you are ignorant of the power of Elohim.'* But if He laid it on them that they knew not the true things of the Scriptures, it is obvious that there are false things in them. And also, inasmuch as He said, 'Be prudent money-changers,' it is because there are genuine and spurious words. And so, He said, 'How do you not perceive that which is reasonable in the Scriptures?' He makes the understanding of him stronger who voluntarily judges soundly."

His Teaching Concerning Torah

Chapter 602

602:1 "His word to the scribes and morim of the existing Scriptures, as to those who knew the true things of the Torah that then was, is well known. And also, that He said, 'I am not come to destroy the Torah,' and yet that He appeared to be destroying it, is the part of one intimating that the things that He destroyed did not belong to the Torah.

602:2 "And His saying, 'The heaven and the earth will pass away, but not one least letter or punctuation will pass from the Torah,' intimated that the things which pass away before the heaven and the earth do so, do not belong to the Torah in the first place."

Other Sayings of Moshiach

Chapter 603

"Since, then, while the heaven and the earth still stand, sacrifices have passed away, and kingdoms, and prophecies among those who are born of woman, and such like, as not being ordinances of Elohim; hence therefore He says, 'Every plant which the heavenly Father has not planted will be rooted up.' So He, being the true Prophet, said, 'I am the gate of life; he who enters by Me enters into life,' there being no other teaching able to save. "Furthermore also He cried, and said, 'Come unto me, all who labour,' that is, who are seeking the truth, and not finding it; and again, 'My sheep hear my voice;' and elsewhere, 'Seek and find,' since the truth does not lie on the surface."

Yet Other Sayings of Moshiach

Chapter 604

“But also, a witnessing voice was heard from heaven, saying, ‘This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; hear Him.’ And in addition to this, willing to convict more fully of error the prophets from whom they asserted that they had learned, He proclaimed that they died desiring the truth, but not having learned it, saying, ‘Many prophets and kings desired to see what ye see, and to hear what you hear; and verily I say to you, they neither saw nor heard.’ Still further He said, ‘I am he concerning whom Moses prophesied, saying, A Prophet will YHWH our Elohim raise unto you of your brothers, like unto me: Hear Him in all things. Whoever will not hear that Prophet will die.’”

Other Sayings

Chapter 605

605:1 “From that we know that it is impossible without His teaching to attain to saving truth, though one seek it forever where the thing that is sought is not. But it was, and is, in the word of our Y’shua.

605:2 “Accordingly, He, knowing the true things of the Torah, said to the Sadducees, asking on what account Moses permitted to marry seven, ‘Moses gave you commandments according to your hard-heartedness; for from the beginning it was not so: for He who created man at first, made him male and female.’

Teaching of Moshiach

Chapter 606

“But to those who think, as the Scriptures teach, that Elohim swears, He said, ‘Let your yes be yes, and no, no; for what is more than these is of the evil one.’ And to those who say that Avraham and Yitzchak and Yaakov are dead, He said, ‘Elohim is not of the dead, but of the living.’ And to those who suppose that Elohim tempts, as the Scriptures say, He said, ‘The tempter is the evil one,’ who also tempted himself. To those who suppose that Elohim does not foreknow, He said, ‘For your heavenly Father knows that you need all these things before you ask Him.’ And to those who believe, as the Scriptures say, that He does not see all things, He said, ‘Pray in secret, and your Father who sees secret things will reward you.’”

More Teaching of Moshiach

Chapter 607

“And to those who think that He is not good, as the Scriptures say, He said, ‘From which of you will his son ask bread, and he will give him a stone; or will ask a fish,

and he will give him a serpent? If ye then, being evil, know to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your heavenly Father give good things to those who ask Him, and to those who do His will!’ But to those who affirmed that He was in the temple, He said, ‘Swear not by heaven, for it is Elohim’s throne; nor by the earth, for it is the footstool of His feet.’ And to those who supposed that Elohim is pleased with sacrifices, He said, ‘Elohim wishes mercy, and not sacrifices’—the knowledge of Himself, and not holocausts.”

Even More Teaching of Moshiach

Chapter 608

“But to those who are persuaded that He is evil, as the Scriptures say, He said, ‘Do not call Me good, for One *only* is good.’ And again, ‘Be good and merciful, as your Father in the heavens is, who makes the sun rise on good and evil men, and brings rain upon just and unjust.’ But to those who were misled to imagine many elohim, as the Scriptures say, He said, ‘Hear, O Israel; YWHW your Elohim is echad/unity YWHW.’”

Flight of Simon

Chapter 609

So Simon, perceiving that Kefa was driving him to use the Scriptures as Y’shua taught, was unwilling that the discussion should go into the doctrine concerning Elohim, even although Kefa had changed the discussion into question and answer, as Simon himself asked. However, the discussion occupied three days. And while the fourth was dawning, he set off sneaking, as it were, as far as Tyre of Phoenicia. And not many days after, some of the precursors came and said to Kefa: “Simon is doing great miracles in Tyre, and disturbing many of the people there; and by many slanders he has made you to be hated.”

Kefa’s Resolution to Follow

Chapter 610

610:1 Kefa, hearing this, on the following night assembled the multitude of hearers; and as soon as they were come together, he said: “While I am going forth to the nations which say that there are many Elohim (gods), to teach and to preach that Elohim is one, who made heaven and earth, and all things that are in them, in order that they may love Him and be saved, evil has anticipated me, and by the very law of conjunction has sent Simon before me, in order that these men, if they will cease to say that there are many elohim, disowning those upon earth that are called elohim,

may think that there are many elohim in the sky; so that, not feeling the excellency of the monarchy, they may perish with eternal punishment.

610:2 “And what is most dreadful, since true doctrine has incomparable power, he forestalls me with slanders, and persuades them to this, not even at first to receive me; lest he who is the slanderer be convicted of being himself in reality a devil, and the true doctrine be received and believed. So, I must quickly catch up with him, unless their false accusation, through the gaining of time, completely grip all the men.”

Successor to Be Appointed

Chapter 611

“Since it is necessary to set apart someone instead of me to fill my place, let us all with one consent pray to Elohim, that He would reveal who among us is the best to have sitting in the chair of Moshiach, so that he may piously rule His Yisraelite Yahad. Who, then, will be set apart? For by the counsel of Elohim that man is set forth as blessed, ‘whom his Master will appoint over the ministry of his fellow-servants, to give them their meat in their season, not thinking and saying in his heart, My Master delays His coming, and who will not begin to beat his fellow-servants, eating and drinking with harlots and drunkards. And the Master of that servant will come in an hour when he doth not look for Him, and in a day when he is not aware, and will cut him in pieces and sentence him with the rest of the hypocrites.’”

Monarchy

Chapter 612

“But if anyone of those present who is able to instruct ignorant men and yet shrink from it, thinking only of his own ease, let him expect to hear this sentence: ‘O bad and lazy servant, you should have put my money in the bank, so that when I came I could at least have my money back. Cast out the unprofitable servant into the outer darkness.’ And with good reason; ‘for,’ says He, ‘it is for you, O man, to prove my words, as silver and money are proven by the moneychangers.’ So the community of the faithful ought to obey someone, in order to live in harmony. For that which tends to the government of one person, in the form of monarchy, enables the subjects to enjoy peace by means of good order. But if any do not want a single ruler by reason of wanting the rule himself, they must altogether fall by reason of division.”

Obedience Leads to Shalom

Chapter 613

“So then let the things that are going on before your eyes persuade you; how wars are constantly arising through there being now many kings all over the earth. For each one holds the government of another as a pretext for war. But if one were ruler over all, he would have no reason to make war and would have perpetual peace. In short, to those who are thought worthy of eternal life, Elohim appoints one universal King in the world that will then be, that by means of monarchy there may be unfailing peace. It is imperative for all then to follow someone as a leader, honouring him as the image of Elohim; and for the leader to be acquainted with the road that enters into the qadosh city.”

Zacchai Appointed

Chapter 614

“But of those who are present, whom will I choose but Zacchai, to whom also the Master went in and rested, judging him worthy to be saved?” And having said this, he laid his hand upon Zacchai, who stood by, and forced him to sit down in his own chair. But Zacchai, falling at his feet, begged that he would permit him to decline the rulership; promising, at the same time, and saying, “Whatever the ruler has to do, I will do, only grant me not to have this title. I am afraid of having the name of the rulership, for it is full of bitter envy and danger.”

The Oversight of the Yahad

Chapter 615

615:1 Then Kefa said: “If you are afraid of this, do not be called Mevaqqre, but The Appointed One, the Master having permitted you to be so called, when He said, ‘Blessed is that man whom his Master will Appoint to the ministry of his fellow-servants.’ But if you wish it to be altogether unknown that you have authority of administration, you seem to me not to realize that the acknowledged authority of the Mevaqqre has great influence as regards the respect of the Yahad. For everyone obeys him who has received authority, for conscience constrains them. And are you not well aware that you are not to rule as the rulers of the nations, but as a servant taking care of them—as a father to the oppressed, visiting them as a physician, guarding them as a shepherd—in short, taking all care for their salvation?

615:2 “And do you think that I am not aware what labors I compel you to undertake, desiring you to be judged by people whom it is impossible for anyone to please? But it is most possible for him who does well to please Elohim. So, I plead with you to take the office heartily, by Elohim, by Moshiach, for the salvation of the brothers, both so they will be in order and for your own profit.”

Nolo Episcopari (I Do Not Want to be a Bishop)

Chapter 616

616:1 “Consider this other thing, that in proportion as there is labour and danger in ruling the Yahad of Moshiach, so much greater is the reward. And yet again the punishment is greater to him who has the ability and refuses to do it. I would therefore, knowing that you are the best instructed of my attendants, to consider the noble powers of discernment that the Master has given you, in order that you may be saluted with the ‘Well Done, Good And Faithful Servant,’ and not be found at fault and declared liable to punishment, like the man who hid the one talent.

616:2 “But if you will not be appointed a good guardian of the Yahad, point out another in your stead, more learned and more faithful than yourself. But you cannot do this; for you associated with the Master, and witnessed His marvellous doings, and learned the administration of the Yahad.”

Danger of Disobedience

Chapter 617

617:1 “Your work is to order what things are proper; and that of the brothers is to submit, and not to disobey. So, submitting they will be saved, but disobeying they will be punished by the Master, because the mevaqqre is entrusted with the place of Moshiach.

617:2 “So, indeed, honour or contempt shown to the mevaqqre is handed on to Moshiach, and from Moshiach to Elohim. And this I have said, that these brothers may not be ignorant of the danger they incur by disobedience to you, because whosoever disobeys your orders, disobeys Moshiach; and he who disobeys Moshiach offends Elohim.”

Duties of Yahad Office-Bearers

Chapter 618

“It is necessary that the Yahad, as a city built upon a hill, have an order approved of Elohim, and good government. In particular, let the mevaqqre, as chief, be heard in the things he speaks; and let the zaqenim give heed that the things ordered be done. Let the shoterim, going about, look after the bodies and the souls of the brothers, and report to the mevaqqre. Let all the rest of the brothers bear wrong patiently; but if they wish judgment to be given concerning wrongs done to them, let them be reconciled in presence of the zaqenim; and let the zaqenim report the reconciliation to the mevaqqre.”

“Marriage Always Honourable”

Chapter 619

619:1 “And let them impress marriage not only upon the young, but also upon those advanced in years, lest burning lust bring a plague upon the Yahad by reason of whoredom or adultery. For, above every other sin, the immorality of adultery is hated by Elohim, because it not only destroys the person himself who sins, but those also who eat and associate with him.

619:2 “For it is like the madness of a dog, because it has the nature of communicating its own madness. For the sake of chastity, let not only the zaqenim, but even all, hasten to accomplish marriage. For the sin of him who commits adultery necessarily comes upon all. Therefore, to urge the brothers to be chaste is the first requirement of love, for it heals the soul. The nourishment of the body is rest.”

“Not Forsaking the Assembling”

Chapter 620

620:1 “But if you love your brothers, take nothing from them, but share with them such things as you have. Feed the hungry; give drink to the thirsty; clothe the naked; visit the sick; so far as you can, help those in prison; receive strangers gladly into your own abodes; and hate no one.

620:2 “And how you must be pious, your own mind will teach you to judging rightly. But before all else, if indeed I need to tell you, come together frequently, even if it were every hour, especially on the appointed days of meeting. For if you do this, you are within a wall of safety. For disorderliness is the beginning of perdition.

620:3 “Let no one therefore forsake the assembly on the ground of envy towards a brother. For if anyone of you forsake the assembly, he will be regarded as of those who scatter the Yahad of Moshiach, and will be cast out with adulterers. For as an adulterer, under the influence of the spirit that is in him, he separates himself on some pretext, and gives place to the evil one against himself—a sheep for the stealing, as one found outside the fold.”

“Hear the Mevaqqre”

Chapter 621

“However, hear your mevaqqre, and do not be tired of giving him esteem. Know that, by showing it to him, you show it to Moshiach and to Elohim. To him who offers it, it is returned many times over. Honour, then, the throne of Moshiach. For you are commanded even to honour the chair of Moses, although those who occupy it are accounted sinners. And now I have said enough to you. It would be superfluous to tell him to live blamelessly, since he is an approved talmid of Him who taught me also.”

Various Duties of Israelite Kiddushim/Saints

Chapter 622

622:1 “But, brothers, there are some things that you must not wait to hear, but must yourselves be reasonable. Zacchai alone having given himself up wholly to labor for you, and needing sustenance, and not being able to attend to his own affairs, how can he procure necessary support? Is it not reasonable that you are to take forethought for his living? Do not wait for him to ask you, for you make him feel like a beggar. But he will rather die of hunger than submit to do this.

622:2 “And will you not incur punishment, not considering that the workman is worthy of his hire? And let no one say, “Is the word sold then, which was freely given?” Far be that from the truth. For if anyone already has the means to support himself and takes anything, he is selling the word. On the other hand, if he who has not takes support in order to live—as the Master also took at supper and among His friends, having nothing, though He alone is the owner of all things—he sins not.

622:3 “So suitably honor zaqenim, morim, useful attendants, widows who have lived well, orphans as children of the Yahad. But wherever there is need of any provision for an emergency, contribute all together. Be kind one to another, not shrinking from the endurance of anything whatever for your own salvation.”

Ordination

Chapter 623

623:1 And having thus spoken, he placed his hand upon Zacchai, saying, “O You Ruler and Master of all, Father and Elohim, guard the shepherd with the flock. You are the cause and You the power. We are those who need to be helped. You the helper, the Physician, the Saviour, the wall, the life, the hope, the refuge, the joy, the expectation, and the rest. In a word, You are all things to us.

623:2 “In order to bring us to the eternal attainment of salvation, may You cooperate, preserve, and protect us. You can do all things. For You are the Ruler of rulers, the Master of masters, the Governor of kings. Give power to the mevaqqre to lose what ought to be loosed, and to bind what ought to be bound. Make him wise. In Y’shua’s Name, protect the Israelite Yahad of Your Moshiach, as a fair bride. For all everlasting esteem is Yours. Praise belongs to You, our Father, and to Your Son, through the Ruach HaKodesh, to all ages. Amein.”

Baptisms

Chapter 624

624:1 And having thus spoken, he afterwards said: "Whoever of you would be baptized, begin from tomorrow to fast, and have hands laid upon you day by day, and ask whatever questions that you have. I intend to stay with you ten days."

624:2 And after three days, having begun to baptize, he called me, and Aquila, and Nicetas, and said to us: "As I am going to set out for Tyre after seven days, I wish you to go away this very day, and to lodge secretly with Bernice the Canaanite, the daughter of Yusta, and to learn from her, and write accurately to me what Simon is about. For this is of great consequence to me, that I may prepare myself accordingly. So depart straightway in peace." And leaving him baptizing, as he commanded, we preceded him to Tyre of Phoenicia.

May YHWH Have Mercy Upon Us.

APPENDIX D

Sinai Epitome or Summary, Ebionite, Arabic Text

In the name of the (Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit,) one Elohim. The Anointed One is YHWH, my strength, my help, and my hope. This is the account of [how] Clement recognized his parents and his brothers by means of Peter the Sholiach, chief of the Shlichim, blessed in the faith; and this is the teaching of the above-mentioned devoted man Peter, while he was at Tripolis. (From now on we call Peter by his real name, Shimeon Kefa.)

Chapter 625

624:1 When I Clement had completed three months with Kefa, he commanded me to fast for three days, and then we went to fountains of water on the seashore, and he baptized me there and with me Maroones, the man who had entertained us. Then he appointed him Sholiach of Tripolis, and (with him) twelve Mevaqqrim, with sharathim. Then he left the people of Tripolis, and went out to Antioch in Syria.

625:2 The reason for my meeting him was this: while I was in the city of Rome, in my youthful years, I had carried chastity and righteousness to a great length, as also the recollection of death, and meditation about the soul, whether it is mortal or immortal, and about this world, whether it had a beginning or not, and whether it will perish or not. While I thought on these things, I did not cease frequenting the place of philosophers and wise men, and I did not find anything more from the Porch than a deceitful and vain thing, and I thought I would go to Egypt to those magicians [who channel] the dead, and while I thought about this, look, news was spread in the empire of Tiberius concerning a man in the land of Judaea who was preaching the

eternal kingdom of YHWH and who confirmed that by many mighty deeds. Behold, Bar-Naba came to Rome preaching the Anointed One, and the wise men were mocking him. Meanwhile I knew he was engaged in a righteous purpose; and I adopted his evidence, and I forsook like dogs those who do not accept the word of salvation; and I took Barnabas, and I entertained him at my house, and I heard speeches from him; and when they were going out to the land of Judea, I went out with him, and in fifteen days we came to Caesarea; and I heard that Kefa was in it, and that he intended to debate with Simon (the Magus) the next day; and when I went to his place, Barnabas brought me in to him. And Kefa received me with much affection, and he was very glad of what I had done to benefit Barnabas in Rome, and he confirmed my vocation, and commanded me to come to him, as he intended to travel to Rome; and when I promised him this, I asked him about the soul and about the world, and he made clear to me briefly by examination the folly that enters into people by means of sin: Such is what overclouds the minds of people like smoke.

625:3 Then he explained to me the coming of the Anointed One, and the resurrection to life. In the morning, behold, Zacchai came saying that Simon (Magus) had postponed the contest for seven days. Kefa completed our teaching about the science of the world, according to what the Ruach haKodesh gave him. And after this we went to Tripolis, to the place in which I was baptized, and from there Kefa sent Niceta and Aquila with others to Laodicea, and told them to wait for him at the door of the city. But I and he went to Antaradus, and I thanked him for taking me with him as his follower, and he said to me: "If I send you to a place to buy for us what is necessary, will you die?" I answered and said to him: "You are to me a substitute for my father and my mother and my brothers; you have been the cause of my knowing the truth; and you have made me an equal in a great people. Will you then put me in the place of a slave?"

625:4 And Kefa answered, joking and said to me: "Do you think that you have never been a slave? Who will watch over my undressing and dressing? and who will prepare me the many dishes that are necessary to the cooks, and this in the greatness of skill that is designed for luxurious people for the gratification of desire that is a great satisfaction, and I am clothed by it with abundance; and do not imagine that you will know anything of this if you are with me, for I do not get anything but the smallest bit of bread, and some oil with a little vegetables; and all my wardrobe is these rags you look upon, and I need nothing else, for my mind looks on the good things that are eternal, and do not turn to what is mean. And I am surprised at you, for you are a man brought up in the enjoyment of the world, and you have despised all this, and you are contented with things in moderation. But I and my brother Andrew were brought up in orphanage and poverty and misery, and we were accustomed to toil and that we should bear exhaustion. For this reason I will endure from you toil and slavery for yourself."

625:5 And when I heard this from him I shuddered at it, and took an example on hearing this from a man whom the world cannot equal, and my eye wept. And when

he saw me crying, he said to me: "Why are your eyes weeping?" And I answered him, saying: "In what have I sinned against you, that you make me to hear such a speech?"

625:5 And Kefa said: "If I did wrong in saying I would serve you, you did a greater wrong at the first when you did not see that, and there is no equality in this, yet it is fitting that I should do this to you." But I said, "O you, Sholiach from YHWH, savior of our souls, it is not fitting that you should do this." And Kefa answered and said: "Behold, I would have accepted your opinion, if it were not that our Master, who came for the salvation of the world, to whom alone be honor, bore slavery, that He might persuade us not to be ashamed to serve our brothers. And He washed my feet and hands, saying, Do this way to your brothers." And I Clement said to him, "I thought I should conquer you in speech, and I was a fool, but I thank YHWH who has put you in the place of parents."

625:6 And Kefa said to me: "Have you any kinsfolk?" And I said to him, "There are noble men in my family nearly related to Caesar the Emperor. And he, the husband of my mother, possesses dignity, and by her we are three boys, twins before me, as my father told me, and I do not even know them, nor my mother, except by a faint recollection; for after them my mother gave birth to me (and her name was Matthidia, and my father's name was Faustinian and my brothers, Faustus and Faustinianus). And when I was in my fifth year, my mother saw a vision in her sleep, as my father related to me afterwards, that if the woman did not take her children immediately and go out of Rome and travel for ten years, she would perish, both she and they. But my father, when he heard this, carried them into a ship, with provisions, secretly, with many servants, and sent them to travel to Athens, and he kept me only with him in order to console me, being overwhelmed with grief by this. And when a year had passed after that, my father sent to Athens goods and money, in order that he might know their state; and the messengers went, and did not return. And in the third year he sent others for that [purpose], and they departed, and came in the fourth year to tell that they had not found the boys, nor their mother, and that these had never got to Athens at all; and they did not find a trace of them. And when my father heard this, he sorrowed with a great sorrow, and he was in much perplexity, but he neither knew how to find them nor where to weep for them.

625:7 And he went to the shore of the sea, and I with him, and he began to ask the sailors from every place where ships had been wrecked for four years past, if any of them had seen a drowned woman with her boys; and he did not fall in with the certainty of the matter, for no one can explore the expanse of the ocean. So he made me his heir in Rome, and appointed guardians over me; and I that day was twelve years old, and he went from Rome in a ship, and departed to places to look for them. And now I have not heard news of him, nor seen a letter, and do not know if he is alive or dead, while I think that he must have died, and now today it is twenty years since he separated from me."

625:8 And when Kefa heard this, his eyes wept from pity, and he said to those believers who were with him: "One gains experience by what this man's father has suffered. It shows concerning believers who are not vain heathens, who suffer here without reward in the last day, that those of the believers who are tried here endure suffering for the forsaking of their sins by means of it." And when Kefa said this, one of those present answered before all, and besought Kefa, saying, "Behold, tomorrow our journey will be to the Island of Aradus in the sea that you may see it. And there are there great pillars of vinewood, and the sight of them is wonderful." And Kefa allowed us to go, and said to us: "When you all arrive, do not go all of you together to the wonderful place, so that no misfortune might befall you."

625:9 So we went, and came to the island, and we got down out of the ship where the pillars were, and every one of us began to turn to some of the marvels that were there. But as Kefa went to the pillars, behold, a woman sitting outside the gates was asking alms. And when Kefa saw her, he said to her: "O woman, what is diseased in your limbs, that you have submitted to this humiliation of begging, and you do not increase what YHWH has given you by the work of your hands, so that you could even give bread to me from day to day?" And the woman sighed, and said: "Would that I had hands able for jobs and work, but they are in the form hands, yet they are dead, even when I bite them with my teeth." And Kefa answered and said: "And what is the cause that obliges you to do this?" And the woman said: "The cause of it is only weakness; if I had boldness or strength, I would have thrown away my life from a mountain, or in the deep, and I would have had rest from the sorrows and the cares with which my people reproach me."

625:10 Said Kefa: "And are those who kill themselves saved from punishment, or do they suffer more of it in Gehenna with the those who did this way to kill them?" And the woman said, "If I were sure that in Gehenna there are the living, and that I might go there and see my loved ones, even if I were in torment." And Kefa said: "And what is it that grieves you, woman, tell me; and if I knew, maybe I could cure you, and convince you that in Gehenna there are the living, and give you your skill so you might not desire (to go) with them to drowning, or to anything else, and that you may go out of the body without torment."

625:11 And she was glad at the promise, and she began to relate to him, saying: "I am a woman who was possessed of dignity, and a nobleman wedded me, a man of position, related to Caesar the Emperor. And I had twin sons by him, and I had another son besides them, and after that the brother of my husband fell in love with me, and I persuaded him to live in chastity, and I did not tell my husband of his evil desire towards me. And I resolved that I would not consent to him, nor defile the couch of my husband, besides exciting hatred between them, and that would be a reproach to me before all my people, and I resolved on going out of the city with my son for a short time till this bad wind should cease and vengeance should pass from me, and I left my other son with his father that he might be comforted by him, and I dreamed in a dream as if I saw a vision in the night saying to me: 'O woman, go out

with your children from here until a time that I will show you your return, and if not, you will perish with your husband and children.’

625:12 “And so it happened; and when I told my husband he shuddered at that, then he rose, and carried me into a ship with my boys, and many servants, and much goods, and sent us to Athens, and while we travelled on the sea, the winds arose against us, and the waves came over us, and we were engulfed in the night, and everyone who was with us was drowned and I, miserable being, was thrown with a wave to the side of a rock, and I was deceived by it (into) a hope of finding my boys alive. On that account, I did not throw myself to the depths and go to rest, and this, by my life, would have been the case then, when I was overwhelmed with grief. And when the dawn approached I began to turn and grope for my drowned sons, and I mourned and bewailed them with tears, while I did not see one of them nor their drowned bodies; and when the people of the place saw me, they pitied me and covered me. Then they sought for my boys in the depths, and did not find them. And there came to me women comforting me, and they were reminded of the misfortunes and the grief’s they had suffered like to what had befallen me, and that was a thing that increases my grief because there were no other misfortunes but [such as] mine with which they consoled me.

625:13 “And they invited me to go to them and I went to a poor woman when she invited me to go to be her helper, and she said to me, ‘I had a husband, who died by drowning in the sea, and left me that day, being of my own age, and since then I have known no man, though many invited me to wedlock, and I preferred chastity and piety towards my husband. Come, we will go into one life and one household.’ And I lived with her that she might keep her affection for her husband. And after that I had a pain in my hand, and the woman, my house-companion, had a paralytic stroke there in the house, and since then for some time I sit here begging alms for myself and for my friend. And now I have explained to you my affair and my story, and fulfil now your promise to me, that you may give me the cure, by means of which it will be possible for me to hasten from this world with my friend.” And when the woman said this, Kefa fell the more into thought, and he was then standing, and I Clement came up to Kefa, and said to him, “O good Teacher, where have you been, for I have been seeking you for some time. What do you command us to do?” And he said, “Go forward and wait for me in the ship.” And I did as he commanded me. And he renewed the questioning of the woman, and said to her, “Tell me about your family, and your city, and your children, and their names, and I will give you the medicine.” And the woman did not wish to tell him about that, and she began to tell him untruthfully, that she might get the medicine. And she said to him, “I am a woman of Ephesus, and my husband was from Sicily,” and she changed the names of her boys; and Kefa saw that she was trustworthy, and said to her, “I had been thinking, that you would have had a good fortune of joy this day, because I thought that you were a woman whose affairs I know.” And the woman adjured him, saying: “I ask you to tell me what you know, for I do not think that among women there is

one more wretched than I.” And Kefa began to relate to her truly, and said, “There is with me a fellow – my follower – in search of the certain knowledge of YHWH, and he is from Rome; besides, he told me about a father whom he had, and twin brothers, and he believed that his mother, as his father had told him, saw in a vision that she should go out of Rome with her sons that she might not perish with her husband, and she went out, and he does not know what became of her, and that his father went in search of her, and news of him failed also, and he does not know what became of him.”

625:14 And when Kefa said this, the woman fell in a faint, and Kefa came forward, and took her hand, and said to her: “Have confidence, and trust me, and tell me truly what you have to do with that.” As she recovered from the faint, and wiped her face, she said: “Where is this fellow whom you told me of?” And Kefa said: “Tell me first your affair, and I will show you him.” And she said: “I am the mother of this boy.” Said Kefa, “What is his name?” She said: “Clement is his name.” And Kefa said: “He is the youth who is present, and I commanded him to wait for me in the ship.” And she fell down and did homage to him. And she said: “Hasten first to the ship, that you may show me my only son, for when I see him, I have seen my boys who were drowned here.” And Kefa said to her: “I will do this for you, but when you see him, be silent until you come down from the Island.” And the woman said, “I will do so.” And Kefa took her by the hand, and brought her near to the ship. And when I saw him holding a woman by the hand, I smiled, then I honored him for that, and I began to lead the woman, and when I caught her hand, she cried with a loud voice, weeping and embracing me, and she began to kiss me. And I, because I did not know the thing, thought she was insane, or bewitched, and I pushed her from me. And Kefa said, “Why, my son, do you push your mother from you?” And when I heard this from him, that she was my mother, my heart was troubled, and my eyes wept, and I threw myself towards her and my heart warmed to her, then weeping overcame me for joy and pity, and I kissed her; and all the people who were there came near us, hurrying to see the beggar woman, how she had recognized her son.

625:15 And when we wished to go out from the Island, my mother said to me: “O my beloved son, it is my duty to say good-bye to the woman who received me, and besides, she is a paralyzed woman, bed-ridden in the house.” And when Kefa heard this, he marveled at the sense of the woman, and he commanded that the paralyzed woman should be carried on a couch, and they brought her to him. And when they came near, Kefa said (as the people listened), “If I am a sholiach of the Anointed One, let these people now believe, that YHWH is the only one, Creator of all, and the restoration of this woman is complete.” And when Kefa said this, the woman rose whole, and did obeisance to Kefa, and asked him about these things. And he convinced her, and she knew the certainty of the thing; and when all the people heard they wondered with a great wonder and Kefa made them a speech about the Besorah/Good News and about the last day. He said:

625:16 "Whosoever wishes to hear the certainty about YHWH for the salvation of his soul, let him travel to Antioch, as I have resolved to stay there for three months; and more obligatory than absence for the merchandise of the gains of the world is the search for the salvation of souls, and the gain of the other world." And after the speech of Kefa to the people, I gave a thousand drachmas to the woman whom Kefa had cured, and entrusted them to an honest man, and recompensed the women who all had known my mother; and we travelled to Antaradus with Kefa, and my mother and the rest; and when we arrived at the house, my mother asked me, saying, "How is your father, O my son?" and I said to her, "From the time when he went out in search of you no trace was known of him"; and when she heard that she sighed and grieved. And after a day we went out to Laodicea, and when we came near to it, behold, before the gates talmidim of Kefa, Niceta and Aquila, and they met us and took us to the house; and when Kefa saw the place suitable, he was pleased to stay there ten days, and Niceta and Aquila asked me, saying, "Who is this woman?" And I said to them: "This is my mother, whom YHWH permitted me to know by the forethought of my master Kefa,"

625:17 When I said this, Kefa explained to them the certainty of the thing, how it was, according as I had related it about my mother, according to what he heard from her, and he it was who had led us to a knowledge of each other. And when Kefa said this, they marvelled much when they heard from Kefa about the woman and her recollection of her sons Faustus and Faustinianus, and they were astonished at the account. And they said, "Do we see? Is this a vision or the truth? If we are not bewitched it is true." And they beat upon their faces, and they said, "We are Faustus and Faustinianus, and our hearts were straitened when you began the account, and we held firm till we should hear the end of the matter, because many of the things are like one another. And this by my life is our mother, and this is our brother.' And when they said this, they embraced me with much weeping, and they kissed me, and they went in to our mother, and found her asleep.

625:18 Kefa said to them, "Do not wake her, in case a joyful emotion overcome her suddenly, and her being grow small within her." When our mother awoke, Kefa began to say to her, "I will instruct you, O woman, about our Besorah, and our faith in YHWH; we believe in one YHWH, Creator of all this visible world, and we keep His commands, and sanctify and honor [our] parents, we live a pure life, and have no communion with the heathen in meat or in drink, unless they are baptized in the name of the Father, and of the Son and of the Holy Ghost. If there is a father or mother or wife or son or brother unbaptized, we do not trust him. And do not be grieved if your son is bound by this unless you become like him.' And when she heard this, she said, "And what is necessary, that I should not be baptized today, and that I should not come to this, because my soul has hated false gods, because they inspire the reverse of chastity, on account of which I fled from Rome with my sons Faustus and Faustinian?" And when our mother said this, my brothers Niceta and Aquila did not wait, but they [were] overjoyed and they embraced her and kissed

her. And the woman said, "What is this thing?" Said Kefa, "Woman, keep your presence of mind. These are your sons Faustus and Faustinianus, whom you thought were drowned in the sea. Now they are here before you! The sea swallowed them in the middle of the night. And how is the one called Niceta, and the other Aquila? Let them tell us now that we and you may know.

625:19 When Kefa said this, the woman fell in a faint from joy, and we restored her with great labor, and when she sat up, she said to us, "I beg of you, my beloved sons, tell me what happened to you in that night." And my brother Niceta said, "I relate to you, O my mother, that in that night when our ship was wrecked they carried us into the boat, to make merchandise of us, and they rowed with us to the land, and came with us to Caesarea, and they tormented us there with hunger, and beating, in order that we should not say anything that did not suit them. And they changed our names, and sold us to a Jewess, whose name was Yusta, and she bought us and educated us, and when we came to years of discretion, we acquired a sure faith in YHWH, and we began disputing and conversing that the godlessness of all the heathen might be reproved; and we learned the sayings of philosophy, that by this we might examine vain philosophies and reasoning.

625:20 We associated with a man, a wizard, whose name was Simon, and we had much affection for him, and he nearly led us astray. And it came to us that there was a prophet in the land of Yahudah, and everyone who believed in him would live without sorrow or death, and we thought it was Simon; and after that we met a talmid of our master Kefa, whose name was Zacchai, and he exhorted us much and hurried us from the wizard, and conducted us to Kefa, and he led us to the knowledge of the truth. So we seek from YHWH that he would count you worthy to welcome you to the favor to which we have come, that we may be filled with favor towards one another. This is the reason why you thought that we were drowned that night, and we also thought that you had perished in the sea.'

625:21 When Niceta said this, our mother ran to Kefa and said, "I ask and beg of you that you would baptize me, that I may not be deprived one day of intercourse with my children." We begged this of him; and he commanded her to fast for three days, then after that he baptized her in the sea, in presence of her children, and we took food with her, and we rejoiced at this in the glory of YHWH and the teaching of Kefa, and in the knowledge we had got of our mother; and we learned that chastity is the cause of salvation to the nations; and after that day Kefa took us to the harbor, and we washed there, and prayed. Look, an old man sitting there spying on us, and observing our prayer closely, and after we had prayed, he approached us to reprove us and to say that everything happens by luck, and that invocation and prayer are useless; and we remained three days to persuade him to change his opinion of this thing. And thereupon, during our discourse to him, we were calling him "O Father"; and he was calling us, "O my sons."

625:22 This was a providence from YHWH, because by it we began to know this word; and Aquila said to me and to Niceta, "Why do you call this stranger Father?"

My brother said to me, "Do not complain of this," and we continued in our talk to him, and he in that opinion of his, and he said: "Although the discourse has convinced me, yet I think of my wife, whose star and whose fortune was in vice, and she fled from evilness on account of the disfavor, and she was drowned in the sea." And I Clement said to him, "And how do you know that the woman when she fled did not marry one of the slaves, and that she died?" "I know certainly, that she did not marry, because she was chaste, and after her death, my brother related to me how she loved him at first and he, in fidelity towards me and his continence in his chastity, did not wish to defile my bed. And she, poor creature, in her fear of me and of disfavor, used an artifice, and she is not to be blamed, for this was fated against her, and she feigned that she had seen a vision and she said to me that: 'if I remain here, I shall perish with my sons.' And when I heard that from her, verily, through my desire for her safety and [that of] her sons, I sent her, and I kept with me a third son whom I had, as she asserted that she saw in her dreams."

625:23 When I heard this from him, I said, "Perhaps this is my father," and my eye wept. When my brothers sprung forward, wishing to embrace him, Kefa prevented them, and said to them, 'Be silent till it pleases me.' Kefa answered and said to the old man, "What is the name of your son, the youngest boy?" The old man said: "His name is Clement." Kefa answered him and said, "If I show you today your chaste wife with her three sons, will you believe that a chaste mind is able to conquer animal emotions, and that my discourse which I made to you about YHWH is the truth?" The old man said, "Just as what you have promised me cannot be, so there cannot be (anything) without luck." Said Kefa, "I call those present to witness that this day I present to you your wife with her three sons alive in her chastity. The proof of this is my knowing the certainty of the thing better than you. I tell you all that she related, in order that you may know and all these may know all this." When Kefa said this he began to relate, saying, "This man whom you all see, my brothers, in his ragged clothing, is of the people of Rome, of a great lineage and noble dignity, akin to Caesar, and his name is Faustinian; and he married a noble woman, and her name is Matthidia. He had three sons by her, two of them twins, and the third younger than they, whose name is Clement, and this is he, and these are the others, the one Aquila, and the other Niceta, and their names at first were, one Faustus, and the other Faustinianus.

625:24 When Kefa said this, and named them by their names, the old man was bewildered, and fainted, and his sons fell upon him kissing him and weeping, supposing that he was dead. The people too were bewildered by this marvel, and Kefa commanded us to lean off from the old man, and he took him by the hand, and raised him, and he related to the people all the misfortunes that had befallen him, and the reason that they happened. When our mother learned this, she came hurrying, crying and saying: "Where is my husband and master Faustinian, who has been miserable on account of me for a long time, seeking me in every city?" While she was crying thus, the old man sprang hastily towards her with tears, and they

embraced one another. And after all this Kefa sent away the crowd of people, and commanded them to come the next day and hear the story. Then a man of the nobles came with his wife and children to ask us to go to his house, and Kefa did not accept that from him.

625:25 Afterward, there was a daughter of the man [who had been] struck by a demon who had possessed her for twenty years, and on that account, she was bound with chains, imprisoned in a house. The house was opened suddenly, and the chains were broken, and the demon came out from her; and the girl came and curtsied to Kefa, and said: "Sir, I have come to you today on account of my salvation, and do not grieve me nor my father." And Kefa asked them about the girl, and her parents were bewildered when they saw the chains fallen from her, and her request to Kefa. But Kefa had pity on her, and commanded us to go to his house. The next day our father came to us, and did all that Kefa commanded him; and we turned the discourse so that there might be certainty in the controversy, and after very much speech in reproof of folly, Kefa commanded our father not to dwell for any time on what is not necessary to YHWH in the Besorah, but that he should repent, for the end of life is near not only to old men, but also to young ones. And he exhorted the old man with all the people for some days, and then he baptized the old man in the name of the Father, and of the Son and of the Holy Ghost, to whom be glory and praise forever and ever, Amen.

O you who read, pray for him who wrote it. May YHWH remember you and all believers in mercy. amen.